

PC 2109

.W3

1805

Copy 1

480 F-2

6/1/10



26









A

*L. C. Rives.*

# GRAMMAR

OF

## THE FRENCH LANGUAGE,

WITH

### *PRACTICAL EXERCISES.*

BY

*Nichols*  
N. WANOSTROCHT, LL.D.

---

FIRST AMERICAN, FROM THE NINTH LONDON EDITION.

---

WITH CONSIDERABLE ADDITIONS AND IMPROVEMENTS

*BY THE AUTHOR.*

---

BOSTON :

PRINTED FOR JOHN WEST, No. 75, CORNHILL.

.....

1805.

---

DAVID CARLISLE, *Printer, Cambridge-Street.*

PC 2109  
W3  
1805

GIFT  
ESTATE OF  
WILLIAM C. RIVES  
APRIL, 1940

21 je 49



TO

THE HON. Mr. BATHURST,

SIR,

ON my arrival in England, I considered it as a fortunate circumstance to be first introduced to the honour of being appointed your French master. I now feel myself peculiarly happy, in having this opportunity of making my acknowledgement known to your illustrious family, for the civilities I received when I was but little known in this country.

From that time, it has been my ambition to render the PRACTICAL GRAMMAR, which now solicits your patronage, in some degree, worthy of your acceptance. - Conscious, as I am, of its many imperfections, and that it stands in need

of much indulgence, yet, if it should be found of real utility to the public, your approbation will be no small recommendation ; at least, it will shew the world how ready you are to encourage even the faintest endeavours in useful learning.

I am, with the greatest respect, Sir,

Your most obliged

and very obedient

humble servant,

NICOLAS WANOSTROCHT.



---

# P R E F A C E.

---

**T**HAT “a great book is a great evil” is generally a great truth, for the discovery of which we moderns must hold ourselves indebted to the sages of antiquity. In the following sheets, I have endeavoured to improve upon the ancient maxim, and to bring the two ends of the book as near together as I possibly could. On this frugal plan the preface might have been spared, but custom must be complied with; some part of our time must be spent on superfluities, and what is rendered venerable by age must not too hastily be rejected. To enter abruptly upon the main subject is generally considered as a breach of politeness. What is useful must sometimes give place to what is convenient: and what rigorous justice cannot defend may yet enjoy the security of prescription. In compliance, therefore, with universal custom, with the general practice of the ancients, and, what is still more forcible, the urgent solicitation of the bookseller, I proceed to lay before the reader the general plan of the work.

The idea of the PRACTICAL GRAMMAR was first suggested to the author in the course of his private teaching. He found daily the inconvenience of referring from book to book, and determined to supply the defect in the best manner he could. Whatever was necessary to furnish a tolerable acquaintance with the elements of the language, and to point out the nature of its construction, he proposed to admit; and to reject every thing that was not essentially connected with his principal design. His first object was, to comprise, in as little room as possible, every thing that was really useful in the grammar, the exercise book, and the book of dialogues. To this plan he has strictly adhered in the composition, and has brought the whole together in a much smaller compass, than, at first, could reasonably have been expected.

The several parts of speech are arranged in the usual order, and each part is discussed under a separate section.

Each



*Each rule is followed by a familiar exercise, which the master may use in the place of a dialogue.*

*The advantages, resulting from the scholars learning and then repeating their own translations by heart, must, in the opinion of impartial and disinterested minds, materially tend to their improvement; by these means, the pupils, uniting practice to theory, not only become imperceptibly acquainted with the French phraseology, which in many instances differs so much from the English construction, but immediately know what is the English word that corresponds with the French, and vice versa, which cannot absolutely be done in a dialogue where the French is ready made for them. Therefore, in order the more fully to answer the author's intention, he has, instead of fine sentences, extracted from the most elegant writers, and often above the comprehension of young people, preferred and made use of, throughout all the exercises, plain and easy sentences, which, at the same time they are within reach of the young learner's faculties, will soon enable them to speak the French language with propriety and elegance. What more can be expected from an elementary book?*

*At the close of every section, a recapitulatory exercise is given upon all the preceding rules.*

*When there is any difference in the order of arrangement, the French construction is pointed out by small figures, placed against the top of the words in the English sentence.*

*Some of the most remarkable French idioms are noticed, and exemplified by various instances. Many others might have been adduced, perhaps to very little profit. The idiomatical expressions are daily giving way to a regular syntactical form, and growing into disuse with the best masters.*

*Rules for pronunciation are totally omitted. From all the attempts that have hitherto been made, it does not appear that any adequate idea of it can be conveyed in writing. The ear cannot be properly formed without the assistance of a good speaker.*

*Throughout the whole composition, the chief aim has been to unite ease and simplicity with accuracy and precision.*  
*That*



*That he has not sometimes said too little where more was required, and sometimes too much where less would have been sufficient, he does not take upon him to assert. That he has sometimes failed through negligence, and many times through ignorance, he has also great reason to fear. His daily avocations left him but little time for study, and his want of a better acquaintance with the English language may have subjected him to many inaccuracies in his style, and sometimes, perhaps, to palpable improprieties.*

*The author cheerfully embraces this opportunity of making his most grateful acknowledgements to the public for the favourable reception given to the former editions of this grammar, and, in general, to all his other works : while he is perfectly sensible of the obligation, he is also sensible that much indulgence was required to justify the favours he has already received either as a TEACHER or as an AUTHOR. That generous indulgence he again solicits for their acceptance of this new edition, and begs to assure them, that in every situation of life, it will be his constant care, as well as his highest ambition, to deserve the flattering encouragement he has met with in this country, and never forget the obligations already conferred.*

*In this edition, the errors in the former publications are carefully corrected, the several expressions, which did not so well please in the course of practice have been altered, and every improvement added which could tend to facilitate the attainment of the French language. It having been suggested, by some gentlemen, to whose judgment the author pays the greatest deference, that the irregular verbs being arranged in alphabetical order, in the body of the book, would be a considerable improvement to the work, and facilitate the progress of the scholar, this is done in the present edition. The primitives of the irregular verbs are conjugated at length, and at the end of each are given its several compounds, with large exercises both upon the primitives and compounds.*

ALFRED-HOUSE, CAMBERWELL,  
March 4th, 1802.

AN EXPLANATION OF THE ABBREVIATIONS  
MADE USE OF IN THE FOLLOWING WORK.

m.	Noun masculine.
f.	Noun feminine.
pl.	Plural.
adj.	Noun adjective.
pro.	Pronoun.
v.	Verb.
p. act.	Participle active.
p. p.	Participle passive.
adv.	Adverb.
p.	Preposition.
c.	Conjunction.
int.	Interjection.
∞	The English word, that has this mark underneath, is not to be expressed in French.

The figures, <sup>1</sup>, <sup>2</sup>, <sup>3</sup>, &c. direct to the construction of the words in the French sentence.

Two words that have the same number, are expressed by one word in French.



# Practical French Grammar.

---

## S E C T. I.

**G**RAMMAR is the art of speaking and writing in any language with propriety ; or, it is the art of rightly expressing our thoughts by words.

Grammar is of two kinds, general and particular. Universal grammar considers language in itself, explains the principles which are alike common to every tongue, and distinguishes, with precision, between those particulars which are essential, and those which are only accidental. Particular grammar applies these common principles to a particular language, and furnishes certain rules and observations which are, either mediately or immediately, deducible from its common principles.

A grammar of the French tongue must be formed agreeably to the established usage, and those particular modes of expression to which custom has given its sanction. It has therefore for its object, in common with all other grammars, the consideration of letters, syllables, words, sentences, &c.

In the FRENCH ALPHABET there are twenty-five letters, viz. a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i, j, k, l, m, n, o, p, q, r, s, t, u, v, x, y, z. Six of these are vowels ; so called because each can be distinctly sounded without the assistance of any other letter, namely, a, e, i, o, u, and y. The rest are called CONSONANTS, because they cannot be perfectly sounded without being associated with some vowel, either before or after them.

A SYLLABLE, whether composed of one or more letters, requires, in the pronunciation, no more than a single impulse of the voice : ex. *ba, me, moi*, &c.

A WORD may consist of one syllable, or of many compacted into one meaning ; for, a word is the smallest part of speech which is in itself significant : ex. *mon*, my, *livre*, book, &c.

A SENTENCE, or PHRASE, is an assemblage of words arranged in their proper order, forming a sense either more or less complete : ex.

<i>Je suis votre ami,</i>	I am your friend.
<i>J'écrivis hier à votre tante,</i>	I yesterday wrote to your aunt.

A PERIOD may consist of two or three sentences joined together, so that they depend on one another to form a complete sense. Each of the sentences forming part of a period is called member of the period, ex.

<i>Les grands hommes sont rares ; on doit les respecter, et l'on devroit toujours travailler à se rendre semblable à eux.</i>	Great men are scarce : we ought to respect them, and be constantly endeavouring to resemble them.
---	---

A DISCOURSE, or SPEECH, is an assemblage of sentences (or phrases) and periods, joined together and arranged according to the rules of the language.

### KINDS OF WORDS.

There are, in the French tongue, nine different sorts of words, which are generally called the nine parts of speech, viz.

- |                    |                   |
|--------------------|-------------------|
| 1. L'ARTICLE,      | THE ARTICLE.      |
| 2. LE NOM,         | THE NOUN.         |
| 3. LE PRONOM,      | THE PRONOUN.      |
| 4. LE VERBE,       | THE VERB.         |
| 5. LE PARTICIPE,   | THE PARTICIPLE.   |
| 6. L'ADVERBE,      | THE ADVERB.       |
| 7. LA PREPOSITION, | THE PREPOSITION.  |
| 8. LA CONJUNCTION, | THE CONJUNCTION.  |
| 9. L'INTERJECTION, | THE INTERJECTION. |

Five of them are declinable, that is to say, the radical part of the word remaining the same, the other parts, but especially the termination, will admit of several variations. These declinable words are, the article, noun, pronoun, verb, and participle.

The four last, as they never vary their terminations, are therefore called indeclinable.



## GENERAL EXPLANATION.

The ARTICLES are certain little words, which, joined to nouns, determine the extent of their signification, and which, in French, denote their gender, number, and case, corresponding to the English words *the, of the, from the, and to the*. These in French, are,

<i>Le, la, les,</i>	The.
<i>De, du, de la, des,</i>	Of, or from the.
<i>A, au, à la, aux,</i>	To the.

The NOUN, in general, is a word which is used to name or qualify every thing which is the object of discourse : ex.

<i>Papier,</i>	Paper.	<i>Bon,</i>	Good.
<i>Plume,</i>	Pen.	<i>Petit,</i>	Little.
<i>Pain,</i>	Bread.	<i>Mauvais,</i>	Bad, &c.

The PRONOUN is a word commonly substituted in the place of the noun, to avoid its too frequent repetition : ex.

*J'ai vu M. votre père, et lui ai parlé,* I saw your father, and spoke to him.

In this instance the word *lui*, to him, is put to avoid the repetition of the word *père*, father.

The VERB is a word which either expresses the state of the subject, or an action done by the subject, or the action received or suffered by the subject : ex.

<i>Mon frère est malade,</i>	My brother is ill.
<i>Ma sœur écrit une lettre,</i>	My sister writes a letter.
<i>Votre cousine est punie,</i>	Your cousin is punished.

The verb is varied by moods, tenses, persons, and numbers.

The PARTICIPLE partakes both of the nature of the verb and the adjective noun : ex.

<i>Ayant,</i>	Having,	<i>Aimé,</i>	Loved,
<i>Donnant,</i>	Giving,	<i>Puni,</i>	Punished, &c.

The ADVERB is sometimes joined to the noun, but more frequently to the verb, whence it derives its name. The use of the adverb is, to determine the signification



signification of the noun or verb ; or to express some particular modification or circumstance of the action or quality : ex.

*Je vous aime sincèrement,* I love you *sincerely*.  
*Venez demain,* Come *to-morrow*.

In these instances, the words *sincerely* and *to-morrow* are adverbs.

The PREPOSITION is a word which is put before the noun or pronoun, and it always governs the word before which it is placed : ex.

*Chez mon ami,* At my friend's house.  
*Devant moi,* Before me, &c.

The CONJUNCTION serves to connect the several parts of a discourse : ex. *et*, and ; *car*, for ; *mais*, but, &c.

The INTERJECTION is a word which expresses the different affections or passions of the soul : ex.

*Hélas, mon Dieu !* Oh, my God ! &c.

A more particular delineation of these nine parts of speech, and their use in the composition of a sentence, or period, will be the subject of the following sections.

## SECT. II.

### OF NOUNS.

**N**OUNS are divided into substantives and adjectives. A NOUN SUBSTANTIVE expresses a thing subsisting by itself, and can make a complete sense independent of any other word : ex. *Dieu*, God ; *roi*, king ; *maison*, house, &c.

A NOUN SUBSTANTIVE is either common, collective, or proper.

A COMMON NOUN is applicable to all beings or things of the same kind : ex. *homme*, man ; *roi*, king ; *ville*, town ; *table*, table, &c.

A COLLECTIVE NOUN is expressive of many particulars, yet, as these particulars are all united in the mind, and comprehended under one general idea, they may therefore be conceived as one individual, and, without any impropriety,

impropriety, expressed in the singular number : ex. *peuple*, people ; *forêt*, forest ; *armée*, army, &c.

A PROPER NOUN is applicable to one person or thing only : ex. *Pierre*, Peter ; *Londres*, London, &c.

N. B. A noun is always a substantive when we cannot, with propriety, add to it the word *personne*, person, or the word *chose*, thing.

A NOUN ADJECTIVE is used to express the quality, colour, form, or quantity, of the substantive to which it belongs, and is so called because its meaning cannot be ascertained without being joined to its proper substantive, with which it must also agree in gender, number, and case : ex. *bon*, good ; *aimable*, lovely ; *rouge*, red ; *jaune*, yellow ; *rond*, round ; *quarré*, square ; *un*, one ; *deux*, two ; *trois*, three, &c.

N. B. The noun is always adjective when one can add to it the word *personne* or *chose*, person or thing.

In NOUNS four things must be considered, viz.

<i>Les Articles,</i>	The Articles.
<i>Les Genres,</i>	The Genders.
<i>Les Nombres,</i>	The Numbers.
<i>Les Cas,</i>	The Cases.

## A R T I C L E S.

There are three sorts of Articles, viz.

<i>L'Article défini,</i>	The Article definite.
<i>L'Article partitif,</i>	The Article partitive.
<i>L'Article indéfini,</i>	The Article indefinite.

The article must always agree with the noun in gender and number.

The DEFINITE ARTICLE is so called because it means the whole of the object to which it is applied.

### SINGULAR.

*Le*, for the masculine, before nouns beginning with a consonant or H aspirated : ex. *le roi*, the king, &c.

*La*, for the feminine : ex. *la reine*, the queen, &c.

*L'* with an elision, for both genders, before nouns singular beginning with a vowel or H not aspirated : ex. *l'enfant*, the child, &c.



## PLURAL.

*Les*, for both genders, whether the noun begin with a consonant or a vowel : ex. *les rois*, the kings ; *les reines*, the queens ; *les enfans*, the children, &c.

The PARTITIVE ARTICLE means only a part of the object, the English word SOME being always expressed or implied.

## SINGULAR.

*Du* for the mas.

*De la* for the fem.

} These two articles are used  
before nouns beginning with  
a consonant or H aspirated :  
ex. *du pain*, some bread ; *de*  
*la viande*, some meat.

*De l'*, for both genders, beginning with a vowel or an H not aspirated : ex. *de l'encre*, some ink.

## PLURAL.

*Des* for both genders : ex. *des amis*, some friends.

The INDEFINITE ARTICLE is *de* or *d'*, of, from, and *à*, to.

This article is used, without distinction, before nouns masculine and feminine in both numbers. Proper names, and the greatest part of the pronouns, are declined with it.

Some grammarians admit of a fourth article, viz. *un* for the masculine, and *une* for the feminine, in English a or an ; but it may be observed, that it is always declined with the indefinite article, and therefore takes the nature of a noun adjective.

## GENDERS AND NUMBERS.

There are two GENDERS, viz. the masculine and the feminine. A noun is masculine when there is before it *le* or *un*, as *le* or *un livre*, the or a book. A noun is feminine when it is preceded by *la* or *une*, as *la* or *une plume*, the or a pen.

There are two NUMBERS, the singular and plural. The singular number speaks of one thing only : as, *une table*, a table ; the plural speaks of more than one : as,  
*des*

*des tables*, tables. There are some nouns that are never used but in the singular number : as,

1. The names of metals : ex. *or*, gold ; *argent*, silver ; *cuivre*, brass ; *plomb*, lead, &c.
2. The names of virtues and vices : ex. *avarice*, avarice ; *charité*, charity ; *foi*, faith ; *haine*, hatred ; *orgueil*, pride ; *prodigalité*, prodigality, &c.
3. The names by which the five senses are denoted : ex. *la vue*, the sight ; *le goût*, the taste ; *l'odorat*, smelling ; *le toucher*, feeling ; *l'ouïe*, hearing.
4. Proper names, except when they are used metaphorically.
5. To the foregoing may be added the following, which are not reducible to any general rules.

<i>Artillerie</i> ,	artillery.	<i>Faim</i> ,	hunger.
<i>Attirail</i> ,	implements.	<i>Fumée</i> ,	smoke.
<i>Bonheur</i> ,	happiness.	<i>Fuite</i> ,	flight.
<i>Colère</i> ,	anger.	<i>Gloire</i> ,	glory.
<i>Courroux</i> ,	wrath.	<i>Honte</i> ,	shame.
<i>Enfance</i> ,	infancy.	<i>Jeunesse</i> ,	youth.
<i>Lait</i> ,	milk.	<i>Salut</i> ,	safety.
<i>Miel</i> ,	honey.	<i>Soif</i> ,	thirst.
<i>Noblesse</i> ,	nobility.	<i>Sommeil</i> ,	sleep.
<i>Pauvreté</i> ,	poverty.	<i>Vieillesse</i> ,	old age.
<i>Sang</i> ,	blood.		

There are others which are never used but in the plural number only ; such as

<i>Ancêtres</i> ,	ancestors.	<i>Funérailles</i> ,	funerals.
<i>Ayeux</i> ,	forefathers.	<i>Frais</i> ,	expenses.
<i>Atours</i> ,	apparel.	<i>Hardes</i> ,	cloathes.
<i>Ciseaux</i> ,	scissors.	<i>Limites</i> ,	limits.
<i>Délices</i> ,	delight.	<i>Mœurs</i> ,	manners.
<i>Dépens</i> ,	cost.	<i>Mouchettes</i> ,	snuffers.
<i>Entrailles</i> ,	entrails.	<i>Ténèbres</i> ,	darkness.
<i>Epousailles</i> ,	espousals.	<i>Vivres</i> ,	victuals.
<i>Fonts</i> ,	font.		

And, in general, those which, in English, admit of no singular.



X. In general the plural number is formed by adding an *s* to the singular: ex.

*Le père*, the father;      *les pères*, the fathers.  
*La mère*, the mother;      *les mères*, the mothers, &c.

All nouns, having their singular ending in *s*, *x*, or *z*, admit of no variation in the plural: ex.

*Le fils*, the son;      *les fils*, the sons.  
*Une noix*, a walnut;      *des noix*, walnuts.  
*Le nez*, the nose;      *les nez*, the noses.

### E X C E P T I O N S.

Nouns ending in *au*, *eau*, *eu*, *oeu*, *ieu*, or *ou*, form their plural by *x* instead of *s*: ex.

*Un chapeau*, a hat;      *des chapeaux*, hats.  
*Un manteau*, a cloak;      *des manteaux*, cloaks.  
*Un lieu*, a place;      *des lieux*, places.  
*Un chou*, a cabbage;      *des choux*, cabbages.

The following differ from this rule, and their plural terminates in *s*.

*Matoir*, a great cat;      *matous*, great cats.  
*Trou*, a hole;      *trous*, holes.

Nouns ending in *al* and *ail* have their plural in *aux*: ex.

*Animal*, a living creature;      *animaux*, living creatures.  
*Cheval*, a horse;      *chevaux*, horses.  
*Travail*, work;      *travaux*, works.

These only are excepted:

<i>Bal</i> , a ball,	<i>Eventail</i> , a fan,
<i>Gouvernail</i> , the helm,	<i>Sérail</i> , a seraglio,
<i>Détail</i> , account, retail,	<i>Portail</i> , gateway,

Which form their plural in *s*.

X. Nouns of more than one syllable (poly-syllables,) ending in *nt*, most generally form their plural by changing the *t* into *s*: ex.

*Enfant*, a child;      *enfants*, children.  
*Commandement*, command;      *commandemens*, commands.

But nouns of one syllable only (monosyllables) preserve the *t*, and form their plural by adding *s*: as,

*Dent*,

*Dent*, tooth ; *dents*, teeth.  
*Pont*, bridge ; *ponts*, bridges. X  
*Tout*, adj. all, makes *tous* in its plural masculine.

The following are not conformable to any established rule.

*Ayeul*, a grandfather ; *ayeux*, grandfathers.  
*Bétail*, cattle ; *bœstiaux*, cattle.  
*Ciel*, heaven ; *cieux*, heavens.  
*Œil*, the eye ; *yeux*, eyes.

Except { *des ciels de lit*,\* testers of a bed.  
               { *des œils de bœuf*, ovals.

There are, in French, several compound words like the two last, which require some attention from the learner, in the formation of their plural, the difficulty of which may soon be removed by means of reflection ; for example :

A noun being composed of a substantive and an adjective, separated by a hyphen, both admit of the plural formation : as,

*Un gentil-homme*, a gentle- *des gentils-hommes*, gentle-  
   man ;   men.

A noun compounded of two substantives and a preposition, united by hyphens, the first only in French, which is generally the last in English, admits of the plural formation : as,

*Un arc-en-ciel*, rainbow ; *des arcs-en-ciel*, rainbows.

*Un chef-d'œuvre*, a master- *des chefs-d'œuvre*, master-  
   piece ;   pieces.

N. B. Some of these French compound words are sometimes rendered in English by one word, in which case the formation of the plural, in the French, is still the same : as,

*Un cul-de-sac*, an alley *des culs-de-sac*, alleys.  
                                   (without egress ;)

Nouns composed of a verb or a preposition and a substantive, the substantive only admits of the plural formation ; as,

*Un*

\* This term becomes obsolete : it is better to say, *un fond de lit*.

*Cent* (hundred) seems to be an exception  
 as we say *deux cents*, *trois cents* &c. *portia* p. 44.



*Mademoiselle, miss,*

or young ladies.

make, in the

plural,

## CASES.

6. *L' Ablatif,*

## The Ablative.

*Le roi aime le peuple,* The king loves the people.

*La maison de mon père,*      *My father's house, &c.*

Or

Or it is governed by a preposition : as,

*Près du feu,* Near the fire, &c.

The last is always put after nouns or verbs expressing division, partition, or separation ; and after some prepositions. The genitive is known by the articles *de, du, de la, des,* of or of the. Sometimes the article is not expressed in the English, as may be seen in the sentences before-mentioned. The ablative is known by the articles *de, du, de la, des,* from or from the.

The DATIVE shews to whom the thing spoken of is given, or to what it is attributed : as,

*Donnez cette pomme à mon frère.* Give that apple to my brother.

This case is known by the articles *à, au, à la, aux,* to or to the.

The VOCATIVE is used only for calling or naming the person to whom the speech is addressed : as,

*Ami, qui êtes-vous ?* Friend, who are you ?

## DECLENSIONS OF NOUNS.

All changes in nouns are formed by numbers and cases. To decline a noun, therefore, is to express its several variations ; and, under these variations, to point out its different significations.

Some short examples are added to the nouns, that learners may more easily understand what has been said respecting the cases.

*Declension of the Article Definite, Le, (the) before Nouns masculine beginning with a Consonant or H aspirated.*

### SINGULAR.

Nom. <i>LE prince,</i>	The prince.
<i>Le prince est généreux,</i>	The prince is generous.
Gen. <i>DU prince,</i>	Of the prince.
<i>Les vertus du prince,</i>	The virtues of the prince ; or, the prince's virtues.
Dat. <i>AU prince,</i>	To the prince.
<i>Parler au prince,</i>	To speak to the prince.
Acc. <i>LE prince,</i>	The prince.
<i>Aimer le prince,</i>	To love the prince.

Voc.



Voc. O prince,	O prince.
Abl. DU prince,	From the prince.
Recevoir des lettres du prince,	To receive letters from the prince.

*Declension of the Article Definite La (the,) before Nouns feminine beginning with a Consonant or H aspirated.*

## SINGULAR.

Nom. LA princesse,	The princess.
La princesse est aimable,	The princess is amiable.
Gen. DE LA princesse,	Of the princess.
Les regards de la princesse,	The looks of the princess; or, the princess's looks.
Dat. A LA princesse,	To the princess.
Donner à la princesse,	To give to the princess.
Acc. LA princesse,	The princess.
Imitez la princesse,	Imitate the princess.
Voc. O princesse,	O princess.
Abl. DE LA princesse,	From the princess.
Etre séparé de la princesse,	To be separated from the princess.

*Declension of the Article Definite, L', (the) for both Genders, before Nouns beginning with a Vowel or an H not aspirated.*

## SINGULAR.

Nom. L'enfant,	The child.
L'enfant est timide,	The child is fearful.
Gen. De L'enfant,	Of the child.
Le tempérament de l'enfant,	The child's temper ; or, the temper of the child.
Dat. A L'enfant,	To the child.
Attribuer à l'enfant,	To attribute to the child.
Acc. L'enfant,	The child.
Admirer l'enfant,	To admire the child.
Voc. O enfant,	O child.
Abl. DE L'enfant,	From the child.
S'éloigner de l'enfant,	To go away from the child.
	The

The plural of these nouns, whether they begin with a consonant or a vowel, are declined, in both genders, by the article *les*, (the.)

## PLURAL.

Nom. <i>LES rois,</i>	The kings.
<i>Les rois commandent,</i>	The kings command.
Gen. <i>Des rois,</i>	Of the kings.
<i>L'ordre des rois,</i>	The order of the kings ; or, the kings' order.
Dat. <i>AUX rois,</i>	To the kings.
<i>Envoyer aux rois,</i>	To send to the kings.
Acc. <i>LES rois,</i>	The kings.
<i>Respectez les rois,</i>	Honour the kings.
Voc. <i>O rois,</i>	O kings.
Abl. <i>DES rois,</i>	From the kings.
<i>Etre loin des rois,</i>	To be far from the kings.

The *definite article* must be placed, in French, before all nouns used in a *general sense*, or denoting a whole species of objects, though the English admit of no article in this case : ex.

<i>L'homme est mortel,</i>	Man is mortal.
<i>LE Danemarck, LA Suède,</i>	Denmark, Sweden, and
<i>et L'Angleterre, sont LES</i>	England, are the three
<i>trois royaumes du nord,</i>	northern kingdoms.
<i>Aimer LES pommes et LES</i>	To love apples and pears.
<i>poires,</i>	
<i>Hair LA paresse,</i>	To hate idleness.
<i>LA vertu et LA beauté sont</i>	Virtue and beauty are esti-
<i>estimables.</i>	mable.
<i>L'or est préférable à L'argent,</i>	Gold is preferable to silver.

This article is also placed before nouns used in a *specific sense*, or denoting a particular object, in which case the article is likewise expressed in English : ex.

<i>L'homme que vous m'avez</i>	The man whom you re-
<i>recommandé est fort ha-</i>	commended me is very
<i>bile,</i>	skilful.
<i>LES pommes et LES poi-</i>	The apples and pears of
<i>res de votre jardin sont</i>	your garden are excel-
<i>excellentes,</i>	lent.



*LA beauté et LA vertu de  
votre sœur la font ad-  
mirer,* The beauty and virtue of  
your sister cause her to  
be admired.

*L'or de l'Amérique est pré-  
férable à celui de l'Eu-  
rope,* The gold of America is  
preferable to that of Eu-  
rope.

This article being declinable in French, and conse-  
quently admitting of different variations, must be  
repeated before all the *substantives* of a sentence, and  
before *nouns* adjective used as substantives, and agree  
with them in *gender* and *number* : ex.

*LE sel, LA moutarde, et  
L'huile, sont sur LES  
tables,* The salt, mustard, and oil,  
are on the tables.

*LE blanc, LE rouge, et LE  
noir, sont trois différentes  
couleurs,* White, red, and black, are  
three different colours.

\* post 30. On the contrary, this article, though expressed in  
English, must be omitted in French, before a noun/im-  
mediately followed by a name) denoting a *degree of con-*  
*sanguinity* or *kindred*, or the name of a *particular place*  
to which it belongs ; and when it precedes a noun, in  
the nominative or accusative case, denoting *dignity, office,*  
or *business* : ex.

*Alexandre fils de Philippe,  
Robert frère de Richard,* Alexander the son of Philip.  
Robert the brother of  
Richard.

*Mon ami demeure à Lon-  
dres, ville capitale d'An-  
gleterre,* My friend lives in London,  
the capital city of Eng-  
land.

*Monsieur D\*\*\*\*, premier  
medecin de la reine,* Mr. D\*\*\*\*, the queen's  
first physician.

*Monseigneur l'évêque de  
\*\*\*\*, premier aumônier  
du roi,* My lord bishop of \*\*\*\*,  
the king's first almoner.

In several instances, the definite article is neither ex-  
pressed in English nor French, and this generally hap-  
pens when nouns common are not taken in the full extent

\* In what case, the indefinite article is used before the names of countries &c. see post. p. 25.

of their signification, especially in narrations, and after the conjunction *ni*, neither : ex.

<i>Conscience, honneur, intérêt,</i>	<i>Conscience, honour, interest,</i>
<i>tout est sacrifié : il n'a ni</i>	<i>est, every thing is sacrificed :</i>
<i>justice ni humanité.</i>	<i>he has neither justice nor humanity.</i>

## RECAPITULATION OF THE ARTICLE DEFINITE.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.
Mas.	Fem.	Mas. & Fem.	Mas. and Fem.
<i>Le,</i>	<i>la,</i>	<i>l' ;</i>	<i>Les, the.</i>
<i>Du,</i>	<i>de la,</i>	<i>de l' ;</i>	<i>Des, of or from the.</i>
<i>Au,</i>	<i>à la,</i>	<i>à l' ;</i>	<i>Aux, to the.</i>

## EXERCISES UPON THE FOREGOING RULES.

Where is the master of the house ?—Virtue  
*Où, adv. est, v. maître, m. maison, f. Vertu, f.*

is estimable. — The prince spoke to the king.  
*est, v. estimable, adj. prince, m. parla, v. roi, m.*

— Do you<sup>2</sup> prefer<sup>1</sup> England<sup>3</sup> to<sup>4</sup> France<sup>5</sup> ?—  
*vous, pro. préférez, v. Angleterre, f. France, f.*

To the third page of the book. — Prefer virtue  
*troisième, adj. page, f. livre, m. Préférez, v.*

to riches, friendship to money, and utility to pleasure.  
*richesses, pl. f. amitié, f. argent, m. et, c. utilité, f. plaisir, m.*

— The father, mother, and children, are dead. —  
*père, m. mère, f. enfant, m. sont, v. mort, p. p.*

The<sup>1</sup> lazy<sup>2</sup> do<sup>3</sup> not<sup>5</sup> love<sup>4</sup> work<sup>6</sup>. —  
*pareilleux, adj. ne-pas, adv. aiment, v. ouvrage, m.*

Corn grows for men and grass for  
*Bled, m. croît, v. pour, p. homme, m. herbe, f.*

cattle. — Justice is the mistress and queen of  
*bétail, m. Justice, f. est, v. maîtresse, f. reine, f.*

virtue. — Walk in the garden. —  
*Promenez-vous, v. dans, p. jardin, m.*

Send



Send the child to school. ——— Give the  
*Envoyez, v. enfant, m. école, f. Donnez, v.*

tooth-picks to the gentlemen. ——— Children<sup>1</sup>  
*cure-dent, m. gentil-homme, m.*

generally<sup>3</sup> like<sup>2</sup> apples<sup>4</sup> and<sup>5</sup> pears<sup>6</sup>. —  
*ordinairement, adv. aiment, v. pomme, f. poire, f.*

Education is to the mind what cleanliness  
*Education, f. est, v. esprit, m. ce que, pro. propriété, f.*

is to the body. ——— I like yellow and grey. —  
*corps, m. Je, pro. aime, v. jaune, m. gris, m.*

Peace and plenty make men happy. ———  
*Paix, f. abondance, f. rendent, v. heureux, adj.*

The life of man is short. ——— The enemies  
*vie, f. courte, adj. ennemi, m.*

were on the mountain. ——— Love wisdom. —  
*étoient, v. sur, p. montagne, f. Aimez, v. sagesse, f.*

Do 'not<sup>3</sup> neglect<sup>2</sup> study<sup>4</sup>. — Avoid leisure. —  
*ne négligez, v. étude, f. Evitez, v. loisir, m.*

You admire the beauty of the ladies. —  
*Vous, pro. admirez, v. beauté, f. dame, f.*

To the thickness of the walls. ——— Honour is the  
*épaisseur, f. muraille, f. Honneur, m.*

reward of virtue. — She comes from church. —  
*récompense, f. Elle, pro. vient, v. église, f.*

We go to the park. — Corn, wheat, and  
*Nous, pro. allons, v. parc, m. froment, m.*

barley, are dear. ——— I hate milk, butter, and  
*orge, f. sont, v. cher, adj. hais, v. lait, m. beurre, m.*

cheese. ——— We speak of America and not of  
*fromage, m. parlons, v. Amérique, f. non pas, adv.*

Poland. ——— It is the will of the emperor. —  
*Pologne, f. C'est, v. volonté, f. empereur, m.*

Bring the knives and forks. ——— Honour is  
*Apportez, v. couteau, m. fourchette, f.*

due

due to kings.—The fate of nations is governed  
*dû, p.p. sort, m. nation, f. gouverné, p.p.*  
 by Providence.—You play with the boys.—  
*par, p. Providence, f. jouez, v. avec, p. garçon, m.*  
 Revenge is the pleasure of a weak<sup>2</sup> mind<sup>1</sup>.—  
*Vengeance, f. plaisir, m. de un foible, adj. esprit, m.*  
 Patience and perseverance are necessary. ——— Italy  
*Patience, f. persévérance, f. nécessaire, adj. Italie, f.*  
 is the garden of Europe. ——— The Jupiter of the  
*jardin, m. Europe, f.*  
 heathens was the son of Saturn and the  
*payen, m. étoit, v. fils, m. Saturne, m.*  
 father of the gods. ——— The desire of glory,  
*père, m. dieu, m. désir, m. gloire, f.*  
 riches, power, and pleasure, is a disease of the  
*pouvoir, m. une maladie, f.*  
 mind. ——— Tranquillity of soul is the height of  
*âme, f. Tranquillité, f. âme, f. comble, m.*  
 felicity.—Grant us peace. — Have you  
*félicité, f. Accordez, v. nous, pro. paix, f. Avez-vous, v.*  
 passed through Spain Portugal, or Hol-  
*passé, p.p. par, p. Espagne, f. Portugal, m. ou, c. Hol-*  
 land?—Mr. Dubois, the king's silversmith, has  
*lande, f. orfèvre, m. a, v.*  
 sent the watch. — The most noble of  
*envoyé, p.p. montre, f. plus, adv. noble, adj.*  
 virtues is charity. — Carry the grammar to the  
*charité, f. Portez, v. grammaire, f.*  
 boys, and the dictionary to the girls. — They  
*dictionnaire, m. fille, f. Ils, pro.*  
 come from the Indies. — Prefer always  
*viennent, v. Inde, f. Préférez, v. toujours, adv.*  
 virtue, prudence, and good sense, to beauty. —  
*prudence, f. bon, adj. sens, m.*



Put the wine, beer, and cider, on the  
*Mettez, v. vin, m. bière, f. cidre, m. sur, p.*  
 table.—Give me the loaf.—My  
*table, f. Donnez, v. moi, pro. pain, m. Ma, pro.*  
 sister lives at York, the capital city of the  
*sœur, f. demeure, v. à, p. —*  
 county of the same name.—(It is said) that  
*comté, m. même, adj. nom, m. On dit que*  
 America, France, and Spain, have made peace  
*ont, v. fait, p. p.*

with England.

When in English, two or more substantives, signifying different things, come together in a sentence, having a dependence on each other, and having no stop between them, the last (in English) must be placed at the beginning of the sentence (in French,) and the others having the sign of the English genitive, thus ('s) or (') only, come after it, with the *genitive* of this article before them, according to their gender and number : as,

<i>Le<sup>1</sup> fils<sup>2</sup> du<sup>3</sup> roi<sup>4</sup></i>	The <sup>1</sup> king's <sup>4</sup> son. <sup>2</sup>
<i>La<sup>1</sup> couronne<sup>2</sup> de<sup>3</sup> la reine<sup>4</sup>,</i>	The <sup>1</sup> queen's <sup>4</sup> crown. <sup>2</sup>
<i>La<sup>1</sup> femme<sup>2</sup> du<sup>3</sup> fils<sup>4</sup> du<sup>5</sup></i>	The <sup>1</sup> chancellor's <sup>6</sup> son's <sup>4</sup>
<i>chancelier<sup>6</sup></i>	wife. <sup>2</sup>

That is, *the son of the king ; the crown of the queen ; the wife of the son of the chancellor.*

The genitive of this article is often made in English by *to*, especially before nouns expressing *alliance*, *consanguinity*, or *kindred*, *witness*, or *inheritance* ; and, in short, whenever *to* may be turned by the above genitive.

<i>Monseigneur le duc de ***,</i>	My lord duke of ***,
<i>frère du roi,</i>	brother <i>to the</i> king.
<i>Madame la Marquise de</i>	The Marchioness of ***,
<i>***, sœur de la femme</i>	sister <i>to the</i> lord chan-
<i>du grand chancelier,</i>	cellor's wife.
<i>Mons. Richard, parfumeur</i>	Mr. Richard, perfumer <i>to</i>
<i>de la princesse,</i>	<i>the</i> princess.

That

That is, my lord duke of \*\*\*, the king's brother ; the marchioness of \*\*\*, the lord chancellor's wife's sister ; Mr. Richard, the princess's perfumer.

*Il a été témoin de cette querelle,* He was witness to that quarrel.

N. B. It has been already remarked, that the English definite article *the* is not expressed in French in the above cases.

If the second substantive in French (which is the first in English) serve to denote some particular COMMODITY, USE, QUALITY, or LIQUOR, then it must be put in the dative : as, ✕

*Le<sup>1</sup> pot<sup>2</sup> au lait,<sup>3</sup>*

The<sup>1</sup> milk<sup>3</sup>-pot.<sup>2</sup>

*La<sup>1</sup> bouteille<sup>2</sup> à l'huile,<sup>3</sup>*

The<sup>1</sup> oil<sup>3</sup>-bottle.<sup>2</sup>

*La<sup>1</sup> femme<sup>2</sup> aux pommes,<sup>3</sup>*

The<sup>1</sup> apple<sup>3</sup>-woman.<sup>2</sup>

*Le<sup>1</sup> marché<sup>2</sup> au poisson,<sup>3</sup>*

The<sup>1</sup> fish<sup>3</sup>-market.<sup>2</sup>

After the adverb *bien* when placed before a substantive, and signifying *much, a great deal, many*, the genitive of this article must always be used : as,

*Bien du mérite,*

Much merit.

*Bien de l'argent,*

A great deal of money.

*Bien des dames,*

Many ladies.

*Bien des livres,*

Many books.

## EXERCISES ON THE FOREGOING RULES.

I have seen the king's apartments and the  
*Je, pro. ai, v. vu, p. p. appartement, m.*

queen's picture. — The children make much  
*reine, f. portrait, m. font, v. bien, adv.*

noise. — Bring me the wine-bottle. — The  
*bruit, m. Apportez, v. moi, pro. vin, m. bouteille, f.*

man's strength is very great. — He has  
*force, f. est, v. bien, adv. grande, adj. Il, pro. a, v.*

many friends. — Mr. Richard has married  
*bien, adv. ami, m. Monsieur, m. a, v. épouse, p. p.*

Miss Prescott, niece to the Earl of the  
*Mademoiselle, f. nièce, f. Comte, m.*

Tower.



Tower. — Where is the fish - market ? — They<sup>1</sup>  
*Tour, f. Où, adv. poisson, m. marché, m. Ils, pro.*  
 give<sup>3</sup> you<sup>2</sup> much<sup>4</sup> trouble.<sup>5</sup> — (There is) the  
*donnent, v. vous, pro. peine, f. Voilà, adv.*  
 oyster - woman. — Where is your wine-cellar ?  
*huître, f. femme, f. votre, pro. vin, m. cave, f.*  
 — Lend me the maid's cloak. —  
*Prêtez, v. moi, pro. servante, f. mantelet, m.*  
 Give me the ink-bottle. — This man has  
*Donnez, v. encre, f. Cet, pro.*  
 (a great deal) of money. — Tell (to) the butter-  
*bien, adv. Dites, v. à beurre, m.*  
 man to come here. — We live  
*de venir, v. ici, adv. Nous, pro. demeurons, m.*  
 in the poultry-market.  
*dans, p. volaille, f. pl.*

## DECLENSION of the ARTICLE PARTITIVE.

### SINGULAR.

#### Masculine.

Nom. Acc. *du pain*, some bread.\*  
 Gen. Abl. *de pain*, of or from some bread.  
 Dat. *à du pain*, to some bread.

#### Feminine.

Nom. Acc. *de la viande*, some meat.  
 Gen. Abl. *de viande*, of or from some meat.  
 Dat. *à de la viande*, to some meat.

#### Masculine or Feminine.

Nom. Acc. *de l'argent*, some money.  
 Gen. Abl. *d'argent*, of or from some money.  
 Dat. *à de l'argent*, to some money.

The plural is the same for both genders.

N. A.

\* In asking a question, the English generally make use of *any*, which, in French, must be rendered by this same article : as,

<i>Y a-t-il du pain ici ?</i>	Is there <i>any</i> bread here ?
<i>Avez-vous de la viande ?</i>	Have you <i>any</i> meat ?
<i>A-t-elle acheté des livres ?</i>	Has she bought <i>any</i> books ?

N. A. *des livres*, some books, *des auteurs*, some authors.

G. A. *de livres*, of or from, &c. *d'auteurs*, of or from, &c.

Dat. *à des livres*, to, &c. *à des auteurs*, to, &c.

N. B. If the substantive be preceded by an adjective, instead of *du*, *de la*, *des*, we must use *de* or *d'* : as,

## SINGULAR.

	Masc.	Fem.	Masc. or Fem.
N. A. }	<i>De mauvais vin,</i>	<i>De bonne eau,</i>	<i>D'excellent pain,</i>
G. A. }	Bad wine.	Good water.	Excellent bread.
D. à de	<i>mauvais vin,</i>	<i>à de bonne eau,</i>	<i>à d'excellent pain,</i>
	To bad wine.	To good water.	To excellent bread.

## PLURAL.

N. Ac. }	<i>De bons livres,</i>	<i>D'habiles gens,</i>
G. Ab. }	Good books.	Learned men.
Dat.	<i>à de bons livres,</i>	<i>à d'habiles gens,</i>
	To good books.	To learned men.

This last rule is not general; for, there are some substantives, though preceded by an adjective, which require the other article, instead of *de*. However, instances of this kind are very few: they never happen but when the adjective and substantive present to the mind one idea only: as, *Paris est le centre du bon goût*, &c. Paris is the centre of good taste, &c.

This article must be used wherever the English word *SOME* is either expressed or understood, and ought to be repeated before every substantive in a sentence: as,

<i>Du pain et de l'eau lui</i>	Bread and water are suffi-
<i>suffisent,</i>	cient for him.
<i>Apportez du viniagre, de</i>	Bring some vinegar, mus-
<i>la moutarde, de l'huile, et</i>	tard, oil, and forks.
<i>des fourchettes,</i>	

## EXERCISES UPON THIS ARTICLE.

Bread, meat, and water, are	things	necef-	
	<i>sont, v.</i>	<i>chose, f.</i>	<i>néces-</i>
fary	to man.—I	drink	wine and water. —
<i>faire, adj.</i>	<i>Je, pro.</i>	<i>bois, v.</i>	
			She



She eats cheefe. — Bring me some  
*Elle, pro. mange, v. moi, pro.*

mustard. — Have you bought some paper, pens,  
*moutarde, f. Avez, v. acheté, p.p. papier, m. plume, f.*

and ink? — You<sup>1</sup> always<sup>3</sup> read<sup>2</sup> good<sup>4</sup> books.<sup>5</sup> —  
*encre, f. toujours, adv. lisez, v.*

Send him some bread, meat, and potatoes. —  
*Envoyez, v. lui, pro. pomme de terre, f.*

Bad<sup>1</sup> wine<sup>2</sup> is<sup>4</sup> not<sup>5</sup> worth<sup>4</sup> good<sup>6</sup> water.<sup>7</sup> —  
*vaut, v.*

Do you<sup>2</sup> sell<sup>1</sup> fruits<sup>3</sup>? — He speaks to  
*vous vendez, v. fruit, m. Il, pro. parle, v.*

learned people. — Buy some tea and sugar. —  
*gens, f.\* Achetez, v. thé, m. sucre, m.*

I have heard good news. — Will you  
*ai, v. appris, p.p. bonne, adj. nouvelle, f. Voulez, v.*

eat some beef with turnips and carrots?  
*manger, v. bœuf, m. avec, p. navet, m. carotte, m.*

— You have fine fruits. — Do you<sup>2</sup> drink<sup>1</sup> beer<sup>3</sup>?  
*avez, v. beaux, adj. vous buvez, v. bière, f.*

— (Is there) any wine in the bottle? —  
*Y a-t-il dans, p. bouteille, f.*

She has worthy friends. — Bring me good  
*Elle, pro. a, v. digne, adj. ami, m. bonne, adj.*

pens. — I<sup>1</sup> have<sup>3</sup> given<sup>4</sup> him<sup>2</sup> bread, money, and  
*donné, p.p. lui, pro.*

clothes. — Lend me some books. — I prefer  
*habits, m. préfère, v.*

good water to bad wine. — She has mo-  
*Elle, pro. a, v. mo-*

desty and prudence. — Bring us some plates. —  
*déstie, f. nous, pro. assiette, f.*

Will

\* *Gens*, preceded by an adjective, is of the feminine gender; but, when the adjective follows, it is put in the masculine.

Will you have some milk or cream? — Miss  
*ou, c. crème, f. Mademoiselle, f.*

Sharp has fine eyes.  
*a, v. œil, m.*

### DECLENSION OF THE ARTICLE INDEFINITE.

All proper names of persons, cities, towns, and villages, are declined with this article, ex.

#### SINGULAR.

##### Masculine.

Nom. Acc.	<i>Pierre,</i>	Peter.
Gen. Abl.	<i>de Pierre,</i>	of or from Peter.
Dat.	<i>à Pierre,</i>	to Peter.

##### Feminine.

Nom. Acc.	<i>Marie,</i>	Maria.
Gen. Abl.	<i>de Marie,</i>	of or from Maria.
Dat.	<i>à Marie,</i>	to Maria.

This article, before a noun beginning with a vowel or *h* not aspirated, is expressed as follows :

Nom. Acc.	<i>Antoine,</i>	Anthony.
Gen. Abl.	<i>d'Antoine,</i>	of or from Anthony.
Dat.	<i>à Antoine,</i>	to Anthony.
Nom. Acc.	<i>Londres,</i>	London.
Gen. Abl.	<i>de Londres,</i>	of or from London.
Dat.	<i>à Londres,</i>	to London.

*N. B.* It is necessary to observe, that the dative of the article *TO*, used after a word signifying *COMING*, *GOING*, *RETURNING*, or *SENDING TO*, placed before the name of a *kingdom*, *republic*, *county*, or *province*, must be rendered in French by the preposition *EN*, without any article : ex.

<i>Mon frère est allé en Italie,</i>	My brother is gone <i>to</i> Italy.
<i>Il doit bientôt retourner en</i>	He is soon to go back again
<i>Amérique,</i>	<i>to</i> America.
<i>Ma mère se propose d'en-</i>	My mother intends send-
<i>voyer ma sœur en Portu-</i>	ing my sister <i>to</i> Portugal
<i>gal ou en Espagne, et de</i>	or Spain, and thence <i>to</i>
<i>là en Allemagne.</i>	Germany.



On the contrary, *to* must be rendered by *de*, when it immediately follows the word *road* or *way*: ex.

*Le chemin de Londres,*      The road to London.  
*Le chemin de Paris,*      The way to Paris.

### EXERCISES UPON THIS ARTICLE.

(Here is) John's brother.—Speak to Martha.—

*Voici*, adj. *Jean*, m. *frère*, m. *Parlez*, v. *Marthe*, f.

It is Peter's hat. — She goes to Richmond.—

*C'est*, v. *chapeau*, m. *Elle*, pro. *va*, v.

He comes from Paris.—You have Mr.

*Il*, pro. *vient*, v. *Vous*, pro. *avez*, v. *Monsieur*, m.

Richard's sword. — When<sup>1</sup> will<sup>2</sup> you<sup>3</sup> go<sup>2</sup>  
*épée*, f. *Quand*, adv. *irez*, v.

to<sup>4</sup> France<sup>5</sup>? — Give me Laura's cap. —

*Donnez*, v. *moi*, pro. *Laure*, f. *bonnet*, m.

I (am going) to Croydon.—I have found

*Je*, pro. *vais*, v. *ai*, v. *trouvé*, p.p.

Andrew's waistcoat.—She (shall come back) to England

*André*, m. *veste*, f. *reviendra*, v.

(next year). — Carry that to Stephen.—

*l'année prochaine.* *Portez*, v. *cela*, pro. *Etienne*, m.

(Here is) the road to Clapham.

*Voici*, adv.

X The genitive of this article *de* is used after nouns and  
*Ante* adverbs of quantity, whether expressed in English or  
 not: ex.

*Ante* 19. *Deux livres de cerises,*      Two pounds of cherries.

*Quatre aunes de mousseline,*      Four yards of muslin.

*Trop de vin,*      Too much wine.

*Moins de mérite,*      Less merit.

*Plus de sagesse,*      More wisdom.

After the negation *pas* or *point*, no or not; the words  
*que*, what; *quelque-chose*, something; and *rien*, nothing:  
 ex.

*Point*

<i>Point de repos,</i>	No rest.
<i>Que de bruit !</i>	What a noise !
<i>Que d' intégrité !</i>	What integrity !
<i>Quelque-chose* de bon,</i>	Something good.
<i>Rien de mauvais,</i>	Nothing bad.

Before nouns of countries, kingdoms, and provinces, when preceded by a noun expressing a personal title, or by a verb signifying *coming, arriving, or returning* from : ex.

<i>Le roi d' Angleterre,</i>	The King of England.
<i>Il arrive de France,</i>	He arrives from France, &c.

N. B. Speaking of either of the *four parts of the world*, the present custom requires the definite article to be used : ex.

<i>Mon frère arrive de l' Amé- rique,</i>	My brother arrives from America.
<i>Elle vient de l' Asie,</i>	She comes from Asia.

### EXERCISES ON THESE RULES.

I have bought six yards of cloth. —  
*Je, pro. ai, v. acheté, p.p. drap, m.*  
 Bring me three pounds of veal and two  
*Apportez, v. moi, pro. trois veau, m. deux*  
 pounds of mutton. — She has a great  
*mouton, m. Elle, pro. a, v. un grand, adj.*  
 number of children. — Do <sup>1</sup>not<sup>4</sup> give<sup>3</sup> her<sup>2</sup>  
*nombre, m. ne-pas donnez, v. lui, pro.*  
 (too <sup>5</sup> many) pears.<sup>6</sup> — I<sup>1</sup> have<sup>3</sup> <sup>2</sup>no<sup>4</sup> daughters.<sup>5</sup> —  
*trop, adv. ai, v. ne point, fille, f.*  
 Did you see the duke of Bavaria with the  
*Avez, v. vous, pro. vu, p.p. duc, m. Bavière, f. avec, p.*  
 archbishop of York ? — We have (so many)  
*archevêque, m. Nous, pro. avons, v. tant*  
 D grapes.

\* It must be observed, that the word *chose*, standing by itself, is of the feminine gender ; but, being joined to the word *quelque*, it is of the masculine.

X. See ante p. 142/3. —



grapes. — They have (a little) money. — I  
*raisin, m. Ils, pro. ont, v. un peu, adv.*

know the king of Prussia. — He has more  
*connois, v. Prusse, f. Il, pro. a, v.*

friends than you. — (There were) (so many)  
*ami, m. que, c. vous, pro. Il y'avoit, v.*

ladies. — He commanded an army of forty  
*dame, f. commandoit, v. une armée, f. quarante*

thousand men. — She<sup>1</sup> says<sup>3</sup> <sup>2</sup>nothing<sup>4</sup> true. —  
*mille dit, v. ne rien, adv. vrai, adj.*

You speak of Alexander, king of Macedonia. f.  
*parlez, v. Alexandre, m. Macédoine, f.*

Do you<sup>2</sup> come<sup>1</sup> from<sup>3</sup> Italy? No; I come from  
*venez, v. Italie, f. viens, v.*

Africa.

*Afrique, f.*

*De* is likewise placed before nouns governed by another substantive, of which they express the CHARACTER, CAUSE, COUNTRY, MATTER, NATURE, and QUALITY: ex.

*Une<sup>1</sup> maison<sup>2</sup> de brique,<sup>3</sup> A<sup>1</sup> brick<sup>3</sup> house.<sup>2</sup>*

*Du vin<sup>1</sup> de Bourgogne,<sup>2</sup> Burgundy<sup>2</sup> wine,<sup>1</sup> &c.*

After the adjectives of number, when they are followed by a participle passive: ex.

*Quatre de renvoyés, Four sent away, &c.*

## EXERCISES ON THESE RULES.

Your<sup>1</sup> sister<sup>2</sup> has<sup>3</sup> a<sup>4</sup> silk<sup>6</sup> gown<sup>5</sup> and a gold

*Votre, pro. sœur, f. a, v. une, soie, f. robe, f. un, or, m.*

thimble. — We drink Champagne wine. —  
*dé, m. Nous, pro. buvons, v. Champagne, f.*

(It is) a marble pillar. — They have a  
*C'est, v. marbre, m. pillier, m. Ils, pro. ont, v. une*

country-house. — Edinburgh is the capital  
*campagne, f. maison, f. Edinbourg, est, v. capitale, adj.*

city

city of the kingdom of Scotland. — Shut<sup>1</sup> the<sup>2</sup>  
*ville, f. royaume, m. Ecosse, f. Fermez, v.*  
 fore<sup>+</sup> - door.<sup>3</sup> — A lady of wit is a jewel  
*devant, m. porte, f. Une dame, f. esprit, m. est, v. un joyau, m.*  
 of worth. — (He is) a man of honour. — She  
*prix, m. C'est, v. un*  
 has bought silver buckles and diamond  
*acheté, p.p. argent, m. boucle, f. diamant, m.*  
 ear - rings. — Have you spoken to the silk-  
*pendans d'oreille, m. Avez, v. parlé, p.p. soie, f.*  
 merchant. — Give<sup>1</sup> me<sup>2</sup> the<sup>3</sup> upper<sup>5</sup> - crust.<sup>4</sup> —  
*marchand, m. Donnez, v. moi, pro. dessus, m. croûte, f.*  
 Sixty lost. — Bring me my straw hat.  
*Soixante perdu, p.p. mon, pro. paille, f. chapeau, m.*

DE is placed after the adjectives signifying DIMENSION; as, *épais*, thick; *gros*, big, large; *haut*, high, tall; *large*, wide, broad; *long*, long: and *profond*, deep; though there is no article expressed in English: ex.

*Une<sup>1</sup> table<sup>2</sup> longue<sup>3</sup> de dix<sup>4</sup>*      *A<sup>1</sup> table<sup>2</sup> ten<sup>4</sup> feet<sup>5</sup> long<sup>3</sup>*  
*pieds<sup>5</sup> et<sup>5</sup> large<sup>7</sup> de huit,<sup>8</sup>*      *and<sup>5</sup> eight<sup>3</sup> broad.<sup>7</sup>*

But there is a more elegant way, which is, to turn the adjective of dimension into the substantive: then the words of measure and those of dimension are preceded by *de*: ex.

*Une table de dix pieds de*      *A table ten feet long and*  
*longueur et de huit de*      *eight broad.*  
*largeur,*

In this last example, it may be seen that the French and English are parallel with each other; therefore, in the following exercise, the adjective and substantive are put down, that the learner may translate it both ways.

### EXERCISES ON THESE RULES.

I have a box four inches thick,  
*Je, pro. ai, v. une, boîte, f. quatre, ponce, m. épais-seur, f.\**

\* Read *épais*, adjective, *épaisseur*, substantive, and so of the others.



ten feet long, and six broad.—I know  
*dix pied*, m. long—*ueur*, f. *six large-ur*, f. *connois*, v.

a man seven feet high.—(It is) a ditch nine  
*un sept haut*—*eur*, f. *C'est*, v. *un fossé*, m. *neuf*  
 feet six inches deep and five feet broad.—

*profond*—*eur*, f. *cinq*

(There is) a room fifty paces long and  
*Voilà une chambre*, f. *cinquante pas*, m.

twenty broad. —The walls of our garden  
*vingt muraille*, f. *notre*, pro.

are thirty feet three inches high, and two  
*sont*, v. *ont*, v. *trente trois deux*  
 broad.

If the learner translate this last sentence by the adjective of dimension, he must use the word *sont*, which is the proper word of the English ARE, and follows the preceding rule: but, if he turn the adjective of dimension into its substantive, the word *être*, to be, is to be rendered into French by the verb *avoir*, to have, and *de* before the word of measure is suppressed. In this last case, the word *ont* must be inserted instead of *sont*. Example by the adjective:

*Notre chambre est longue*  
*de vingt pieds et large*  
*de douze :*

By the substantive:

*Notre chambre a vingt pieds* Our room is twenty feet  
*de longueur et douze de* long and twelve broad.  
*largeur ;*

When two substantives are joined together by a hyphen, both making a compound word in English, the first of which denotes the *form* or *use* of the second, the latter must be placed before the former in French, and followed by the *dative* of this article à : ex.

✓ *Un moulin*<sup>1</sup> *à papier*,<sup>2</sup> A paper<sup>2</sup> - mill.<sup>1</sup>  
 ✓ *Une boîte*<sup>1</sup> *à poudre*,<sup>2</sup> A powder<sup>2</sup> - box.<sup>1</sup>

EX-

*See anth. p. 19. —*

## EXERCISES ON THIS RULE.

Gun - powder was invented by a monk.

*Canon, m. poudre, f. fut, v. inventée, p. p. par, p. moine, m.*

—The servant has lost the tinder-box, and  
*a, v. perdu, p. p. fusil, m.*

cannot light the candle.—If you go to  
*ne sauroit, v. allumer, v. chandelle, f. Si, c. allez, v.*

London to-morrow, bring me a toupee-  
*demain, adv. apportez, v. moi, pro. toupet, m.*

iron. — Have you seen the water-mill which  
*fer, m. Avez, v. vu, p. p. que, pro.*

my father has bought?—No, but I have  
*mon, pro. acheté, p. p. Non, adv. mais, c. ai, v.*

seen the wind-mill which your brother has built  
*vent, m. fait bâtir, v.*

at Greenwich.—I have found your sister's work-  
*à, p. trouvé, p. p. ouvrage, m.*

bag in the eating - room.  
*sac, m. dans, p. manger, m. chambre, f.*

DECLENSION of UN, m. UNE, f. A or AN.

SINGULAR.—Masculine.

Nom. Acc. *un livre*, a book.

Gen. Abl. *d'un livre*, of or from a book.

Dat. *à un livre*, to a book.

Feminine.

Nom. Acc. *une plume*, a pen.

Gen. Abl. *d'une plume*, of or from a pen.

Dat. *à une plume*, to a pen.

## EXERCISES UPON THIS ARTICLE.

I have a hat and a sword.—She speaks of  
*ai, v. chapeau, m. épée, f. Elle, pro. parle, v.*

an officer. — He<sup>1</sup> has<sup>3</sup> given<sup>4</sup> it<sup>2</sup> to<sup>5</sup> a  
*officier, m. Il, pro. a, v. donné, p. p. le, pro.*

D 2

sailor.<sup>6</sup>



faiſor.<sup>s</sup> ——— (There are) a bird and a cage.  
*matelot, m. Voilà, adv. oiseau, m. cage, f.*

It muſt be obſerved, that the Engliſh article *A* or *AN*, before nouns of MEASURE, WEIGHT, NUMBER, and a PART OF TIME, muſt be rendered in French by the definite article, *le, la, les* : ex.

*Deux chelins le cent.* Two ſhillings *a* hundred.

*Un écu le boiſſeau,* A crown *a* buſhel.

And by the prepoſition *par*, uſed in the ſenſe of EACH, EVERY, or PER : ex.

*Je lui donne deux chelins* I give him two ſhillings *a*.  
*par ſemaine,* week.

*Une guinée par mois,* One guinea *a* month.

N. B. *A* or *an* is not to be expreſſed when it immediately precedes a noun in the nominative or accuſative caſe, denoting *title, dignity, office, buſineſs,* &c. or words which denote the *gender* or *ſpecies* of things; and laſtly, after the verb *être*, to be, unleſs that verb be preceded by *ce* in the third perſon ſingular, or the above nouns be followed by one of the relative pronouns, *who, whom, which, &c.* or by an adjective in the ſuperlative degree : ex.

*M. D—, membre de la* Mr. D—, *a* member of the  
*chambre des communes,* houſe of commons, ſpoke  
*parla beaucoup hier.* very much yeſterday.

*J'ai lu Caſtor et Pollux,* I have read Caſtor and Pol-  
*opéra François.* lux, *a* French opera.

*Etes-vous Anglois?* Are you *an* Engliſhman?

*Non, M. je ſuis François.* No, ſir, I am *a* Frenchman.

*Sa ſœur eſt marchande de* Her ſiſter is *a* milliner and  
*modes et ſon frère eſt* her brother is *a* tailor.  
*tailleur.*

## EXERCISES ON THESE RULES.

Barley	ſells	for three	ſhillings <i>a</i>
Orge, f.	<i>ſe vend, v.</i>	<i>trois, adj.</i>	<i>chelin, m.</i>
buſhel. ———	That	ale	(is worth) ſix pence
boiſſeau, m.	<i>Cette, pro.</i>	<i>aile, f.</i>	<i>vaut, v.</i> ſou, m.

a pint.—Beef costs four pence a pound.—  
*pinte, f. Bœuf, m. coûte, v. quatre, adj. livre, f.*

This lace cost a crown an ell. ——— He  
*Cette, pro. dentelle, f. coûta, v. écu, m. aune, f. Il, pro.*

sells his best cloth a guinea a yard.—  
*vend, v. son, pro. meilleur, adj. drap, m. guinée, f. verge, f.*

My master comes twice a week.—Bur-  
*Mon, pro. vient, v. deux fois, adv. semaine, f.*

gundy wine is sold nine shillings a bottle.—My  
*se vend, v. neuf, adj.*

uncle goes to France thrice a year.—She  
*oncle, m. va, v. trois fois, adv. an, m. Elle, pro.*

gives three shillings a day and ten pence a mile.—  
*donne, v. jour, m. mille, m.*

Are you a physician? ——— No, sir, I am a  
*Etes, v. médecin, m. suis, v.*

surgeon.—Bristol, a sea-port, passes now  
*chirurgien, m. mer, f. port, m. passe, v. à présent, adv.*

for the second city of the kingdom of England.—  
*pour, p.*

The<sup>1</sup> king<sup>2</sup> made<sup>4</sup> him<sup>3</sup> a bishop.<sup>5</sup> ——— Is she a  
*fit, v. le, pro. évêque, m. Est, v.*

dutcheſs or a marchioneſs?  
*ducheſſe, f. marquise, f.*

## OF NOUNS ADJECTIVE.

### RULE to form their FEMININE GENDER.

Many adjectives in *al* have no plural for their masculine, as *conjugal*, conjugal; *fatal*, fatal; *filial*, filial; *natal*, natal; *naval*, naval; *total*, total; and some few others, with which a little practice will soon acquaint the learner.

Adjectives ending in *e* mute are of both genders: ex.

*Un jeune homme,* a young man.

*Une jeune femme,* a young woman.

\* As to how the plural is formed, see  
*ante p. 8. —* Adjectives.



Adjectives ending with one of the following letters, *d, é, i, l, n, r, s, t,* and *u*, form their feminine by adding an *e* mute : ex.

Masc.	<i>Grand,</i>	Fem.	<i>grande</i>	great.
	<i>Poli,</i>		<i>polie,</i>	polite.
	<i>Aimé,</i>		<i>aimée,</i>	loved.
	<i>Civil,</i>		<i>civile,</i>	civil.
	<i>Demi,</i>		<i>demie,</i>	half.
	<i>Nu,</i>		<i>nue,</i>	bare, naked.

These two last adjectives are indeclinable when they precede a substantive, but are declinable when they follow it : ex.

<i>Une demi-livre,</i>	a half-pound.
<i>Une livre et demie,</i>	a pound and a half.
<i>Nu tête,</i>	bare-head.
<i>Nu pieds,</i>	bare-foot.

There are a few ending in *an, as, el, il, eil, ien, in, ès, et, is, on, os, ot,* and *ul*, that double the final letter, before an *e* mute, for the feminine : ex.

Masc.	Fem.
<i>Paysan,</i> countryman.	<i>Paysanne,</i> countrywoman.
<i>Gras,</i>	<i>grasse,</i> fat.
<i>Gentil,</i>	<i>gentille,</i> genteel.
<i>Eternel,</i>	<i>éternelle,</i> eternal.
<i>Pareil,</i>	<i>pareille,</i> alike.
<i>Chrétien,</i>	<i>Chrétienne,</i> Christian.
<i>Epais,</i>	<i>épaisse,</i> thick.
<i>Bon,</i>	<i>bonne,</i> good.
<i>Gros,</i>	<i>grosse,</i> big.
<i>Sot,</i>	<i>sotte,</i> foolish.

The following are very irregular, and cannot be comprised under any rule, viz.

Masc.	<i>Beau, bel,*</i>	Fem.	<i>belle,</i>	handsome, fine.
	<i>Benin,</i>		<i>benigne,</i>	benign.
	<i>Favori,</i>		<i>favorite,</i>	favourite.
	<i>Fou, fol,*</i>		<i>folle,</i>	fool.
	<i>Frais,</i>		<i>fraîche,</i>	fresh.

Masc.

\* *Bel* and *fol* are used before substantives beginning with a vowel, or *h* not aspirated.

Masc.	<i>Long,</i>	Fem.	<i>longue,</i>	long.
	<i>Malin,</i>		<i>maligne,</i>	malicious.
	<i>Mou,</i>		<i>molle,</i>	soft.
	<i>Nouveau, nouvel,*</i>		<i>nouvelle,</i>	new.
	<i>Vieux, vieil,*</i>		<i>vieille,</i>	old.

Adjectives ending in *c* add *he* to the *c* for their feminine : ex.

Masc.	<i>Blanc,</i>	Fem.	<i>blanche,</i>	white.
	<i>Franc,</i>		<i>franche,</i>	sincere.
	<i>Sec,</i>		<i>sèche,</i>	dry, &c.

The four following are excepted :

Masc.	<i>Caduc,</i>	Fem.	<i>caduque,</i>	in decay.
	<i>Grec,</i>		<i>Greque,</i>	Greek.
	<i>Public,</i>		<i>publique,</i>	public.
	<i>Turc,</i>		<i>Turque,</i>	Turkish.

Those ending in *f* change *f* into *ve* for the feminine : ex.

Masc.	<i>Bref,</i>	Fem.	<i>brève,</i>	short.
	<i>Naïf,</i>		<i>naïve,</i>	plain, ingenuous.
	<i>Neuf,</i>		<i>neuve,</i>	new.
	<i>Veuf, widower,</i>		<i>veuve,</i>	widow.
	<i>Vif,</i>		<i>vive,</i>	quick.

Adjectives ending in *x* change *x* into *se* : ex.

Masc.	<i>Douloureux,</i>	Fem.	<i>douloureuse,</i>	dolorous, painful.
	<i>Heureux,</i>		<i>heureuse,</i>	happy, &c.
	<i>Jaloux,</i>		<i>jalouse,</i>	jealous.

The following are excepted :

Masc.	<i>Doux,</i>	Fem.	<i>douce,</i>	sweet.
	<i>Faux,</i>		<i>fausse,</i>	false.
	<i>Perplex,</i>		<i>perplèxe,</i>	perplexed.
	<i>Préfix,</i>		<i>préfixe,</i>	prefixed.
	<i>Roux,</i>		<i>rousse,</i>	reddish.

## DECLENSION OF NOUNS ADJECTIVE.

French adjectives must agree with their substantives in gender, number, and case : ex.

### SINGULAR

\* *Nouvel* and *vieil* are also used before substantives beginning with a vowel or *h* not aspirated.



## SINGULAR. — Masculine.

Nom. Acc.	<i>Le bon livre,</i>	the good book.
Gen. Abl.	<i>du bon livre,</i>	of or from, &c.
Dat.	<i>au bon livre,</i>	to the good book.

## PLURAL.

Nom. Acc.	<i>Les bons livres,</i>	the good books.
Gen. Abl.	<i>des bons livres,</i>	of or from, &c.
Dat.	<i>aux bons livres,</i>	to the good books.

## SINGULAR. — Feminine.

Nom. Acc.	<i>La bonne plume,</i>	the good pen.
Gen. Abl.	<i>de la bonne plume,</i>	of or from, &c.
Dat.	<i>à la bonne plume,</i>	to the good pen.

## PLURAL.

Nom. Acc.	<i>Les bonnes plumes,</i>	the good pens.
Gen. Abl.	<i>des bonnes plumes,</i>	of or from, &c.
Dat.	<i>aux bonnes plumes,</i>	to the good pens.

As two or more substantives in the singular are equivalent to a plural, the verb and adjective, or participle past, must be put in the plural when they refer to two or more substantives in the singular, and that adjective or participle is to be put in the masculine, if those substantives be of different genders : ex.

*Le frère, la sœur, le neveu,* The brother, sister, ne-  
*et la nièce, sont tous* phew, and niece, are *all*  
*bons,* good.

*Le roi, la reine, le prince,* The king, queen, prince,  
*et la princesse, étoient* and princess, were *gone*  
*fortis,* out.

But, when two or more substantives of different genders are immediately followed by an adjective or participle, the French language requires that adjective or participle to agree in gender and number with the last substantive ; *except* those adjectives or participles implying *union* or *collection*, such as *joint*, *uni*, *réuni*, &c. which follow the foregoing rule.

*Il gouverne avec un pouvoir* He governs with an *absolute*  
*et une autorité absolue,* power and authority.  
*Elle laissa le coffre, le cabinet,* She left the trunk, the clo-  
*et la chambre, ouverte,* set, and the room, *open.*

*Fait*

*J'ai trouvé les enfans, le père, et la mère, réunis,* I found the children, father and mother, *united.*

### THE PLACE OF THE ADJECTIVE IN A SENTENCE.

Some adjectives are always placed before their substantives, and others after them ; but there is a kind of adjectives which may either precede or succeed their substantives, as the euphony of the sentence requires.

The following must be placed before :

<i>Beau,</i>	handsome, fine.	<i>Joli,</i>	pretty.
<i>Bon,</i>	good.	<i>Méchant,</i>	wicked.
<i>Brave,</i>	brave.	<i>Mauvais,</i>	bad.
<i>Cher,</i>	dear.	<i>Meilleur,</i>	better.
<i>Chétif,</i>	vile, poor, mean.	<i>Moindre,</i>	less.
<i>Galant,</i>	well-bred.	<i>Petit,</i>	little, small.
<i>Grand,</i>	great, tall.	<i>Saint,</i>	holy, faint.
<i>Gros,</i>	big, large.	<i>Tout,</i>	all.
<i>Honnête,</i>	honest, civil.	<i>Vieux,</i>	old.
<i>Jeune,</i>	young.	<i>Vrai,</i>	true.

### EXERCISES ON THE FOREGOING ADJECTIVES.

I have seen a handsome lady who (was speaking) to an old gentleman. — He had a fine hat and a pretty sword. — Your little sister deserved a better fate. — Your father was a brave general and a well-bred man. — I know a young man who has a good horse, but a bad stable. — He<sup>1</sup> has<sup>3</sup> lent<sup>4</sup> it<sup>2</sup> to<sup>5</sup> an honest<sup>6</sup> man. — The apostle Paul was a holy man. — My brother has bought



bought a good watch. — You have lost all  
*acheté, p. p. montre, f. avez, v. perdu, p. p.*  
 your money.

Some adjectives have very different meanings, according as they are placed before or after their substantive; as, *une femme sage*, a wise woman; *une sage femme*, a midwife: and *une grosse femme*, a big woman; *une femme grosse*, a woman with child: *un homme honnête*, a civil man; *un honnête homme*, an honest man, &c. A little practice will remove many apparent difficulties.

Adjectives, expressing names of *nations, colour, figure, form, taste, hearing, and touching*, those that denote *natural* qualities, together with those ending in *ile, ie*, and *ique*, as also the *participles*, when used adjectively, must be placed after their substantives.

### EXERCISES ON THE FOREGOING RULE.

You have an English hat, and she has  
*Anglois, adj. chapeau, m. elle, pro. a, v.*  
 a French gown. — He reads an Italian proverb. — I like the German tongue, and a  
*François, adj. robe, f. Il, pro. lit, v. Italien, adj. pro-*  
*verbe, m. aime, v. Allemand, adj. langue, f.*  
 Spanish drefs. — (It is) a square place. —  
*Espagnol, adj. habillement, m. C'est, v. quarré, adj. place, f.*  
 She likes sweet wine. — Your sister has  
*Elle, pro. aime, v. doux, adj. vin, m. Votre, pro. sœur, f. a, v.*  
 an harmonious voice. — I have bought a white  
*harmonieux, adj. voix, f. acheté, p. p. blanc, adj.*  
 gown and a black cloak. — You have a faithful  
*noir, adj. mantelet, m. fidèle, adj.*  
 servant. — I eat green peas with  
*domestique, m. et, f. mange, v. verd, adj. pois, m. avec, p.*  
 boiled mutton. — Bring me a pound and a half of  
*bouilli, p. p. mouton, m. demi, adj.*  
 cherries

cherries and half a pound of currants. — We  
*cerises, f. groseilles, f. Nous, pro.*  
 had a kind reception, and we played at  
*eûmes, v. favorable, adj. accueil, m. jouâmes, v. à p.*  
 a diverting game. — He lives in a  
*divertissant, adj. jeu, m. Il, pro. demeure, v. dans, p.*  
 cold country. — You have left the windows  
*froid, adj. pays, m. laissé, p.p. fenêtre, f.*  
 and the door open. — Will you have a bit  
*porte, f. Voulez, v. morceau, m.*  
 of roasted chicken? — She prefers a  
*rôti, p.p. poulet, m. Elle, pro. préfère, v.*  
 round table. — Do you<sup>2</sup> read<sup>1</sup> the<sup>3</sup> Punic<sup>5</sup>  
*rond, adj. table, f. lisez, v. Punique, adj.*  
 war?<sup>4</sup> — He has made a rash vow. —  
*guerre, f. fait, p.p. téméraire, adj. vœu, m.*  
 Your sister is an agreeable lady. — I like  
*est, v. agréable, adj. dame, f. aime, v.*  
 a grey stuff. — (It was) really a tragical  
*gris, adj. étoffe, f. C'étoit, v. réellement, adv. tragique, adj.*  
 history.  
*histoire, f.*

When two or more adjectives belong to one substantive, the surest way is to place them after it, with the conjunction *et*, and, before the last; and, if an adjective be used in a sentence without a substantive, this adjective must always be rendered in French by the masculine gender.

### EXERCISES ON THIS RULE.

We have a just, wise, and boun-  
*Nous, pro. avons, v. juste, adj. sage, adj. bien-*  
 iful, king. — Mr. Brown's daughter  
*taisant, adj. Monsieur, m. Brun, m. fille, f.*



is with a sincere and generous lady. —  
*est*, v. *sincère*, adj. *généreux*, adj.

I have a scholar of a solid, bright, and  
*écolier*, m. *solide*, adj. *brillant*, adj.

lively, genius. — The wicked shall be punished.  
*vif*, adj. *esprit*, m. *méchant*, adj. *seront*, v. *puni*, p.p.

— Miss Preston is a young, handsome, and  
*Mademoiselle*, f. *est*, v.

well-shaped, lady. — She has married a sober,  
*bien-fait*, adj. *épousé*, p.p. *sobre*, adj.

virtuous, and amiable, — man. — The good  
*vertueux*, adj. *aimable*, adj.

shall be rewarded.

*seront*, v. *récompensé*, p.p.

## DEGREES OF COMPARISON.

Adjectives and adverbs are the only kind of words that will admit of different degrees of more or less in the several qualities of persons or things.

There are two degrees of comparison.

1. *Le comparatif*, the comparative.
2. *Le superlatif*, the superlative.

Some grammarians admit of another degree, which they call *positive* : but this is merely an adjective, used in its simple signification, without expressing any increase or diminution : ex. *joli*, pretty ; *aimable*, lovely.

The *comparative* refers to some other person or thing, and shews its *equality*, *excess*, or *defect* ; it is therefore of three sorts :

1. *Le comparatif d'égalité*, The comparative by equality.
2. *Le comparatif d'excès*, The comparative by excess.
3. *Le comparatif de défaut*, The comparative by defect.

The *comparative by equality* is formed by placing the adverbs *autant*, as much, or *aussi*, so, before an adjective : ex.

<i>Mon frère est aussi savant</i>	My brother is as learned
<i>que vous,</i>	as you.
<i>Alexandre étoit aussi ambi-</i>	Alexander was as ambi-
<i>tieux que César,</i>	tious as Cæsar.
<i>Ma sœur a autant d'argent</i>	My sister has as much mo-
<i>que vous.</i>	ney as you.

The *comparative by excess* is formed by placing the adverb *plus*, more, before an adjective: ex.

<i>Mademoiselle A. est plus</i>	Miss A. is more learned
<i>savante et plus belle que</i>	and more handsome (or
<i>Mademoiselle B.</i>	handsomer) than Miss B.
<i>Sa cousine a plus de livres</i>	Her cousin has more books
<i>que vous.</i>	than you.

The *comparative by defect* is formed by placing the adverb *moins*, less, before an adjective, or *tant*, so much, or *si*, so, with the negation *ne pas* or *point*, not, or *ne—ni*, neither—nor, before them: ex. ✕

<i>Votre cousine est moins noble</i>	Your cousin is less noble
<i>que vous,</i>	than you.
<i>Il a moins d'esprit que sa</i>	He has less wit than his
<i>sœur,</i>	sister.
<i>Mon père n'est pas si riche</i>	My father is not so rich as
<i>que le vôtre, mais il n'a</i>	yours, but he has not so
<i>pas tant d'amour-propre,</i>	much self-love.

It must be observed, that, in sentences in which the above adverbs *more* or *less* are repeated to express a comparison, the definite article *the*, preceding either, is totally suppressed in French: ex.

<i>Plus une chose est difficile,</i>	The more a thing is diffi-
<i>plus elle est honorable,</i>	cult, the more honour-
	able it is.
<i>Moins vous lui donnez,</i>	The less you give him, the
<i>moins il dépense,</i>	less he spends.
<i>Plus on est pauvre, moins on</i>	The poorer people are, the
<i>a d'embarras,</i>	less care they have.

From the above instances, it may be easily seen that, when the adverbs *tant*, *autant*, *plus*, and *moins*, are immediately followed by a substantive, that substantive

✕ What is the difference to be observed in the employment of *aussi* & *autant*, and *si* & *tant*? Is it not that the latter are always used with a negative, whereas the must



must be preceded by *de*. The learner will also observe, that *si* and *aussi* generally precede adjectives, when a comparison is made with either ; whereas *tant* and *autant* are always followed by a noun or verb, the French conjunction *que*, Englished by either *as*, *than*, or *that*, being the two terms of the comparison : *plus* and *moins* may precede either an adjective, a noun, or verb.

The above comparative adverbs *si*, *aussi*, *tant*, *autant*, *plus*, and *moins*, must be repeated, in French, before each adjective, noun, verb, or adverb, in the sentence : ex.

<i>Votre frère est aussi savant</i>	Your brother is <i>as</i> learned
<i>et aussi éclairé que mon</i>	and enlightened <i>as</i> my
<i>cousin, mais il n'est ni si</i>	cousin, but he is neither
<i>prudent ni si circonspect</i>	<i>so</i> prudent nor circum-
<i>que sa sœur,</i>	spect <i>as</i> his sister.

<i>Mon père a autant de pom-</i>	My father has <i>as many</i> ap-
<i>miers et autant de poi-</i>	ple and pear trees in his
<i>riers dans son verger qu'il</i>	orchard <i>as</i> there are in
<i>y en a dans le vôtre,</i>	yours.

<i>M. Robert n'a ni tant de</i>	Mr. Robert has neither <i>so</i>
<i>bien ni tant d'esprit que</i>	<i>much</i> wealth nor wit <i>as</i>
<i>M. Dubois,</i>	Mr. Dubois.

<i>Son frère aîné sera plus at-</i>	His eldest brother will be
<i>tentif, plus industrieux, et</i>	<i>more</i> attentive, industri-
<i>plus riche, que lui,</i>	ous, and richer, than he.

<i>Mademoiselle S. a moins</i>	Miss S. has <i>less</i> wit, <i>less</i>
<i>d'esprit, moins de viva-</i>	liveliness, and becoming-
<i>cité et moins d'agrémens,</i>	ness, than her sister.
<i>que sa sœur,</i>	

The same rule is to be observed with respect to the adverbs used in forming the superlative degree.

N. B. The three following adjectives are comparatives by themselves : *meilleur*, better ; *pire*, worse ; and *moindre*, less ; which signify *plus bon*, *plus mauvais*, *plus petit*.

The *superlative* expresses the highest degree of any quality. There are two kinds of superlatives : — The *relative*, which expresses the quality of a person or thing  
above

above all others of the same kind. In this case, one of the following articles, *le, la, les, de, du, de la, des, à, au, à, la aux*, precedes the adverbs *plus*, most; *mieux*, best; *moins*, least; before an adjective; or the adjectives *meilleur*, best; *moindre*, least; *pire*, worse: ex.

*Votre sœur est la plus belle* Your sister is *the* handsomest (or the most handsome) and *the* best woman in town.  
*et la meilleure femme de*  
*la ville,*

The *absolute* simply expresses the quality of a person or thing in its highest degree. This happens when one of the adverbs *très, fort, bien*, very; *infiniment*, infinitely; precedes an adjective: ex.

*Votre oiseau est très, fort, or bien, joli,* Your bird is very pretty.

*Dieu est infiniment bon,* God is infinitely good.

When any of the comparatives by excess or defect are preceded by one of the possessive pronouns *mon, ton, son, notre, votre, leur*, &c. they become superlatives: ex.

*Vous êtes mon meilleur ami,* You are my best friend.

## EXERCISES UPON THE DEGREES OF COMPARISON.

You<sup>1</sup> are<sup>3</sup>            <sup>2</sup>not<sup>4</sup>            so<sup>5</sup> dutiful<sup>6</sup>            as<sup>7</sup>  
*êtes, v.    ne-pas, adv.    obéissant, adj.*

your<sup>8</sup>    brother.<sup>9</sup> — Lucia is    handsomer,    but  
*votre, pro. frère, m.    Lucie, f. est, v.    mais, c.*

more proud,            than her    sister. — I            am  
*orgueilleux, adj.    sa, pro. sœur, f.    Je, pro. suis, v.*

as tall            as you. — My            father is as            rich  
*haut, adj.    vous, pro. Mon, pro. père, m.    riche, adj.*

as yours. — His            sister is more covetous than he. —  
*le vôtre, pro. Sa, pro.            avare, adj.    lui, pro.*

Nothing            is pleasanter to the mind than the light  
*Rien ne, adv.    agréable, adj.    esprit, m.    lumière, f.*

of truth. — She            is less polite than her  
*vérité, f. Elle, pro. est, v.    poli, adj.    sa, pro.*

E 2

daughter,



daughter, but her daughter (is not) so revenge-  
*fille, f. mais, c. n'est pas, v. vindica-*

ful as she. — I am your most humble servant  
*tif, adj. elle, pro. humble, adj. serviteur, m.*

— Miss D. (has not) so much wit as her sister,  
*n'a pas, v. esprit, m.*

but she has as much liveliness and is as amiable  
*mais, c. vivacité, f.*

as she. — The 'richer' they<sup>2</sup> are,<sup>3</sup> the more'  
*riche, adj. ils, pro. sont, v.*

covetous<sup>8</sup> they<sup>6</sup> are.<sup>7</sup> — My friend has a very  
*avare, adj. Mon, pro. ami, m. a, v.*

beautiful country - house. — The vine is one of the  
*beau, adj. campagne, f. maison, f. vigne, f.*

most useful and agreeable gifts of Providence.  
*utile, adj. agréable, adj. don, m. Providence, f.*

— Nothing is more lovely than virtue, and nothing  
*aimable, adj.*

is more desirable than wisdom. — Paris (is not)  
*désirable, adj. sagesse, f.*

so populous as London. — My best friend is  
*peuplé, adj. Londres.*

dead. — My daughter is taller than your son by  
*mort, adj. Ma, pro. fils, m. de*

two inches. — Virtue is the most precious thing  
*deux précieux, adj. chose, f.*

in the world. — The lion is the strongest and the most  
*du monde, m. fort, adj.*

courageous of all animals. — (There is) the  
*courageux, adj. animal, m. Voilà, adv.*

handsomest Lady in London. — She has as much virtue  
*de*

and good sense as beauty. — Miss P. is the  
*sens, m.*

mildest,

mildest, politeſt, and moſt affable, of all her  
*doux*,adj. *poli*,adj. *affable*,adj. *ſes*,pro.  
 ſiſters. — Your brother is taller than you by the

whole head. ——— If France were as rich as Eng-  
*tout*,adj. *tête*,f. *Si*,c. *étoit*,v.  
 land, (it would be) the beſt country in the world.\*  
*ce ſeroit*,v. *pays*,m.

## OF NUMBERS.

There are two kinds of numbers : 1ſt, The *absolute*,  
 which ſimply relates the number of the things ſpoken  
 of, viz.

<i>Un</i> ,	One.
<i>Deux</i> ,	Two.
<i>Trois</i> ,	Three.
<i>Quatre</i> ,	Four.
<i>Cinq</i> ,	Five.
<i>Six</i> ,	Six.
<i>Sept</i> ,	Seven.
<i>Huit</i> ,	Eight.
<i>Neuf</i> ,	Nine.
<i>Dix</i> ,	Ten.
<i>Onze</i> ,	Eleven.
<i>Douze</i> ,	Twelve.
<i>Treize</i> ,	Thirteen.
<i>Quatorze</i> ,	Fourteen.
<i>Quinze</i> ,	Fifteen.
<i>Seize</i> ,	Sixteen.
<i>Dix-sept</i> ,	Seventeen.
<i>Dix-huit</i> ,	Eighteen.
<i>Dix-Neuf</i> ,	Nineteen.
<i>Vingt</i> ,	Twenty.
<i>Vingt et un</i> ,	Twenty-one.
<i>Vingt-deux</i> ,	Twenty-two.

*Vingt-*

\* It may be obſerved in ſome of theſe examples, that the prepoſition  
 IN, following an adjective in the ſuperlative degree, muſt be rendered  
 in French by one of theſe articles, *de*, *du*, *de la*, *des*, according to the  
 gender and number of the ſubſtantive to which it belongs. The prep-  
 oſition BY, when it follows an adjective in the comparative degree, is  
 rendered by *de* only.



<i>Vingt-trois,</i>	Twenty-three, &c.
<i>Trente,</i>	Thirty.
<i>Trente et un,</i>	Thirty-one.
<i>Trente-deux, &amp;c.</i>	Thirty-two, &c.
<i>Quarante,</i>	Forty.
<i>Cinquante,</i>	Fifty.
<i>Soixante,</i>	Sixty.
<i>Soixante et un,</i>	Sixty-one.
<i>Soixante et deux, &amp;c.</i>	Sixty-two, &c.
<i>Soixante et dix,</i>	Seventy.
<i>Soixante et onze, &amp;c.</i>	Seventy-one, &c.
<i>Quatre-vingts,</i>	Eighty.
<i>Quatre-vingt un,</i>	Eighty-one.
<i>Quatre-vingt deux, &amp;c.</i>	Eighty-two, &c.
<i>Quatre-vingt dix, &amp;c.</i>	Ninety, &c.
<i>Cent,</i>	A or one* hundred.
<i>Cent un, &amp;c.</i>	A or one* hundred and one, &c.
<i>Deux cens,</i>	Two Hundred.
<i>Trois cens, &amp;c.</i>	Three Hundred, &c.
<i>Neuf cens,</i>	Nine hundred.
<i>Mille, mil,†</i>	A or one* thousand.
<i>Deux mille,</i>	Two Thousand.
<i>Trois mille, &amp;c.</i>	Three Thousand, &c.
<i>Cent mille, &amp;c.</i>	A or one hundred thousand, &c.
<i>Neuf cens mille,</i>	Nine hundred thousand.
<i>Un million,</i>	A million.

These *absolute numbers* are declined with the article indefinite, *de*, *à*, and are always placed before the substantive to which they are joined : ex.

<i>Trois hommes,</i>	Three men.
<i>Cinquante femmes,</i>	Fifty women, &c.

They are invariable in their form, except *vingt*, twenty; *cent*, a hundred; and *million*, a million; which take an *s* in their plural.

It

\* It will be seen by the above, that the English particle *a* or *one* is not expressed in French : ex.

*Je l'ai vu et lui ai parlé cent fois,* I have seen him and spoken to him a hundred times, a thousand times.

† Mentioning the date of the year, we must write *mil*, and not *mille* : *L'an mil sept cens quatre-vingt dix-neuf*, the year 1799.

It must be observed, that, when the number *un*, one, comes after *vingt*, twenty ; *trente*, thirty ; *quarante*, forty, &c. the substantive, relating to those two numbers taken together, is put in the singular in French, though in the plural in English : ex.

<i>Vingt et un homme,</i>	One-and-twenty men.
<i>Trente et un écu,</i>	One-and-thirty crowns.
<i>Quarante et un jour,</i>	One-and-forty days, &c.

And, when the noun singular, in French, immediately following the *unit*, is attended by an adjective, that adjective must be put in the plural : ex.

<i>Mon frère a vingt et un ans accomplis,</i>	My brother is full one-and-twenty years old.
---	--

<i>Voilà trente et une guinée bien comptées,</i>	There are one-and-thirty guineas well told.
--	---

N. B. Such were the opinion and decision of the French academy some years ago, but now the best authors write *vingt et un ans accomplis* ; *trente et une guinées bien comptées*, &c.

However, custom will have us say,

<i>Vingt et un chevaux,</i>	One-and-twenty horses.
<i>Trente et un volumes,</i>	One-and-thirty volumes.

N. B. The cardinal numbers must be used in French when speaking of the days of the month, though the ordinal be used in English ; as, *le deux*, *le cinq*, *le sept*, *le onze*, *le vingt*, *le vingt-et-un*, *le vingt-huit*, *de Novembre* ; the *second*, the *fifth*, the *seventh*, the *eleventh*, the *twentieth*, the *twenty-first*, the *twenty-eighth*, of *November* ; but we must say, *le premier*, the first, speaking of the first day of every month : as, *le premier de Mai*, the first of May ; *le premier de Novembre*, the first of November, &c.

2d. The *ordinal numbers*. — This class of numerals, besides the simple notation, signifies the order or rank of things, viz.

<i>Le premier</i> or <i>unième</i> ,	The first.
<i>Le second</i> or <i>deuxième</i> ,	The second.
<i>Le troisième</i> ,	The third.

*Le*



<i>Le quatrième,</i>	The fourth.
<i>Le cinquième,</i>	The fifth.
<i>Le sixième,</i>	The sixth.
<i>Le septième,</i>	The seventh.
<i>Le huitième,</i>	The eighth.
<i>Le neuvième,</i>	The ninth.
<i>Le dixième,</i>	The tenth.
<i>Le onzième,*</i>	The eleventh.
<i>Le douzième,</i>	The twelfth.
<i>Le treizième,</i>	The thirteenth.
<i>Le quatorzième,</i>	The fourteenth.
<i>Le quinzième,</i>	The fifteenth.
<i>Le seizième,</i>	The sixteenth.
<i>Le dix-septième,</i>	The seventeenth.
<i>Le dix-huitième,</i>	The eighteenth.
<i>Le dix-neuvième,</i>	The nineteenth.
<i>Le vingtième,</i>	The twentieth.
<i>Le vingt et unième,</i>	The twenty-first.
<i>Le vingt-deuxième, &amp;c.</i>	The twenty-second, &c.
<i>Le trentième,</i>	The thirtieth.
<i>Le trente deuxième, &amp;c.</i>	The thirty-second, &c.
<i>Le quarantième,</i>	The fortieth.
<i>Le cinquantième,</i>	The fiftieth.
<i>Le soixantième,</i>	The sixtieth.
<i>Le soixante et dixième,</i>	The seventieth.
<i>Le quatre-vingtième,</i>	The eightieth.
<i>Le centième,</i>	The hundredth.
<i>Le cent unième,</i>	The hundred and first.
<i>Le cent deuxième, &amp;c.</i>	The hundred & second, &c.
<i>Le deux centième,</i>	The two hundredth.
<i>Le millième,</i>	The thousandth.

These *ordinal numbers* are declined with the article definite, *le, la, &c.* and are placed before their substantives : ex.

<i>Le premier jour du mois,</i>	<i>The first day of the month.</i>
<i>La cinquième dame,</i>	<i>The fifth lady.</i>

Speaking

\* No elision is to be made in the article before *onze, onzième* ; for, we say, *le, du, au, la, de la, à, la, &c, onze, onzième.*

Speaking of sovereigns, we use the *absolute number* in French, though the *ordinal* be used in English; but we place it after the substantive, as in English, without expressing the article *the*: ex.

<i>Louis Seize,</i>	<i>Lewis the Sixteenth.</i>
<i>Henri Quatre,</i>	<i>Henry the Fourth.</i>

However, common usage requires us to say,  
*Henri Premier,*                      *Henry the First.*  
*George Second,*                      *George the Second.*  
 and not *Henri Un, George Deux.* We also say,  
*Charles Quint,*                      *Charles the Fifth.*  
*Sixte Quint,*                      *Sixtus the Fifth.*

The definite article *the* is also suppressed, in French, before the ordinal number, when it is preceded by a noun used to quote a *chapter, article, or page* of a book: ex.

<i>Livre troisième,</i>	<i>Book the third.</i>
<i>Chapitre premier,</i>	<i>Chapter the first.</i>
<i>Verſet dixième,</i>	<i>Verse the tenth.</i>

But, should the ordinal number precede the noun, the construction is the same in French as in English, and the article is expressed: ex.

<i>Le premier livre,</i>	<i>The first book.</i>
<i>La quatrième page,</i>	<i>The fourth page.</i>

## RECAPITULATORY OR PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES UPON ALL THE PRECEDING RULES.

Ignorance is the mother of admiration, er-  
*Ignorance, f. est, v. mère, f. admiration, f. er-*  
 ror, and superstition. — The covetous despise the  
*reur, f. superstition, f. avare, adj. méprisent, v.*  
 poor. — Humility is the basis of Christian virtues  
*pauvre, adj. Humilité, f. base, f. Chrétien, adj. vertu, f.*  
 — Pride is generally the effect of ignorance.  
*Orgueil, m. effet, m.*  
 — Give me some bread, meat, turnips, and  
*Donnez, v. moi, pro. navet, m.*  
 water.



water. — Merit and favour are the two springs  
*Mérite, m. faveur, f. sont, v. source, f.*

of envy. — Interest, pleasure, and glory, are the  
*envie, f. Intérêt, m.*

three motives of the actions and conduct of men. —  
*motif, m. conduite, f.*

Is<sup>2</sup> it<sup>3</sup> 'not<sup>4</sup> Peter's book? — Your father  
*Est, v. ce, pro. ne-pas Votre, pro.*

is gone to London. — The father's house and  
*allé, p.p. maison, f.*

the son's garden (are adjoining). — He found  
*filz, m. jardin, m. se joignent, v. trouva, v.*

the windows and the door shut. — Truth is  
*fermé, p.p. Vérité, f.*

the bond of union and the basis of human hap-  
*lien, m. union, f. humain, adj. bon-*

pinefs; without it, (there is no) confidence in  
*heur, m. sans, p. elle, pro. il n'y a point confiance, f. dans, p.*

friendship and no security in promises. — The  
*amitie, f. point, adv. sûreté, f. promesse, f.*

love of liberty and independence is the character  
*amour, m. liberté, f. est, v. caractère, m.*

of noble minds. — Iron, steel, and brafs,  
*âme, f. Fer, m. acier, m. cuivre, m.*

are more useful than gold and silver. —  
*sont, v. utile, adj. or, m. argent, m.*

The smith has at last repaired the two  
*ferrurier, m. a, v. enfin, adv. réparé, p.p.*

jacks, and the cook is roasting the  
*tourne-broche, m. cuisinière, f. fait rôtir, v.*

meat. — I have seen the inside of the church. —  
*ai, v. vu, p.p. dedans, m. église, f.*

Bring me my powder-box and my toupee-iron.  
*ma, pro. mon, pro.*

—I

— I take a lesson three times a week. — The  
*prends, v.*

study of grammar is<sup>2</sup> neither<sup>3</sup> so dry nor so dull  
*ne—ni, c. sec, adj. ni, c. triste, adj.*

as (it is thought.) — Have prudence and patience,  
*on se l'imagine, v. Ayez, v.*

and you (will have) success. — A good conscience  
*vous, pro. aurez, v. succès, m. conscience, f.*

is to the soul what health is to the body. —  
*âme, f. ce que, pro. santé, f. corps, m.*

Merit and virtue are the only source of true  
*unique, adj. véritable, adj.*

nobility. — Religion, commerce, and arms, are pro-  
*noblesse, f. Religion, f. commerce, m. armes, f. pro-*

per instructions for a young prince. — Her  
*pre, adj. instruction, f. à Son, pro.*

father has been made a knight of the order  
*a, v. été, p.p. fait, p.p. chevalier, m. ordre, m.*

of the Bath, and her grandfather was a knight of the  
*Bain, m. étoit, v.*

order of the garter. — He has not so much  
*jarretière, f. tant, adv.*

profit, but more honour. — Fortune's favours are  
*profit, m. faveur, f.*

seldom the prize of virtue. — This cloth  
*rarement, adj. prix, m. Ce, pro. drap, m.*

is equal to silk. — I see the coast of Eng-  
*comparable, adj. soie, f. vois, v. côte, f.*

land. — A forest twenty miles long and eleven  
*forêt, f. mille, m.*

wide. — The example of a good life is a lesson  
*exemple, m. vie, f. leçon, f.*

for the rest of mankind. — The French  
*pour, p. reste, m. genre humain, m. François, adj.*

F fleet



fleet was destroyed, by the brave Admiral  
*flotte, f. fut, v. détruite, p.p. par, p.*

Nelson, on the first of August, 1798. — The eldest  
*on Août, m. aîné, adj.*

son of the king of England bears the title of Prince  
*porte, v. titre, m.*

of Wales, as presumptive heir to the  
*Galles, f. comme, adv. présomptif, adj. héritier, m.*

crown. — Lewis the Sixteenth was the grandson  
*couronne, f. Louis, m. petit-fils, m.*

of Lewis the Fifteenth. — William, surnamed  
*Guillaume, m. surnommé, p.p.*

the Conqueror, king of England and duke of  
*Conquérant, m. duc, m.*

Normandy, was one of the greatest generals  
*Normandie, f. étoit, v. grand, adj. général, m.*

of the eleventh century. He (was born) at Falaise,  
*siècle, m. naquit, v. à, p.*

and was the natural son of Robert, duke of  
*naturel, adj. fils, m.*

Normandy, and Arlotte, a furrier's daughter. He  
*foureur, m. fille, f.*

died at Hermentrude, in France, on the  
*mourut, v. à, p. en, p.*

ninth of September, 1087. — Mrs. Nelson's  
*Madame, f.*

servant knows the price of all the provisions.  
*servante, f. sait, v. prix, m. tout, adj. denrée, f.*

— She came from America in three weeks. —  
*vint, v. en, p. semaine, f.*

Thomas was formerly a musician, now  
*autrefois, adv. musicien, m. à-présent, adv.*

he is a dancing-master; to-morrow he will be a  
*danse, f. maître, m. demain, adv. sera, v.*  
 painter.

painter. — This water is very agreeable to  
*peintre, m. Cette, pro. agréable, adj.*

the smell. — We (are going) to Coxheath  
*odorat, m. Nous, pro. allons, v.*

to see the camp. — The road to Croydon is  
*en voir, v. camp, m. chemin, m.*

very bad in winter. — Bring us good wine,  
*en, p. hiver, m. Apportez, v. vin, m.*

good beer, and the oil - bottle. — The front  
*bière, f. façade, f.*

of the king's palace (is not) so beautiful as  
*roi, m. palais, m. n'est pas, v.*

I thought. — Generosity excites admiration. —  
*croyois, v. Générosité, f. excite, v. admiration, f.*

Charles the Second, the son of Philip the Fourth, the  
*Philippe*

grand - son of Philip the Third, and the great-grand-  
*petit, adj. arrière-petit-*

child of Philip the Second, left his kingdom to  
*filis laissa, v. son, pro.*

Philip the Fifth. — On the eighteenth of February,  
*en Février, m.*

1478, the Duke of Clarence, brother to king Ed-  
*E-*

ward the Fourth, was drowned in a butt of  
*douard, m. fut, v. noyé, p.p. tonneau, m.*

malmsey - wine. — The inhabitants of the city of  
*malvoisie, f. habitant, m. ville, f.*

Dublin have presented a petition to the king. It  
*ont, v. présenté, p.p. adresse, f. Elle, pro.*

was signed by one-and-twenty knights and  
*étoit, v. signé, p.p. par, p.*

above two hundred citizens. — Good cider is  
*plus, adv. citoyen, m. cidre, m.*

preferable



- preferable to bad wine. — He has many  
*préférable*, adj. *Il*, pro. *a*, v. *bien*, adv.
- children and plenty of money. — The longer  
*beaucoup*, adv. *argent*, m. *long*, adj.
- the day is, the shorter is the night. — You  
*jour*, m. *court*, adj. *nuit*, f. *Vous*, pro.
- have a fine hat. — Shame is a mixture of the  
*avez*, v. *Honte*, f. *mélange*, m.
- grief and fear which infamy causes. —  
*chagrin*, m. *crainte*, f. *que*, pro. *infamie*, f. *cause*, v.
- Religion, morality, government, fine arts, in a  
*morale*, f. *gouvernement*, m. *en*, p.
- word, (every thing) is overturned. — Homer was  
*mot*, m. *tout* *renversé*, p.p. *fut*, v.
- the first poet who personified the divine attri-  
*poète*, m. *personnifia*, v. *divin*, adj. *attri-*
- butes, human passions, and physical causes. —  
*but*, m. *humain*, adj. *physique*, adj.
- Pride and vanity are often the source of the  
*vanité*, f. *souvent*, adv.
- misfortunes of mankind. — We sell good  
*malheur*, m. *Nous*, pro. *vendons*, v.
- bread, excellent meat, and very large fishes,  
*excellent*, adj. *gros*, adj. *poisson*, m.
- but<sup>1</sup> we<sup>2</sup> have<sup>4</sup> neither<sup>5</sup> gold nor silver. —  
*mais*, c. *avons*, v. *ne—ni*, c. *or*, m. *ni*, c. *argent*, m.
- (Is there) any beer in the cellar? — Mrs. B —  
*Y a-t-il* *dans*, p. *cave*, f.
- is a good, virtuous, prudent, and generous, lady;  
*vertueux*, adj. *dame*, f.
- she has a daughter as beautiful as an angel. —  
*elle*, pro. *a*, v. *ange*, m.
- Pindarus (was born) at Thebes, a city of Greece.  
*Pindare*, m. *nâquit*, v. *à*, p. *Grèce*, f.
- Malta

—— Malta is a small island, but it produces  
*Malte, f. île, f. mais, c. elle, pro. produit, v.*

corn, cotton, honey, figs, and the finest  
*blé, m. coton, m. miel, m. figue, f. beau, adj.*

oranges in the world. — The pleasure of the mind  
*orange, f. monde, m. plaisir, m. esprit, m.*  
 is greater than the pleasure of the body ; and the  
*corps, m.*

diseases of the mind are more pernicious than  
*maladie, f. font, v. pernicieux, adj.*

the diseases of the body. — Health, honours, and  
*Santé, f.*

fortune, united together, cannot satisfy  
*uni, p.p. ensemble, adv. ne peuvent, v. satisfaire, v.*

the heart of man. — (It is) in the sixth page of  
*cœur, m. C'est, v. dans, p. page, f.*

the second book, chapter the third. — Miss W——'s

father, a banker in the Strand, is one of  
*banquier, m. dans, p. Strand, m.*

the richest men in town, but she is prouder  
 \* *mais, c. orgueilleux, adj.*

and more haughty than if she were the hand-  
*hautain, adj. étroit, v.*

somest woman in Europe. — Hypocrisy is a  
 \*

homage which vice pays to virtue. —  
*hommage, m. que, pro. vice, m. rend, v.*

A judicious answer does more honour than a  
*judicieux, adj. réponse, f. fait, v.*

brilliant repartee. — Give me a knife and  
*brillant, adj. répartie, f. couteau, m.*

fork. — My father has bought one-and-thirty  
*fourchette, f. acheté, p.p.*



fine grey horses. — (He is) an intrepid man  
*gris, adj. C'est, v. intrépide, adj.*

and a man of honour and probity. — Mr. C—, the  
*probité, f.*

queen's jeweller, has a very prudent wife, and  
*jouailler, m. a, v. prudent, adj.*

the most faithful, industrious, and honest, servant  
*fidèle, adj. industrieux, adj. honnête, adj.*

in the town. — He found beauty, youth, riches,  
*\* trouva, v. jeunesse, f.*

wisdom, and even virtue, united in her  
*même, adv. réuni, p.p. sa, pro.*

person. — Thomas has discretion, but he has  
*a, v. discrétion, f. mais*

no wit. — They have a quantity of  
*ne-point, adv. esprit, m. Ils, pro. ont, v. quantité, f.*

apples and pears. — Vienna, the capital of the empire  
*Vienne, f.*

of Germany, is a fine city. — The more pleasing  
*Allemagne, f. agréable, adj.*

plays are, the more dangerous they are. —  
*spectacle, m. dangereux, adj. ils, pro.*

The rich, the poor, the young, the old, the learned,  
*savant, adj.*

and the ignorant, are all subject to death. — True  
*ignorant, adj. sujet, adj. mort, f. Vrai, adj.*

friends are as rare as good melons. — The  
*ami, m. sont, v. rare, adj. melon, m.*

famous mine of Potosi, in Peru, is above two  
*fameux, adj. mine, f. Pérou, m. plus de, adv.*

hundred and fifty fathoms deep. — Henry the First, king  
*toise, f.*

of England, and brother to William Rufus, died  
*le Roux, mourut, v. the*

the richest prince in Europe. — Paul is taller than  
 \* haut, adj.

you by an inch, but Mrs. Nichol's  
 \* pouce, m. mais, c. Madame, f.

brother is the tallest of all.  
 frère, m. tout, adj.

### SECT. III. OF PRONOUNS.

There are seven sorts of PRONOUNS.

1. *Les Pronoms personnels*, Pronouns personal.
2. *Les Pronoms conjonctifs*, Pronouns conjunctive.
3. *Les Pronoms possessifs*, Pronouns possessive.
4. *Les Pronoms démonstratifs*, Pronouns demonstrative.
5. *Les Pronoms relatifs*, Pronouns relative.
6. *Les Pronoms interrogatifs*, Pronouns interrogative.
7. *Les Pronoms indéfinis*, Pronouns indefinite.

They have their genders, numbers, and cases.

#### OF PRONOUNS PERSONAL.

*Pronouns personal* are those which directly denote the persons and supply the place of them.

There are three persons.

The first is the person that speaks : ex.

*Je parle*, I speak.

*Nous parlons*, We speak.

The second is the person spoken to : ex.

*Tu parles*, Thou speakest.

*Vous parlez*, You speak.

The third is the person spoken of : ex.

*Il or elle parle*, He or she speaks.

*Ils or elles parlent*, They speak.

Both Genders.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

*Je or moi*, I.

*Nous*, we.

*Tu or toi*, thou.

*Vous*, you or ye.

Masculine.

\* See the remarks on the prepositions IN and BY in the note, page 43.



## Masculine.

*Il* or *lui*, he, it.      *Ils* or *eux*, they.

## Feminine.

*Elle*, she, it.      *Elles*, they.

These pronouns are never to be used but as nominatives to the verbs. The rest are declined with the article indefinite : ex.

## First Person for both Genders.

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

G. Ab. *de moi*, of or from me.      *de nous*, of or from us.  
 Dat.    *à moi*, to me.                      *à nous*, to us.  
 Acc.    *moi*, me.                                *nous*, us.

## Second Person for both Genders.

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

G. A. *de toi*, of or from thee.      *de vous*, of or from you.  
 Dat.    *à toi*, to thee.                      *à vous*, to you.  
 Acc.    *toi*, thee.                                *vous*, you.

## Third Person.

## SINGULAR.

## Masculine.

## Feminine.

G. A. *de lui*, of or from him.      *d'elle*, of or from her.\*  
 Dat.    *à lui*, to him.                      *à elle*, to her.  
 Acc.    *lui*, him.                                *elle*, her.

## PLURAL.

## Masculine.

## Feminine.

G. A. *d'eux*, of or from them.      *d'elles*, of or from them.  
 Dat.    *à eux*, to them.                      *à elles*, to them.  
 Acc.    *eux*, them.                                *elles*, them.

There are two other pronouns of the third person, viz.

## SINGULAR and PLURAL. Both Genders.

1st. Gen. Abl. *de soi*, of or from one's self, himself, herself, themselves.

Dat.            *à soi*, to one's self, himself, &c.

Acc.            *soi*, one's self, himself, &c.

N. B. Though it has been said, that the personal pronouns are used for the names of persons, it must not thence

\* HER, when standing by itself, is to be rendered, by *elle*, *la*, or *lui*, but, if joined to a noun, by the pronoun possessive, *son*, *sa*, *ses*.

thence be concluded, that they are never employed for the names of animals or inanimate objects ; this seldom happens in the first and second persons, but the personal pronouns, *il, elle ; ils, elles ;* may denote every object in nature, either animate or inanimate : ex.

<i>Ce chien est fort beau, mais</i>	That dog is very hand-
<i>il est trop gras,</i>	some, but <i>it</i> is too fat.
<i>Voyez-vous cette maison ?</i>	Do you see that house ? <i>it</i>
<i>elle me coûte beaucoup,</i>	costs me much
<i>Ce sont de bons livres, mais</i>	They are good books, but
<i>ils ne sont pas bien reliés,</i>	<i>they</i> are not well bound.
<i>Vos boucles seroient plus à</i>	Your buckles would be
<i>la mode, si elles étoient</i>	more in the fashion, if
<i>plus petites,</i>	<i>they</i> were smaller.

2d. The GENERAL AND INDEFINITE PRONOUN *on*, one, is always considered as a nominative of the masculine gender, and can never be used (in French) but in the singular, though the meaning be plural : ex. when we say,

*On chante, on mange,* They sing, they eat ;  
i. e. some men or women sing, eat.

The word *même*, self, is very often joined to the personal pronouns, to denote, in a more especial manner, the person spoken of : as,

<i>Moi-même,</i>	Myself,
<i>Lui-même,</i>	Himself,
<i>Elle-même,</i>	Herself, &c.

and are declined as above.

OBSERVATIONS ON THE PRONOUNS, *Je* and *Moi* ;  
*Tu* and *Toi* ; *Il* and *Lui* ; *Ils* and *Eux*.

*Je* and *moi* are used in two different senses, though both in the nominative case.—*Je* is always followed or preceded immediately by a verb to which it is the nominative case, and has no need to be joined to any other pronoun : but *moi* always requires to be followed by one pronoun or more either expressed or understood : ex.

<i>Qui a pris mon livre ?</i>	Who took my book ?
<i>C'est moi.</i>	It is I.

That



That is,

*C'est moi qui l'ai pris,*      It is *I* who took it.

*Moi* must be used instead of *je* before an infinitive mood, or at the end of a sentence, when it is intended to express something sudden, as *grief*, *surprise*, &c. ex.

*Moi lui parler !*      I speak to him or her !

In short, *moi* must always be used in French as *I* in English, when it is followed by the pronoun relative, *who* or *whom*, or is preceded by the verb *être*, to be, used impersonally, as *c'est*, it is ; *c'étoit*, it was, &c. ex.

*Moi qui vous aime,*      I who love you.

*C'est moi qui dois y aller,*      It is *I* who am to go there.

And, lastly, *moi* is used whenever any difference or distinction is intended between persons or things, in which case it must be immediately followed by *je* : ex.

<i>Monsieur De la Tour com-</i>	Mr. De la Tour command-
<i>mandoit l'infanterie, et</i>	ed the foot, and <i>I</i> com-
<i>moi je commandois la</i>	manded the horse.
<i>cavalerie,</i>	

*Ils partirent, moi je restai,* They went away, *I* remained.

The same rule is to be attended to with respect to *toi*, *lui*, *eux* : &c.

*Toi qui me parles,*      Thou who speakest to me.

*Je demeurai, et lui s'en*      I remained, and *he* went  
*alla,*      away.

*Eux et mon père sont sortis,*      They and my father went  
*ce matin,*      out this morning.

*Lui et eux, ne pouvant s'ac-*      He and *they* parted, not be-  
*corder, se séparèrent,*      ing able to agree.

*C'est moi qui lui ai écrit,*      It is *I* who wrote to him,  
*mais c'est toi, c'est lui, ce*      but it is *thou*, *he*, *they*,  
*sont eux, qui, &c.*      who, &c.

After these remarks, it is also necessary to observe here, that *je*, *I*, never admits of an adjective or participle immediately after it, except in *acts* or *deeds*, *notes* or *bills*, *receipts*, and the like : ex.

*Je, soussigné, demeurant à*      I, the undersigned, living  
*Londres, déclare, &c.*      in London, declare, &c.

Je,

Je, *souffigné, reconnois avoir  
reçu de Mons. D\*\*\* la  
somme de ———.*

I, the undersigned, ac-  
knowledge to have re-  
ceived from Mr. D\*\*\*  
the sum of ———.

### OF CONJUNCTIVE PRONOUNS.

These pronouns are called *conjunctive*, because they are always joined to some verb by which they are governed, and are generally used for the dative or accusative cases of the personal pronouns. There are three persons in the conjunctive, as in the personal, which are,

For the first Person, both Genders.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

Dat. or Ac. *Me, moi, \*me, or to me, Nous, us, or to us.*  
for *à moi, or moi.* for *à nous, or nous.*

For the second, both Genders.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

Dat. or Ac. *Te, toi, \*thee, or to thee, Vous, you, or to you,*  
for *à toi, or toi.* for *à vous, or vous.*

For the third.

SINGULAR. — Masculine.

✕ Dat. *Lui,* } him, it, *or to him, to it,*  
Acc. *Le,* }  
for *à lui, or lui.*

Feminine.

Dat. *Lui,* } her, it, *or to her, to it,*  
Acc. *La,* }  
for *à elle, or elle.*

PLURAL. Both Genders.

✕ Dat. *Leur,* } them, to them.  
Acc. *Les,* }

for *à eux, m. à elles, f. eux, m. elles, f.*

Dat. or Ac. *Se, one's self, himself, herself, themselves,*  
for *à soi, or soi.*

Five of these pronouns are used for the dative or accusative case, and are both genders, viz.

*Me or moi, te or toi, nous, vous, se : ex.*

*Vous*

\* *Moi* and *toi* must be used, instead of *me* or *te*, after the second person singular or plural of the imperative mood, conjugated without a negative.



<i>Vous me parlez,</i>	<i>You speak to me.</i>
<i>Il vous croit,</i>	<i>He believes you.</i>
<i>Vous me priez de, &amp;c.</i>	<i>You desire me to, &amp;c.</i>

In the first example, *me* is the dative case, because it may be turned by *à moi*, to me ; in the second, *vous* is the accusative, &c.

*Lui* and *leur* are used in the dative only, and are of both genders : ex.

<i>Je lui parle,</i>	<i>I speak to him or to her.</i>
<i>Vous leur écrivez,</i>	<i>You write to them.</i>
<i>Votre chien a besoin d'eau,</i>	<i>Your dog wants water,</i>
<i>lui en donnerai-je ?</i>	<i>shall I give him some ?</i>
<i>Vos chevaux sont fatigués,</i>	<i>Your horses are tired, give</i>
<i>donnez-leur un peu de</i>	<i>them a little rest.</i>
<i>repos,</i>	

The three others are used for the accusative, and may be applied either to things animate or inanimate, viz.

*Le*, masc. him, it ; *la*, fem. her, it ; and *les*, masc. and fem. them : ex.

<i>Je le vois tous les jours,</i>	<i>I see him every day.</i>
<i>Je le sais,</i>	<i>I know it.</i>
<i>Nous la connoissons,</i>	<i>We know her.</i>
<i>Il les enverra ce soir,</i>	<i>He will send them to-night.</i>

There are three other conjunctive pronouns, commonly called particles relative, or supplying pronouns. They are *en*, *y*, and *le*.

*En* always denotes a genitive or ablative, and relates to some object mentioned before ; it is rendered in English by *of* or *from him, her, it, them ; about him, her, it, &c. with or without him, her, it, &c. at it, &c. for it, &c. upon it, &c. any, none, some, some of, &c. thence, thereof* ; and sometimes it is elegantly understood in English, though it must absolutely be expressed in French : ex.

<i>Nous en parlons,</i>	<i>We speak of him, of her,</i>
	<i>of it, of them, about him,</i>
	<i>about her, about it, or</i>
	<i>about them.</i>

<i>J'en suis fâché,</i>	<i>I am sorry for it.</i>
-------------------------	---------------------------

*Donnez-*

Donnez-lui en,

Give him *some*.

Lui en avez-vous porté ?

Did you carry her or him  
*any* ?

Ne lui en envoyez pas,

Send her or him *none*.

Nous en venons,

We come *from it* or *thence*.

In the three last sentences but one, it should be observed, that the pronouns *of it* or *of them* are understood, in English, according to the object or objects mentioned before.

X *Y* is used for the dative only ; it is Englished by *to it*, *to them*, *of it*, *in it*, *upon it*, *thither*, *there*, &c. and very often not expressed in English, though it must be in French.

It seldom supplies the place of animate objects, except when connected with the verbs *fier*, to trust, *penser*, to think, and the like : ex.

Son père ne voulut jamais y  
consentir,

His father never would  
consent *to it*.

Addison composa plusieurs  
ouvrages très estimés, on  
y lit d'excellentes choses,

Addison composed several  
much-esteemed works,  
we read excellent things  
*in them*.

Puisque ces gens-là vous ont  
trompé, ne vous y fiez  
plus,

Since those people have  
deceived you, do not  
trust *them* any more.

Quand un ami est mort  
souvent on n'y pense plus,

When a friend is dead, we  
often think *of him* no  
longer.

X *Le*, which, in English, is either not expressed, or most commonly rendered by *so*, likewise prevents the repetition of one or more words, and supplies the place of the same. It is indeclinable when it relates to, and holds the place of, one adjective or more, a verb, or a whole member of a sentence : ex.

Vous m'avez cru belle, mais  
je ne le suis pas,

You have thought me  
handsome, but I am not.

Nous étions fort embar-  
rassés, et nous le sommes  
encore,

We were much embar-  
rassed, and are *so* yet.



*Les enfans doivent s'appli-  
quer à leurs études au-  
tant qu'ils le peuvent,*

Children ought to apply  
to their studies as much  
as they can.

On the contrary, *le* is declinable when it relates to, and holds the place of, one substantive or more ; then *le* is used for the masculine, *la* for the feminine, and *les* for the plural : ex.

*N'êtes-vous pas le fils de  
Drummond ? — Oui, je le  
suis,*

Are you not Mr. Drum-  
mond's son ? — Yes, I  
am.

*Etes-vous la mère de ce bel  
enfant ? — Non, je ne la  
suis pas,*

Are you the mother of  
that fine child ? — No,  
I am not.

*Mesdames, n'êtes-vous pas  
les tantes de mon ami  
Mons. B. ? — Oui, nous  
les sommes.*

Ladies, are you not my  
friend Mr. B.'s aunts ?  
— Yes, we are.

N. B. It must be observed, that the following pronouns *me, te, se, le, la,* and *les*, can never be used after a preposition ; as we cannot say, *j'étois avec le, avec la*, I was with him, with her ; but we must use the personal pronouns, *moi, toi, soi, lui, elle,* and *eux*, or *elles*, and say, *j'étois avec lui, avec elle, &c.*

## EXERCISES UPON THE TWO FOREGOING PRONOUNS.

The *pronoun personal* may be placed before or after the verb, agreeably to the English construction : ex.

*Je parle,*

*I speak.*

*Avons-nous parlé ?*

Have we spoken ? &c.

But the *conjunctive pronouns* are to be placed (in French) before the verbs by which they are governed, though they come after them in English : ex.

*Il<sup>1</sup> me<sup>2</sup> parle,<sup>3</sup>*

*He<sup>1</sup> speaks<sup>3</sup> to me.<sup>2</sup>*

*Nous<sup>1</sup> le<sup>2</sup> connoissons,<sup>3</sup>*

*We<sup>1</sup> know<sup>3</sup> him,<sup>2</sup> &c.*

*Except* in the second person singular and the first and second persons plural of a verb in the imperative mood, conjugated affirmatively ; in which case they come after the verb : ex.

*Donnez-*

*Donnez-le lui,  
Envoyons-leur y en,*

*Give it to him.  
Let us send some to them  
thither.*

*C'est un honnête homme  
fiez-vous y,*

*He is an honest man, trust  
him.*

But, if the rest be conjugated negatively, the pronouns follow the above rule : ex.

*Ne le lui donnez pas,  
Ne leur y en envoyons pas,*

*Do not give it to him.  
Let us not send any to them  
thither.*

*Cet homme est fort rusé, ne  
vous y fiez pas,*

*That man is very cunning,  
do not trust him.*

When two imperatives are joined by either of the conjunctions, *et*, and, *ou*, or, the conjunctive pronoun or pronouns must precede the last imperative by which it is governed : ex.

*Allez le trouver, et lui dites  
de venir ici,*

*Go to him, and tell him to  
come here.*

*Apportez-le moi, ou me  
l'envoyez,*

*Bring it to me, or send it  
to me.*

The verbs *fier*, to trust ; and *penfer*, or *songer*, to think ; require the conjunctive pronouns after them ; except the supplying particle *y*, which may be placed before or after, agreeably to the foregoing rules : ex.

*Nous nous fions à lui, à eux,  
Pensez-vous à elle ?*

*We trust to him, to them.  
Do you think of her ?*

*Oui, j'y pense,*

*Yes, I do (think of her.)*

When two or more of the conjunctive pronouns come together in the same sentence, they must be arranged in the following order :

#### SINGULAR.

*Me*, m. et f. me or to me,  
*Te*, m. et f. thee or to thee,  
*Se*, m. et f. one's self, him-  
himself, herself,

are to be placed before all others ; next,

*Le*, m him, it,

*La*, f. her, it,

*Les*, m. et f. them,

} before

#### PLURAL.

*Nous*, m. et f. us or to us,

*Vous*, m. et f. you or to you,

*Se*, m. et f. themselves,

*Lui*, m. et f. to him, to her,

*Leur*, m. et f. to them,



*Y*, to it, (sometimes to him, *Y*, to them, &c.  
to her, to them, especial-  
ly in the second member  
of a sentence,) there,  
thither, &c. And

*En*, m. et f. of *or* from him, *En*, m. et f. of *or* from  
her, it, &c. them, &c.

the last of all : *ex.*

*Il me le promet*, he promised *it to me*.

*Je vous les donnerai*, I will give *them to you*.

*Vous les lui enverrez*, you will send *them to him or her*.

*Nous le leur fîmes voir*, we shewed *him to them*.

*Elles vous y en enverra*, she will send *some to you thither*.

Except, however, from that rule, the pronoun of the  
first person, *moi* ; which, in the imperative mood of a verb  
conjugated affirmatively, is placed after *y* and *en* : *ex.*

*Apportez y en moi*, Bring *me some there*.

N. B. The above pronouns, when governed by two  
or more verbs, must be repeated, in French, before  
every governing verb, though most generally expressed  
but once, in English, and after the last verb : *ex.*

*Votre fils vous aime et vous* Your son loves and fears  
*craint*, *you*.

*Je le plains et l'encourage*, I pity and encourage *him*.

*Que Dieu la bénisse et la ré-* May God bless and re-  
*compense, dit le prince*, ward *her*, said the prince.

*Je ne veux ni vous les ven-* I neither will sell nor give  
*dre ni vous les donner*, *them to you*.

Your brother bought yesterday a very good  
*acheta, v. hier, adv.*

book ; and,<sup>1</sup> after<sup>2</sup> having<sup>4</sup> read<sup>5</sup> it,<sup>3</sup> he<sup>1</sup> gave<sup>4</sup>  
*après, p. avoir, v. lu, p.p. le donna, v.*

it<sup>3</sup> to me.<sup>2</sup> — I<sup>1</sup> am<sup>3</sup> very<sup>4</sup> glad<sup>5</sup> of <sup>2</sup> it. —  
*me. suis, v. bien, adv. aise, adj. en.*

Do <sup>1</sup>not<sup>5</sup> lend<sup>4</sup> it<sup>2</sup> to her.<sup>3</sup> — She<sup>1</sup> spoke<sup>4</sup> to  
*ne-pas, adv. prêtez, v. lui. parla, v.*

him<sup>2</sup> of <sup>3</sup> it. — I see her and speak to her (every  
*lui vois, v. parle, v. tous les day.)*

day.) — Carry it to her. — I<sup>1</sup> (will<sup>4</sup> carry)  
*jours. Portez, v. mènerai, v.*

them<sup>2</sup> thither<sup>3</sup> myself.<sup>5</sup> — Do you<sup>3</sup> know<sup>2</sup>  
*les y en connoissez, v.*

them ?<sup>1</sup> — I<sup>1</sup> (will<sup>3</sup> write) to them<sup>2</sup> myself.<sup>4</sup> — He<sup>1</sup>  
*écrirai, v. en leur*

will<sup>3</sup> <sup>2</sup>not<sup>4</sup> sell<sup>7</sup> it<sup>5</sup> to them,<sup>6</sup> but he will  
*veut, v. ne-pas vendre, v. en mais, c.*

give it to you. — Our master rewards and  
*donner, v. récompense, v.*

punishes us when we deserve it. — If<sup>1</sup>  
*punit, v. quand, adv. méritons, v. Si, c.*

they<sup>2</sup> ask<sup>4</sup> you<sup>3</sup> a<sup>5</sup> favour,<sup>6</sup> will<sup>3</sup> you<sup>4</sup> refuse<sup>3</sup>  
*demandent, v. grace, f. refuserez, v.*

it<sup>1</sup> to them ?<sup>2</sup> — He<sup>1</sup> has<sup>3</sup> taken<sup>4</sup> it<sup>2</sup> away<sup>4</sup>  
*a, v. emporté, p.p.*

with<sup>5</sup> him.<sup>6</sup> — I find him more reasonable  
*avec, p. trouve, v. raisonnable, adj.*

than his sister. — Talk<sup>3</sup> no<sup>1</sup> more<sup>4</sup> of<sup>2</sup> it. —  
*sa, pro. Parlez, v. ne plus, adv.*

I<sup>1</sup> thank<sup>4</sup> you<sup>2</sup> for<sup>3</sup> it. — Why<sup>1</sup> do you<sup>5</sup>  
*remercie, v. en. Pourquoi, adv. en*

give<sup>4</sup> it<sup>2</sup> to her ?<sup>3</sup> — Had<sup>4</sup> you<sup>5</sup> <sup>1</sup>not<sup>6</sup> pro-  
*donnez, v. Aviez, v. ne-pas pro-*

mised<sup>7</sup> it<sup>2</sup> to him ?<sup>3</sup> — Do you<sup>4</sup> <sup>1</sup>not<sup>5</sup> see<sup>3</sup> the<sup>6</sup>  
*mis, p.p. en voyez, v.*

beauty<sup>7</sup> of<sup>2</sup> it ? — Often beauty seduces and deceives  
*beauté, f. séduit, v. trompe, v.*

us. — I<sup>1</sup> <sup>2</sup>never<sup>5</sup> will<sup>4</sup> consent to<sup>3</sup> it, and<sup>1</sup> I<sup>2</sup>  
*ne-jamais, adv. consentirai, v. y*

<sup>3</sup>neither<sup>5</sup> will<sup>4</sup> speak<sup>7</sup> nor<sup>8</sup> write<sup>10</sup> to<sup>6</sup> him.<sup>9</sup> —  
*ne — ni veux, v. parler, v. ni, c. écrire, v.*

They are sorry for it. — You<sup>1</sup> may<sup>2</sup> tell<sup>5</sup>  
*sont, v. fâché, adj. pouvez, v. dire, v.*



it<sup>3</sup> to her,<sup>4</sup> but do not tell it to her brother. —  
*dites, v. son, pro.*

Since you (have no) pears in your  
*Puisque, c. n'avez point, v. poire, f. dans, p. votre, pro.*  
 garden, I (will send) you some. — They<sup>1</sup> have<sup>4</sup>  
*jardin, m. enverrai, v. en ont, v.*

stolen<sup>5</sup> from us<sup>2</sup> the<sup>6</sup> greatest<sup>7</sup> part<sup>8</sup> of<sup>3</sup> them. —  
*volé, p.p. partie, f.*

Believe me, go<sup>1</sup> and speak<sup>3</sup> to them,<sup>2</sup> do 'not<sup>5</sup>  
*Croyez, v. allez, v. parler, v.*

'confide<sup>2</sup> in<sup>3</sup> it. — This nosegay is for her,  
*fiez, v. vous y. Ce, pro. bouquet, m. est, v. pour, p.*

and not for him. — My brother has  
*et non-pas, adv. Mon, pro.*

written a letter to your sister, and<sup>1</sup> shewn<sup>4</sup>  
*écrit, p.p. votre, pro. a montré, v.*

me<sup>2</sup> the<sup>5</sup> two<sup>6</sup> first<sup>7</sup> lines<sup>8</sup> of<sup>3</sup> it. — Does he<sup>3</sup> know<sup>2</sup>  
*ligne, f. connoit, v.*

her ?<sup>1</sup> — She returned it to him. — We<sup>1</sup> have<sup>4</sup>  
*rendit, v. avons, v.*

forced<sup>5</sup> them<sup>2</sup> to<sup>3</sup> it. — Will<sup>3</sup> you<sup>4</sup> bring<sup>3</sup>  
*forcés, p.p. y. apporterez, v.*

me<sup>1</sup> some ?<sup>2</sup> — He speaks to me, and not to you. — I  
*parle, v.*

consent to it. — Do you<sup>2</sup> think<sup>1</sup> that<sup>3</sup> she<sup>4</sup> has<sup>7</sup>  
*consens, v. croyez, v. que ait, v.*

spoken<sup>8</sup> to him<sup>5</sup> of<sup>6</sup> it ? — Go and see her,  
*parlé, p.p. Allez, v. voir, v.*

and carry her these flowers. — We trust  
*portez, v. ces, pro. fleurs, f. Nous nous fions, v.*

to them. — If I had money, I<sup>1</sup> would<sup>4</sup> give you<sup>2</sup>  
*Si, c. avois, v. donnerois, v.*

some,<sup>3</sup> but you know as well as I do how much  
*mais, c. savez, v. combien, adv.*

it

it is scarce now. — Send<sup>4</sup> me<sup>2</sup> 'none.<sup>3</sup> —  
*rare, adj. à présent, adv. Envoyez, v. ne en pas.*

Have<sup>2</sup> you<sup>3</sup> any<sup>1</sup>? — I (will carry) them to you  
*Avez, v. porterai, v.*

thither. — Send it to me, or bring it to me yourself.  
*ou, c.*

— Do 'you<sup>4</sup> remember<sup>3</sup> (of) 'it? — No, but<sup>1</sup>  
*souvenez, v. Non, adv. mais, c.*

I<sup>2</sup> will <sup>4</sup> think of <sup>3</sup> it. — Do not give it to him, give  
*penferai, v. y. donnez, v.*

it to me. — Send some to them thither.

### OF PRONOUNS POSSESSIVE.

These pronouns are called *possessive*, because they always denote property or possession.

There are two sorts of possessive pronouns, viz. absolute and relative.

The *absolute* are so called because they must always precede the substantive to which they are joined, and agree with it (and not with the possessor as in English) in *gender, number, and case*. They are,

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
Masc.	Fem.	Both Genders.
<i>Mon,*</i>	<i>Ma,</i>	<i>Mes, my.</i>
<i>Ton,*</i>	<i>Ta,</i>	<i>Tes, thy.</i>
<i>Son,*</i>	<i>Sa,</i>	<i>Ses, his, her, or its.</i>
Both Genders.		
	<i>Notre,</i>	<i>Nos, our.</i>
	<i>Votre,</i>	<i>Vos, your.</i>
	<i>Leur,</i>	<i>Leurs, their.</i>

They are declined with the article indefinite, *de, à* : ex.  
 SINGULAR.

\* *Mon, ton, son*, must be used before a noun feminine beginning with a vowel, to prevent the hiatus : ex.

*Mon âme,*

*My soul.*

*Son opinion,*

*His or her opinion.*



## SINGULAR.

## Masculine.

Nom. Acc. *mon père*, my father.

Gen. Abl. *de mon père*, of or from my father.

Dat. *à mon père*, to my father.

## Feminine.

Nom. Acc. *ma mère*, my mother.

Gen. Abl. *de ma mère* of or from my mother.

Dat. *à ma mère*, to my mother.

## PLURAL.

## Masculine.

Nom. Acc. *mes frères*, my brothers.

Gen. Abl. *de mes frères*, of or from my brothers.

Dat. *à mes frères*, to my brothers.

## Feminine.

Nom. Acc. *mes sœurs*, my sisters.

Gen. Abl. *de mes sœurs*, of or from my sisters.

Dat. *à mes sœurs*, to my sisters.

The others are declined as the preceding.

These pronouns ought to be repeated before every substantive in a sentence, though not expressed in English : ex.

*J'ai perdu mon chapeau et mes gants,* I have lost my hat and gloves.

When these pronouns are used in a sentence, speaking of any part of the body, they are not to be expressed in French, but the preposition IN and the pronoun are rendered by the article definite ; the personal pronoun being sufficient to determine the possession : ex.

*J'ai mal aux yeux,* I have a pain in my eyes.  
and not *dans mes yeux*.

*Il se cassa le bras,* He broke his arm.

This will be seen among the idiomatical expressions.

ITS, THEIR, having a reference to inanimate or irrational objects, and placed in another member of the sentence

sentence from that wherein the object referred to is itself expressed, are not made into French by *son, sa, ses, &c.* but by *EN* : ex.

*Windfor est un beau village,* Windfor is a fine village,  
*j'en admire la situation,* I admire *its* situation,  
*les promenades, &c.* walks, &c.

*Cette maison est très bien* This house is well situated,  
*située, mais l'architecture* but *its* architecture does  
*ne m'en plaît pas,* not please me.

The RELATIVE are never joined to any substantive ; for, the substantive, to which they refer, is always implied in the pronoun. They are,

SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
Masc.		Fem.	
<i>Le mien,</i>	<i>les miens,</i>	<i>la mienne,</i>	<i>les miennes, mine.</i>
<i>Le tien,</i>	<i>les tiens,</i>	<i>la tienne,</i>	<i>les tiennes, thine.</i>
<i>Le sien, -</i>	<i>les siens,</i>	<i>la sienne,</i>	<i>les siennes, his or hers.</i>
<i>Le nôtre,</i>	<i>les nôtres,</i>	<i>la nôtre,</i>	<i>les nôtres, ours.</i>
<i>Le vôtre,</i>	<i>les vôtres,</i>	<i>la vôtre,</i>	<i>les vôtres, yours.</i>
<i>Le leur,</i>	<i>les leurs,</i>	<i>la leur,</i>	<i>les leurs, theirs.</i>

They are declined with the article definite : ex.

#### SINGULAR.

	Masc.	Fem.
Nom. Acc.	<i>le mien,</i>	<i>la mienne, mine.</i>
Gen. Abl.	<i>du mien,</i>	<i>de la mienne, of or from mine.</i>
Dat.	<i>au mien,</i>	<i>à la mienne, to mine.</i>

#### PLURAL.

	Masc.	Fem.
Nom. Acc.	<i>les miens,</i>	<i>les miennes, mine.</i>
Gen. Abl.	<i>des miens,</i>	<i>des miennes, of or from mine.</i>
Dat.	<i>aux miens,</i>	<i>aux miennes, to mine.</i>

The rest are declined as the preceding.

When any one of these relative pronouns is used after the verb *être*, to be, signifying to belong to, it must be expressed in French by one of the pronouns personal in the dative : ex.



*Ce livre est à moi,*

This book is *mine*.

*Cette épée est à lui, et non  
pas à vous,*

This sword is *his*, and not  
*yours*.

Also, when it is joined to a noun substantive in English, it ought to be rendered in French by a pronoun possessive absolute, and the substantive put in the genitive plural : ex.

*Un de mes, de vos, amis.* A friend of mine, of yours ;  
i. e. one of *my* or *your* friends.

### OF PRONOUNS DEMONSTRATIVE.

These pronouns are called *demonstrative*, because they distinguish, in a precise manner, the person or things to which they are applied. They are,

#### SINGULAR.

Masc.

Fem.

*Ce, cet,\**

*cette, this, that.*

*Celui, he, that.*

*celle, she, that.*

*Celui-ci,*

*celle-ci, this.*

*Celui-là,*

*celle-là, that.*

#### PLURAL.

Masc.

Fem.

*Ces,*

*ces, these, those.*

*Ceux,*

*celles, they, these, those.*

*Ceux-ci,*

*celles-ci, these.*

*Ceux-là,*

*celles-là, those.*

*Ce qui, ce que, what.*

*Ceci, this, cela, that.†*

These two last are always of the masculine gender and of the singular number.

These pronouns are declined with the article indefinite, *de, à* : ex.

#### SINGULAR.

\* *Cet* is used before a noun masculine beginning with a vowel or H mute : ex. *CET oiseau*, this bird.

† The word *THAT*, whether expressed or understood, when it comes between two verbs, and is followed by a noun or pronoun, must be rendered in French by *QUE*, which must be placed immediately after the first verb : ex.

*Je sais QUE votre frère est marié*, I know *that* your brother is married, &c.

## SINGULAR.

## Masculine.

Nom. Acc. *ce livre*, this or that book.  
 Gen. Abl. *de ce livre*, of or from this book.  
 Dat. *à ce livre*, to this book.

## PLURAL.

Nom. Acc. *ces livres*, these books.  
 Gen. Abl. *de ces livres*, of or from these books.  
 Dat. *à ces livres*, to these books.

## SINGULAR.

## Feminine.

Nom. Acc. *cette plume*, this or that pen.  
 Gen. Abl. *de cette plume*, of or from this pen.  
 Dat. *à cette plume*, to this pen.

## PLURAL.

Nom. Acc. *ces plumes*, these pens.  
 Gen. Abl. *de ces plumes*, of or from these pens.  
 Dat. *à ces plumes*, to these pens.

## SINGULAR.

## Masculine.

Nom. Acc. *celui*, he, him, that.  
 Gen. Abl. *de celui*, of or from him.  
 Dat. *à celui*, to him.

## Feminine.

Nom. Acc. *celle*, she, her, that.  
 Gen. Abl. *de celle*, of or from her.  
 Dat. *à celle*, to her.

## PLURAL.

## Masc. Fem.

N. Acc. *ceux*, *celles*, they, them, those, such as.  
 G. Abl. *de ceux*, *de celles*, of or from those.  
 Dat. *à ceux*, *à celles*, to those.

The others are declined as the preceding.

N. B. *He, she, they, him, her, them*, being immediately followed in a sentence by *who, whom*, or *that*, used in an indeterminate sense, not relating to any individual mentioned



mentioned before, and only implying any *person, one, or any body*, must not be rendered in French by the personal pronouns, *il, elle, &c.* but by the above pronouns, *celui, celle, &c.* ex.

Celui, qui pratique la vertu    He who practises virtue  
vit heureux,                            lives happy.

*Celle, que vous vîtes chez  
mon frère, n'est pas ma-  
riée,*

*Vous punissez celui ou celle*      *You punish him or her*  
*qui n'est pas coupable,*      *who is not guilty.*

The same rule must be observed with respect to *such* as, *such that*, used in English in the same sense as *he who*, *they who* : ex.

**Ceux** qui méprisent la science n'en connoissent pas le prix,      **Such as** despise learning do not know its value.

*Ce, cette, ces*, this, that, these, those, must always precede the substantive to which they are joined, and agree with it in gender, number, and case. On the contrary, *celui, celle, celui-ci, celle-ci, celui-là, celle-là*, this, that, &c. either in the singular or plural, are never joined to any noun; for, the noun, to which they refer, is always implied in the pronoun: ex.

*J'ai vu le portrait du père*    I have seen the father's  
*et celui du fils,*                picture and *that* of the  
    son.

*Cette montre n'est pas à vous,*      The watch is not your's,  
*c'est celle de ma mère,*      it is *that* of my mother,  
 or my mother's; *that* being understood.

N. B. The pronoun *that*, either in the singular or plural, is often suppressed in English and supplied by an apostrophe and an *s* at the end of the noun substantive as above, but must be expressed in French by the above pronoun *celui, celle, &c.* according to the gender and number of the object to which it refers: ex.

*Il a pris mon chapeau et*      He has taken my hat and  
*celui de mon père,*              my father's.

*Vous*

*Vous avez déchiré ma robe* You have torn my gown  
*et celle de ma sœur,* and my sister's.

Sometimes the particles *ci, là*, here, there, are also joined to the pronouns *ce, cette, ces*, to distinguish, with more precision, the objects to which they are applied : ex.

*Ce chapeau-ci,*

This hat.

*Cette ville-là,*

That town, &c.

The two following expressions, *the former, the latter*, referring to substantives mentioned in a preceding sentence, are elegantly made into French by *celui-ci, celui-là, &c.* and agree with the noun.

*Celui-ci, celle-ci*, this, applies to the nearest object.

*Celui-là, celle-là*, that, to that which is more remote.

*Ce qui, ce que*, what. This pronoun is never joined to any noun ; it always can be turned by *that which*, or *the thing which* : ex.

*Je vous dirai ce qui lui est arrivé,* I will tell you *what* has happened to him ;  
 that is, *that which*, or *the thing which*, has happened to him ;

*Savez-vous ce que je lui dis ?* Do you know *what* I told him ? &c.

*Ceci*, this, *cela*, that, are only used when speaking of things, the word *thing* being always understood : ex.

*Ceci me plait,* This pleases me ;  
 that is, *this thing* pleases me.

*Cela me fait peur,* That frightens me ;  
 that is, *that thing* frightens me, &c.

## EXERCISES UPON THE TWO FOREGOING PRONOUNS.

Give me my book.—I have met your  
*Donnez, v. livre, m. ai, v. rencontré, p.p.*

sister with a friend of yours.—She had lost  
*sœur, f. avec, p. avoit, v. perdu, p.p.*

H

her



her gloves and fan. ——— Have you found your  
*gant, m. éventail, m. Avez, v. trouvé, p.p.*  
 pen? ——— His daughter is older than mine,  
*plume, f. fille, f. est, v. vieux, adj.*  
 but her son (is not) so tall as yours. — My  
*mais, c. fils, m. n'est pas, v. grand, adj.*  
 mother has (a pain) in her head. — Bring me  
*mère, f. a, v. mal, m. tête, f. Apportez, v.*  
 that dictionary. — I have found my hat and my bro-  
*dictionnaire, m.*  
 ther's. — Men commonly hate him whom  
*ordinairement, adv. haïssent, v. que, pro.*  
 they fear. — Learn this lesson, it is not so diffi-  
*craignent, v. Apprenez, v. leçon, f. diffi-*  
 cult as that. — Take care of that child. —  
*cile, adj. Prenez, v. soin, m. enfant, m.*  
 Her brother says he will not refuse you what  
*dit, v. ne pas refusera, v.*  
 you ask of him. — My ambition is the only  
*demandez, v. ambition, f. seul, adj.*  
 cause of his imprudence. — Your house is more con-  
*cause, f. imprudence, f. com-*  
 venient than hers, but it is not so well situated. —  
*mode, adj. situé, adj.*  
 She, whom you hate, is my best friend. — You have  
*haïssiez, v. amie, f.*  
 punished him who did not deserve it, and rewarded  
*puni, p.p. méritoit, v. récompensé, p.p.*  
 her who was guilty. — I have seen your father, mo-  
*ai, v. vu, p.p.*  
 ther, brothers, and sisters. — She, who dines with  
*qui, pro. dine, v. avec, p.*  
 us, is my brother's wife. — Her affection for me  
*femme, f. affection, f. pour, p.*  
 is

is false. — I hope you will come soon to  
*faux, adj. espère, v. viendrez, v. bientôt, adv.*

see us. — His coach is beautiful, I admire its  
*voir, v. carrosse, m.*

painting and ornaments. — Such<sup>1</sup> as<sup>2</sup> seem<sup>3</sup>  
*peinture, f. ornement, m. qui, pro. paroissent, v.*

to<sup>4</sup> be happy<sup>5</sup> are<sup>3</sup> not<sup>9</sup> always<sup>10</sup> so.<sup>7</sup> — Your  
*être, v. heureux, adj. sont, v. toujours, adv.*

horses are better than theirs. — They stole my  
*cheval, m. volèrent, v.*

watch and my mother's. — Tell her, my sister will be  
*montre, f. Dites, v. sera, v.*

glad to see her. — She has a pain in her  
*bien-aise, adj. de voir, v. à, v.*

teeth. — (It is not) my hat, it is hers; but this is  
*dent, f. Ce n'est pas, v. c'est, v.*

better than that. — We ought to pray for them that  
*devons, v. prier, v. pour, p.*

persecute us. — Of all virtues, that which most  
*persécutent, v. le plus, adv.*

distinguishes a Christian is charity. — These candles  
*distingue, v. chandelle, f.*

are better than those. — This fan is mine, and not  
*sont, v. non-pas*

yours. — Give me this, and take that. — This book  
*prenez, v.*

and that I (lent) you are the two best. — Tell me  
*ai prêté, v. Dites, v.*

what vexes you. — I have seen the king's palace,  
*fâche, v. palais, m.*

and that of the queen.  
*reine, f.*



## OF PRONOUNS RELATIVE.

These pronouns are called *relative*, because they have always a reference to some other noun or pronoun in the discourse either expressed or implied. They are declined as follows :

## SINGULAR and PLURAL.

## Both Genders.

Nom.	<i>qui,</i>	who, which, that.
Gen.	<i>de qui, or dont,</i>	of whom, whose,* of which.
Dat.	<i>à qui,</i>	to whom, to which.
Acc.	<i>que, qui,†</i>	whom, which, that.
Abl.	<i>de qui, dont,</i>	from whom, from which.
Acc.	<i>quoi, que,</i>	what.
Gen. Abl.	<i>de quoi, or dont,</i>	of or from what.
Dat.	<i>à quoi,</i>	to what.

## SINGULAR.

## Masculine.

## Feminine.

Nom. Acc.	<i>lequel,</i>	<i>laquelle,</i> which.
Gen. Abl.	<i>duquel, or dont,</i>	<i>de laquelle,</i> of or, &c.
Dat.	<i>auquel,</i>	<i>à laquelle,</i> to which.

## PLURAL.

Nom. Acc.	<i>lesquels,</i>	<i>lesquelles,</i> which.
Gen. Abl.	<i>desquels, or dont,</i>	<i>desquelles,</i> of or, &c.
Dat.	<i>auxquels,</i>	<i>auxquelles,</i> to which.

The noun or pronoun, to which the pronoun relative has a reference, is called *antecedent*, with which it must agree in gender and number : ex.

*Je connois un homme qui doit aller voir le camp,* I know a man *who* is to go and see the camp.

In

\* *Whose*, being used interrogatively, must be rendered in French by *à qui*.

† *Qui*, whom, is never used in the accusative but when it is governed by some of the prepositions : ex.

*Avec qui,* With *whom*.

*Pour qui,* For *whom*.

Or, when it signifies *what person* : ex.

*Amenez qui vous voudrez,*

Bring *whom* you please ;

that is, *what person* you please.



In this sentence *qui* has a reference to *homme*, man, because I can say *lequel homme*, which man, &c.

*J'ai lu la lettre que vous m'avez envoyée,* I have read the letter (*that*) you sent me.

In this last sentence *que* has a reference to *lettre*, letter, because it may be said *laquelle lettre?* which letter? &c.—The relative *que*, whom, which, or that, is sometimes elegantly understood in English, but it must always be expressed in French : ex.

*La dame, que vous connaissez, est arrivée ;* The lady, you know, is arrived :  
*whom* is understood in the English.

These pronouns, like the personal and conjunctive, when governed by two or more verbs, must be repeated (in French) before each governing verb, though most commonly expressed but once in English, and before the first verb : ex.

*Le Dieu que nous aimons et que nous adorons,* The God *whom* we love and worship.

*Les lettres que vous avez écrites, et que vous m'avez montrées, &c.* The letters *which* you have written and shewed me, &c.

*L'homme à qui j'ai prêté tant d'argent, et à qui j'ai si souvent écrit, &c.* The man *to whom* I have lent so much money, and written so often, &c.

When the words *to which*, *to what*, *at which*, *at what*, *in which*, *in what*, have a reference to inanimate things, and when they can be expressed by *where*, *whereto*, *whereat*, or *wherein*, they are to be rendered in French by the adverb of place, *où* : ex.

*Je vous montrerai la maison où il demeure,* I will shew you the house *in which* he lives ;  
that is, *where* he lives.

*Voici la porte par où nous entrâmes,* This is the door *through which* we went in.

*Quoi*, what, and sometimes *that*, or *which*, is never used in the nominative case ; in the other cases generally used in an indeterminate signification,



never expressed but in speaking of inanimate things, and especially when it has for its antecedent *ce* or *rien* : ex.

*C'est à quoi je vous conseille de penser,* It is of what I advise you to think.

*Il n'y a rien à quoi il ne soit disposé,* There is nothing for which he is not disposed.

When we speak of irrational beings, or inanimate things, in the genitive, dative, or ablative, cases, we make use of *lequel, laquelle*, which, &c. instead of *qui* : ex.

*Le cheval, auquel vous donnez à boire,* The horse, to which you give some drink.

As also after a preposition : ex.

*La fenêtre sur laquelle vous appuyez,* The window upon which you lean.

And when *who, whom, or which*, refers to one or more objects on which the choice is to be formed : ex.

*Apportez-moi lequel vous voudrez,* Bring me which you please.

### OF PRONOUNS INTERROGATIVE.

They are called *interrogative*, because they are only used in asking questions, and have no antecedent : they are declined with the article indefinite.

#### SINGULAR and PLURAL.

Both Genders.

Nom. Acc. *qui*, who, whom.

Gen. Abl. *de qui*, of or from whom.

Dat. *à qui*, to whom, whose.

Nom. Acc. *quoi*, or *que*, what ; \*

Or, *qu'est-ce qui, qu'est-ce que*.

Gen. Abl. *de quoi*, of or from what.

Dat. *à quoi*, to what.

SINGULAR.

by

†  
erne

Or

exp.

When WHAT, in English, signifies HOW MUCH, it must be French by *combien*.

## SINGULAR.

	Masculine.	Feminine.	
N. A.	<i>quel, or le quel,</i>	<i>quelle, or laquelle,</i>	what, which.
G. A.	<i>de quel, &amp;c.</i>	<i>de quelle, &amp;c.</i>	of or from, &c.
Dat.	<i>à quel, &amp;c.</i>	<i>à quelle, &amp;c.</i>	to what, which.

## PLURAL.

	Masculine.	Feminine.	
N.A.	<i>quels, or lesquels,</i>	<i>quelles, or lesquelles,</i>	what, which.
G.A.	<i>de quels, &amp;c.</i>	<i>de quelles, &amp;c.</i>	of or from, &c.
Dat.	<i>à quels, &amp;c.</i>	<i>à quelles, &amp;c.</i>	to what, which.

*Qui*, who, whom, as an interrogative pronoun, always refers to persons and never to things, and it may be expressed by *quelle personne* ? what person ? ex.

*Qui est là ?* *Who* is there ?

*Qui cherchez-vous ?* *Whom* do you seek ?

*Quoi* and *que*, what, have always a reference to things and never to persons, and may be expressed by *quelle chose*, what thing : ex.

*Que voulez-vous ?* or *qu'est-* *What* do you want ?

*ce que vous voulez ?*

*De quoi parlez-vous ?* *What* are you speaking of ?

*Quoi ! vous osez me répondre ?* *What !* you dare answer me ?

N. B. According to the French idiom, *quoi* can never be put before a verb as its accusative, it is always *que* : ex.

*Que dites-vous ?* or, *qu'est-* *What* do you say ?  
*ce que vous dites ?*

*Quel, quelle*, what, are always joined to some substantive with which they must agree in gender and number : ex.

*Quel livre traduisez-vous ?* *What* book do you translate ?

*Quelle heure est-il ?* *What* hour is it ?

We also say,

*Quel mot !* *What a word !*

*Quelle beauté !* *What a beauty !*

When, in French, *a* is not to be expressed.



In order to avoid repetition, *lequel*, *laquelle*, which, are elegantly used as substitutes for *quel* or *quelle*, and the substantive to which it is joined; and then *lequel* must always be followed by a genitive, either expressed or understood: ex.

*Une de mes sœurs est mariée,* One of my sisters is married.

*Laquelle est-ce ?* that is, *laquelle de vos sœurs est-ce ?* Which is it? that is, which of your sisters is it?

*Je parle d'un de vos amis,* I am speaking of one of your friends.

*Duquel parlez-vous ?* that is, *duquel de mes amis parlez-vous ?* Of which are you speaking? that is, of which of my friends are you speaking?

### OF PRONOUNS INDEFINITE.

These pronouns are called *indefinite* or *indeterminate*, because they generally are substituted for the name of a vague and indeterminate object. Among them some are used as nouns adjective, being always joined to a noun substantive; others are sometimes used as pronouns without a substantive, and sometimes as adjectives with a substantive.

<i>Aucun, aucune,</i>	None, no one, not one, not any.
<i>Autre,</i>	Other, any other.
<i>Autrui,</i>	Other, other people.
<i>Chacun, chacune,</i>	Each, every one, every body.
<i>Chaque,</i>	Every, each.
<i>L'un l'autre,</i>	One another, each other.
<i>Les uns — les autres,</i>	Some — others.
	Some — some.
<i>L'un et l'autre,</i>	Both.
<i>L'un ou l'autre,</i>	Either.
<i>Ni l'un ni l'autre,</i>	Neither.
<i>Nul, nulle,</i>	None.
<i>Pas un, pas une,</i>	No one, not one.
<i>Personne,</i>	Nobody, none, no one, any one, any body.

*La plupart de, des,  
Plusieurs,*

*Quelconque,*

*Quelque,*

*Quelque chose,*

*Quelque — que,*

*Quel — que,*

*Quelle — que,*

*Quelque chose qui, or que,*

*Quoi que,*

*Quoi que ce soit que,*

*Tout ce qui, or que,*

*Quelqu'un, quelqu'une,*

*Quiconque,*

*Qui que ce soit, or fût,*

*Quoi que ce soit, or fût,*

*Rien,*

*Tel, telle,*

*Tel qui,*

*Telle qui,*

*Tout,*

*Tout le monde,*

*Tout — que,*

Most.

Many, several.

Whatever.

Some, any.

Something, any thing.

Whosoever, whatsoever,  
whatever, however, how-  
soever, though, &c.

Whatever, whatsoever.

Some, some one, some-  
body, any.

Whoever, any body.

Whosoever, nobody in the  
world, nobody at all,  
any body whatever, no  
man living, let him be  
who he will, be who he  
may, &c.

Whatsoever, nothing in  
the world, nothing what-  
ever.

Nothing, any thing.

Such one, such.

Such as he, she, they, who,  
that, &c.

Every, every thing.

Every body, any body.

As — as, for all, al-  
though, however, &c.

## OBSERVATIONS ON SOME OF THE ABOVE PRO- NOUNS.

*Aucun, aucune*, is never used but in the singular, and  
always negatively : it relates to a person or thing men-  
tioned before : ex.

*Aucun ne s'est encore avisé  
de vous contredire,*

*No one* has yet thought of  
contradicting you.

*Aucun*



Aucun n'a porté la confiance si loin,      Not one has carried constancy so far.

In some sentences expressing a doubt, *aucun* is used without a negation : ex.

Y a-t-il aucun, ou aucune,      Is there any of you who  
de vous qui le souffrît ?      would suffer it ?

*Autrui* has neither gender nor number, and can only be used in the genitive or dative case, always referring to persons : ex.

Ne faites point à autrui ce      Do not unto others what  
que vous ne voudriez pas      you would not wish to  
qu'on vous fît,      be done unto.

*Chacun, chacune*, may be used in a general or limited sense, mentioning persons or things : ex.

Chacun à son tour,      Every one in his turn.  
Les arbres portent leurs      Trees bear their fruits each  
fruits chacun dans leur      in their season.  
saison,

*L'un l'autre* express a reciprocity in the action, and may be applied to persons or things : ex.

Ils se jettent des pierres l'un      They throw stones to each  
à l'autre,      other.

Le feu et l'eau se détruisent      Fire and water destroy one  
l'un l'autre,      another.

*L'un et l'autre* always require the verb in the plural, and may likewise be applied to persons or things : ex.

L'un et l'autre ont raison,      Both are in the right.

L'un et l'autre servent au      Both serve the same pur-  
même usage,      pose.

Observe that *both* is not to be expressed in French when it precedes two nouns or pronouns united by the conjunction *and* : ex.

Son frère et sa sœur sont      Both his brother and sister  
morts,      are dead.

*Ni l'un ni l'autre* require the verb to be put in the singular, if that pronoun be placed before the verb as its nominative, and in the plural, if it come after it ;  
in

in both cases, the verb must be preceded by a negation : ex.

Ni l'un ni l'autre ne m'a répondu, or, ils ne m'ont répondu ni l'un ni l'autre ; Neither of them have answered me.

*Nul, pas un*, are always accompanied with a negation, and can only be used as a nominative to the verb : ex.

Nul ne peut se flatter d'être agréable à Dieu, No one can flatter himself to be agreeable to God.  
Pas un ne le croit, Not one believes it.

*Personne* is likewise attended with a negation, except in sentences of doubt, admiration, or interrogation : ex.

Personne ne peut se vanter d'être sans défaut, Nobody can boast of being without a defect.  
Ne parlez à personne, Speak to nobody, or, do not speak to any body.

Personne s'est-il jamais exprimé avec plus de grace que Sheridan ? Did ever any body express himself with more grace than Sheridan ?

*Quelque* always expresses an indeterminate signification, and is generally joined to a substantive, with which it agrees in number : ex.

Quelque auteur, Some author.  
Quelques philosophes, Some philosophers.

*Quelque — que.* *Quelque*, immediately joined to a noun followed by *que*, expresses an indeterminate quality or quantity ; it is declinable before a substantive and indeclinable before an adjective, and requires the verb to be put in the subjunctive mood : ex.

Quelques efforts que l'on fasse pour voiler la vérité, elle se découvre tôt ou tard ; Whatever efforts people make to hide truth, it is discovered one time or other.

Quelques fautes que vous ayez faites, on vous pardonnera si vous vous repentez sincèrement ; Whatever faults you may have committed, you will be forgiven, if you sincerely repent.

Quelque



Quelque équitables que soient  
vos offres, je doute qu'on  
les accepte ;

However equitable your  
offers be, I doubt of  
their being accepted.

Quelque puissans que soient  
les rois, ils meurent com-  
me le plus vil de leurs su-  
jets ;

Though kings be ever so  
powerful, they die as  
well as the meanest of  
their subjects.

*Quel que, quelle que*, must be thus divided when it is immediately followed by a verb or a personal pronoun, and agree in gender and number with the noun to which it relates ; it likewise requires the verb to be put in the subjunctive mood : ex.

Quel que soit l'ennemi dont  
vous appréhendez la ma-  
lice, vous devez vous re-  
poser sur votre innocence,

Whatever the enemy be  
whose malice you dread,  
you ought to rest on  
your innocence.

Les loix condamnent tous les  
criminels, quels qu'ils  
puissent être,

Laws condemn all crimi-  
nals, *whoever* they may  
be.

Quelles que soient vos in-  
tentions, &c.

Whatever your intentions  
may be, &c.

*Quelque chose qui or que, quoi que, quoi que ce soit que, tout ce qui or que*, always relate to things, and never to persons ; with this difference, that in French we generally begin the sentence with either *quelque chose que* or *qui*, *quoi que*, or *quoi que ce soit que*, with the following verb in the subjunctive mood ; on the contrary, we always make use of *tout ce qui* or *que*, when *whatever* can be turned by *all that which* or *every thing which*, and may be placed either at the beginning or in the middle of a sentence, according to its situation in English, with the following verb in the indicative mood : ex.

Quelque chose qu'on vous  
dise, or, quoi que ce soit  
qu'on vous dise, ne le  
croyez pas ;

Whatever may be said to  
you, do not believe it.

A quelque chose que, or,  
à quoi que ce soit que,  
vous vous appliquiez ;

To *whatever* you apply  
yourself.

*Je ferai tout ce qu'il vous plaira,* I will do *whatever*, or *every thing* you please.  
*Tout ce qui est agréable n'est pas toujours utile,* *Whatever*, or *all that which*, is pleasing, is not always useful.

*Quelqu'un, quelqu'une*, relates to persons or things, and makes *quelques-uns, quelques-unes*, in the plural.

*Quiconque*, is indeclinable, and always used in the singular : ex.

*Il a ordre d'arrêter quiconque passera par-là,* He is ordered to stop *whomsoever*, or *any body that*, goes that way.

*Qui que ce soit*, speaking of persons only, may be Englished different ways ; but, when by *whoever*, *what person soever*, it must always be followed by the pronouns *il, elle*, or *qui*, and sometimes by both, unless it be governed by a verb or a preposition : ex.

*Qui que ce soit qui me trompe, il sera puni ;* *Whosoever* deceives me shall be punished.

*Qui que ce soit qui vous parle de cette affaire, feignez de n'en rien savoir ;* *Whosoever* speaks to you about that affair, pretend not to know any thing about it.

When the above pronoun is Englished by *nobody in the world, no man living*, &c. it must be attended with the negation *ne* before the verb : ex.

*Je n'en ai parlé à qui que ce soit,* I mentioned it to *nobody whatever*, or to *no man living*.

When speaking in the past tense, *qui que ce fût* must be used : ex.

*César ne vouloit se fier à qui que ce fût,* Cæsar would trust to *nobody whatever*.

*Il ne fit part de ses projets à qui que ce fût,* He acquainted *nobody in the world* with his projects.

The above observation is to be made with respect to *quoi que ce soit, quoi que ce fût*, only used in speaking of inanimate objects.



*Tout* — *que*. *Tout*, preceding a noun immediately followed by *que*, is indeclinable in the masculine and declinable in the feminine before nouns beginning with a consonant : ex.

*Tout savant qu'il est, il se trompe quelquefois ;*      *As learned as he is, or, for all, or although, he is learned, he sometimes mistakes.*

*Tout laide qu'est cette demoiselle, elle se fait des amis par-tout ;*      *This young lady, as ugly as she is, or, for all she is ugly, gets friends every where.*

N. B. This will be seen again among the conjunctions.

To the above pronouns may be added the three following expressions, which are generally used in an indefinite or indeterminate manner :

<i>Je ne fais qui,</i>	<i>I know not who.</i>
<i>Je ne fais quoi,</i>	<i>I know not what.</i>
<i>Je ne fais quel,</i>	<i>I know not which or what.</i>

*Je ne fais qui* is only said speaking of persons, and signifies a person we do not know : ex.

*Il parle à je ne fais qui,*      *He speaks I know not to whom.*

*Elle fut abordée par je ne fais qui,*      *She was accosted by I know not whom.*

*Je ne fais quoi* is only said of things, and signifies an object which cannot precisely be named nor defined : ex.

*Il se plaint de je ne fais quoi,*      *He complains of I know not what.*

We sometimes put *un* before *je ne fais qui*, and indifferently *un* or *le* before *je ne fais quoi* : ex.

*Il parle d'un je ne fais qui,*      *He speaks of I know not whom.*

*Elle s'est adressée à un je ne fais qui,*      *She addressed herself to I know not whom.*

*Il y a là-dedans un je ne fais quoi qui me plaît,*      *There is in that I know not what that pleases me.*

*J'ai*

*J'ai lu une comédie intitulée* Le je ne fais quoi, I have read a play which has for title *I know not what.*

*Je ne fais quel.* In this last expression, *quel* takes the form of an adjective, and must always be accompanied with a substantive; it is said speaking of both persons and things: ex.

*Lorsque j'entrai, je vis je ne fais quel homme, quelle femme, quel tableau, quelle figure;* When I went in, I saw *I know not what man, what woman, what picture, what figure.*

### EXERCISES ON THE FOREGOING PRONOUNS.

The man who sold me these pens is very cunning. — The lady of whom you speak (is not) handsome. — Other people's opinions are not the rule of mine. — Miss D——, whom you love so much, is very ill. — The table, upon which you write, is broken. — Who<sup>1</sup> told<sup>4</sup> it<sup>3</sup> to you.<sup>2</sup> — He, who was with you, related to me how every thing had passed. — She (will not) hear of the misery to which he is reduced. — Whosoever despises the poor is himself despicable. — He (keeps company with) I know not whom, and that

displeases



displeases her. — No one is free from fault. —  
*déplait, v. exempt, adj. défaut, m.*

What<sup>1</sup> are<sup>2</sup> you<sup>3</sup> doing<sup>2</sup>? — Have you heard any  
*faites, v. appris, p.p.*

news? — Shun vice, and love what is good. —  
*nouvelle, f. Evitez, v. vice, m. aimez, v. bon, adj.*

Every one acts for himself. — Who was with  
*agits, v. pour, p. étoit, v. avec, p.*

you? — It<sup>1</sup> was<sup>2</sup> a<sup>3</sup> gentleman<sup>4</sup> whose<sup>5</sup> name<sup>10</sup> I<sup>6</sup> know<sup>8</sup>  
*Ce monsieur, m. nom, m. fais, v.*

not.<sup>9</sup> — Somebody knocks at the door, go and  
*ne-pas. frappe, v. à, p. allez, v. ∞*

open it. — Men<sup>1</sup> generally<sup>3</sup> love<sup>2</sup> him<sup>4</sup>  
*ouvrir, v. Homme, m. généralement, adv.*

who<sup>5</sup> flatters<sup>7</sup> them.<sup>6</sup> — (Here are) two pears, which  
*flatte, v. Voici, adv. poire, f.*

will you have? — The man I sent you was  
*voulez, v. ∞ ai envoyé, v.*

honest. — Servants are men or women  
*bonnête, adj. Domestique, m. et f. ou, c.*

whom we keep and reward for  
*nourrissons, v. récompensons, v. pour, p.*

the services they do to us. — Both religion and  
*rendent, v.*

virtue are the bonds of civil society. — Is that the  
*lien, m. société, f.*

horse for which you gave a hundred guineas? —  
*avez donné, v. ∞*

Whatever<sup>1</sup> these<sup>3</sup> books<sup>4</sup> be,<sup>2</sup> send them to me. —  
*soient, v.*

Whose<sup>1</sup> sword<sup>4</sup> is<sup>2</sup> this<sup>3</sup>? — It belongs to I know  
*épée, f. appartient, v.*

not whom. — What crime is she guilty of?  
*crime, m. coupable, adv.*

— What

—What is he sorry for? —Nobody<sup>1</sup> speaks<sup>3</sup> to  
*fâché, adj. de parle, v. ∞*  
 you.<sup>2</sup> — Whom<sup>1</sup> do you<sup>3</sup> seek<sup>2</sup>? — Has<sup>4</sup> some-  
*∞ cherchez, v. A-t-il, v.*  
 body<sup>1</sup> spoken<sup>3</sup> to him<sup>2</sup> of it? — Whosoever<sup>1</sup> speaks<sup>3</sup>  
*parlé, p.p. ∞*  
 to you,<sup>2</sup> do <sup>4</sup>not<sup>6</sup> answer.<sup>5</sup> — Who was the first  
*∞ ne-pas répondez, v. fut, v.*  
 king of France? — They are two sisters; which  
*roi, m. sont, v.*  
 do you<sup>3</sup> like<sup>2</sup> best<sup>4</sup>? — Whatever you (may say,) *disiez, v.*  
*∞ aimez, v. le mieux, adv.*  
 they shall be punished. — She (finds fault) with  
*seront, v. puni, p.p. trouve à redire, v. à*  
 whatever I do. — You speak of the lady whose hus-  
*fois, v. parlez, v. ma-*  
 band has been so ill. — There are four drawings :  
*ri, m. été, p.p. Voilà, adv. desseins, m.*  
 which do you choose? — Is there any thing more  
*∞ choisissez, v. Y a t-il, v.*  
 ridiculous! — Some say she is married, others say  
*ridicule, adj. disent, v. mariée, p.p.*  
 not. — Whatever her fortune be, he says he ne-  
*que non, adv. fortune, f. dit, v. ne-*  
 ver will marry her. — I saw nobody in the  
*jamais, adv. épousera, v. ai vu, v.*  
 world. — At<sup>1</sup> what<sup>2</sup> do you<sup>4</sup> play<sup>3</sup>? — That vexes me.  
*∞ jouez, v. fâche, v.*  
 — We will give you shortly what you have  
*donnerons, v. dans peu, adv. avez, v.*  
 lent us. — As amiable as she is, she<sup>1</sup> does <sup>2</sup>not<sup>5</sup>  
*prêté, p.p. aimable, adj. ∞ ne-pas*  
 please<sup>4</sup> me.<sup>3</sup> — Every one complains of you. — There is  
*plait, v. se plaint, v. Il y a*



I know not what mean in that behaviour. — I love  
*bas*, adj. *conduite*, f. *aime*, v.

neither of them. — Both are married. — From<sup>1</sup> whom<sup>2</sup>  
*font*, v.

do you<sup>5</sup> know<sup>4</sup> it<sup>3</sup>? — He was so honest that he mis-  
*savez*, v. *était*, v. *se dé-*

trusted nobody at all. — (For<sup>1</sup> all<sup>3</sup>) they<sup>4</sup> are<sup>5</sup> rich,<sup>2</sup>  
*floit*, v. *Tout que* *riche*, adj.

they<sup>1</sup> give<sup>3</sup> <sup>2</sup>nothing<sup>4</sup> to the poor.<sup>5</sup> — They  
*donnent*, v. *ne-rien*, adv.

do<sup>2</sup> justice<sup>3</sup> to<sup>5</sup> one<sup>4</sup> another.<sup>6</sup>  
*se rendent*, v.

## RECAPITULATORY OR PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES UPON ALL THE PRONOUNS.

I speak French. — You speak English. — We  
*parle*, v. *parlez*, v.

do <sup>2</sup>not<sup>4</sup> understand<sup>3</sup> what<sup>5</sup> they<sup>6</sup> say<sup>2</sup> to us.<sup>7</sup> —  
*ne-pas comprenons*, v. *disent*, v.

She<sup>1</sup> speaks<sup>3</sup> to you,<sup>2</sup> and<sup>4</sup> robs<sup>6</sup> you<sup>5</sup> (at the same<sup>7</sup>  
*parle*, v. *vole*, v. *en même*

time.) — We<sup>1</sup> have<sup>4</sup> <sup>2</sup>not<sup>5</sup> seen<sup>6</sup> them.<sup>3</sup> — Your  
*tems*, adv. *avons*, v. *vous*, p.p.

mother came (to see) me yesterday, and I (will go) to  
*mère*, f. *vint*, v. *voir*, v. *hier*, adv. *irai*, v.

see her (to-morrow.) — Is there any body that esteems  
*demain*, adv. *Est-il*, v. *estime*, v.

her more than I do? — Attention, cares, credit, mo-  
*soin*, m.

ney, I have put every thing in use. — They<sup>1</sup>  
*mis*, p.p. *en*, p. *usage*, m.

are<sup>2</sup> happy<sup>3</sup> but<sup>4</sup> we<sup>5</sup> are<sup>8</sup> <sup>6</sup>not<sup>9</sup> so.<sup>7</sup> —  
*font*, v. *heureux*, adj. *mais*, c. *sommes*, v.

That dictionary costs me three guineas, but I owe  
*coûte*, v. *dois*, v.

much

much to it. — Whatever may be your troubles,  
*soient, v. peine, f.*

you ought to write to me more frequently. —  
*devriez, v. écrire, v. souvent, adj.*

I (will lend) you the book she sent me. — Be-  
*prêterai, v. a envoyé, v. Cro-*

lieve me, he is very ill. — I shall be very glad  
*yez, v. malade, adj. aise, adj.*

to go there with you: for, I have something to  
*de aller, v. avec, v. car, c. à*

tell him. — I love your sister, and I owe her re-  
*dire, v. aime, v. dois, v. res-*

spect. — Give me my hat and cloak. — I  
*pect, m. Donnez, v. chapeau, m. mantelet, m.*

have dined with your father and mother. — They<sup>1</sup>  
*dîné, p.p.*

often<sup>4</sup> procure<sup>3</sup> me<sup>2</sup> that<sup>5</sup> pleasure.<sup>6</sup> — They  
*souvent, adv. procurent, v. plaisir, m.*

have sent you good apples. — Write to me,  
*ont, v. envoyé, p.p. Ecrivez, v. ∞*

do <sup>1</sup>not<sup>4</sup> write<sup>3</sup> to her.<sup>2</sup> — Carry some to your sister.  
*∞ Portez, v. sœur, v.*

— I will do whatever you please. — The Thames  
*ferai, v. plaira, v. Tamise, f.*

is a very fine river; it divides London into two  
*rivière, f. divise, v. en, p.*

parts. — London is the capital of England,  
*partie, f. capitale, adj.*

as Paris is that of France. — Brest is a fine  
*comme, adv.*

sea - port in France, but its entrance is dif-  
*mer, f. port, m. en, p. mais, c. entrée, f.*

icult and dangerous. — These books are mine,  
*dangereux, adj. sont, v.*

and



and not yours. — Your exercise is better  
*non-pas, adv. thème, m.*

than mine, but it is not so well as your brother's.  
*bien, adv.*

—Do you<sup>2</sup> think<sup>1</sup> of<sup>3</sup> me<sup>4</sup>? — Yes, I do.—  
*ou pensez, v. à Oui, adv. pense, v.*

You do not know what vexes me. — I will  
*ou savez, v. veux, v.*

not accept of any of the terms which they  
*accepter, v. ou condition, f.*

offer me. — Whom ought we to worship?—  
*offrent, v. devons, v. ou adorer, v.*

God, who is the father of them that love him, and  
*Dieu, m. aiment, v.*

the protector of those that fear him. — Of  
*protecteur, m. craignent, v.*

all those who contend against religion, some do it  
*disputent, v. contre, p. font, v.*

because it perplexes them; others, because they  
*parce que, c. embarrasse, v.*

wish to have the glory of perplexing its de-  
*veulent, v. avoir, v. embarrasser, v. dé-*

fenders. — Those trees are well exposed to  
*fenseur, m. arbre, m. exposé, p.p.*

the sun, yet their fruits are not good.—  
*soleil, m. cependant, adv.*

I believe your uncle is arrived. — His ability is  
*crois, v. oncles, m. arrivé, p.p. habileté, f.*

not so great as yours. — Two rivals are generally  
*grand, adj. rival, m.*

enemies of one another. — Who gave you that  
*a donné, v.*

letter? — Your brother's servant. — What<sup>1</sup> does  
*lettre, f. domestique, m. ou*

he<sup>4</sup>

he<sup>t</sup> write<sup>s</sup> to you<sup>2</sup> ? — That his library is at our  
*écrit, v.* *bibliothèque, f.* à

service. — His letters please me so much that I  
*service, m.* *plaisent, v.*

wish to increase their number. — He, that  
*veux, v.* *augmenter, v.*

wants virtue, wants (all things.) — That lady  
*manque de, v.* *tout, m.* *dame, f.*

pleases you, for<sup>t</sup> you<sup>2</sup> are<sup>t</sup> always<sup>s</sup> speaking<sup>t</sup> of<sup>s</sup> her.  
*plait, v.* *car, c.* *toujours, adv.* *parlez, v.*

— The beauty of the mind creates admiration; that  
*beauté, f.* *esprit, m.* *donne, v.*

of the soul gains esteem; and that of the body  
*âme, f.* *donne, v.* *estime, f.* *corps, m.*

love. — Most friends are more attached to our  
*amour, m.* *attaché, p. p.*

fortune than they are (so) to our person. —  
*que — ne, c.*

Whoever is without virtue seldom values men,  
*sans, p.* *rarement, adv.* *estime, v.*

and whoever is too good values them too much.  
*trop, adv.*

— It is she who told me that this house (is not)  
*Ce* *a dit, v.* *maison, f.* *n'est pas, v.*

yours. — You believe that Mrs. D — is in  
*croyez, v.* *est, v.* *dans, p.*

your interest, and I believe nothing of it. —  
*intérêt, m.* *crois, v.* *ne—rien, adv.*

Ambition (treads upon) wisdom, honour, probity,  
*foule aux pieds*

and, on their ruins, lays the foundation of  
*sur, p.* *ruine, f.* *élève, v.* *fondement, m.*

its greatness. — Whatever her intention may be, I<sup>t</sup>  
*sa grandeur, f.* *soit, v.*



do <sup>2</sup>not<sup>6</sup> love<sup>5</sup> her<sup>3</sup> the<sup>7</sup> less for<sup>4</sup> it. — Nobody  
*aime, v. moins, adv.*

in the world has complained of your conduct. —  
*s'est, v. plaint, p.p.*

When you read the history of the Roman  
*Quand, c. lirez, v. histoire, f. Romain, adj.*  
 emperors, you will find one (of them) whose  
*empereur, m. trouverez, v.*

name was Nero. — The study of geography is ab-  
*Neron. géographie, f. ab-*

solutely necessary to him who has a taste for  
*solument, adv. du goût, m.*

history. — He<sup>1</sup> that<sup>2</sup> sold<sup>4</sup> us<sup>3</sup> this<sup>5</sup> clock<sup>6</sup> did<sup>9</sup>  
*a vendu, v. horloge, f. a, v.*

<sup>7</sup>not<sup>10</sup> cheat<sup>11</sup> us.<sup>8</sup> — What do you think of it?  
*ne-pas trompé, p.p. pensez, v.*

—— Whosoever<sup>1</sup> cheats<sup>3</sup> me<sup>2</sup> shall <sup>4</sup>repent (of<sup>5</sup>  
*trompe, v. se repentira, v.*

it.) — Every body thinks we (shall have) peace. —  
*croit, v. aurons, v. paix, f.*

England owes her riches to her naval strength and  
*doit, v. forces, f. pl.*

the encouragement she gives to her commerce. —  
*donne, v.*

We speak of what has happened to him. — My  
*parlons, v. est, v. arrivé, p.p.*

house is like others, it has its beauties as well  
*maison, f. comme, adv. a, v. beauté, f.*

as its inconveniences. — She, who (was speaking) to  
*incommodité, f. parloit, v.*

you, is not yet married. — Her father, mo-  
*encore, adv. marié, p.p.*

ther, brothers, sisters, uncles, and aunts; in short,  
*oncle, m. tante, f. enfin, c.*

all

all her relations, are dead, and have left her  
*parent, m. et f. ont, v. laissé, p. p.*

a considerable fortune. — Do you know any of  
*connoissez, v.*

these ladies? — Yes, I know some of them. —  
*Oui, adv. connois, v.*

For<sup>1</sup> all they<sup>5</sup> are<sup>6</sup> young<sup>2</sup> and<sup>3</sup> handsome,<sup>4</sup> they have  
*ont, v.*

a great deal of modesty and virtue. — Desire him to  
*Priez, v. de*

bring them here. — Is that the gown for which  
*amener, v. ici, adv. Est, v. robe, f. pour, p.*

you gave five guineas? — There is I know not  
*avez donné, v. guinée, f. Il y a, v.*

what in the colour which pleases much. — To  
*dans, p. plait, v. beaucoup, adv.*

what (does he apply himself?) — This apple and that  
*s'applique-t-il?*

he gave you are very good. — Give me either  
*donna, v. Donnez, v.*

of them. — I<sup>1</sup> will<sup>5</sup> send you<sup>2</sup> some<sup>4</sup> thither.<sup>3</sup> — I can-  
*enverrai, v. ne peux*

not sell it to you for so small a sum. — I pre-  
*pas, v. vendre, v. pour, p. somme, f. pré-*

fer the beauty of the mind to that of the body. —  
*fère, v.*

Some love one thing, some another. — She says  
*aiment, v. dit, v.*

she hates that man, many think she loves him. —  
*hait, v. aime, v.*

He, whom nobody pleases, is more unhappy than  
*plait, v. malheureux, adj.*

he who pleases nobody. — I was near your sister  
*étois, v. auprès de, p.*

when



when that happened to her.—Both his father and  
*quand, c. arriva, v.*

mother died on the same day.—As covetous as  
*moururent, v. ∞ avare, adj.*

he is, he gave me one guinea.—Whatever has  
*a donné, v. soit, v.*

happened to you, I am sorry for it.—He would  
*arrivé, p.p. ∞ suis, v. fâché, adj. voulut, v.*

do it in spite of any body whatever.—Learning  
*faire, v. en, p. dépit, m. Science, f.*

is preferable to riches, and virtue to both.—Some phi-  
*phi-*

losophers have thought that fixed stars were  
*losophe, m. ont, v. cru, p.p. fixe, adj. étoile, f. étoient, v.*

as many suns.—(Here are) two grammars, which<sup>1</sup> do  
*Voici, adv. ∞*

you<sup>3</sup> prefer<sup>2</sup>?—I prefer this to that.—Both are very  
*préférer, v.*

good.—He believes nothing of what you told him.  
*croit, v. ne rien avez dit, v.*

—You blame him who does not deserve it.—  
*blâmez, v. mérite, v.*

To whom did you speak?—I spoke to nobody;  
*avez, v. parlé, p.p. ai parlé, v.*

for, I saw neither of them.

*car, c. ai vu, v. ∞*

## SECT. IV.

### OF VERBS, AND THEIR DIFFERENT SORTS.

Verbs are usually divided into seven sorts, viz.

- |                                   |            |
|-----------------------------------|------------|
| 1. <i>Les verbes auxiliaires,</i> | auxiliary. |
| 2. <i>Les verbes actifs,</i>      | active.    |
| 3. <i>Les verbes passifs,</i>     | passive.   |
| 4. <i>Les verbes neutres,</i>     | neuter.    |

— 7. 150  
 5. *Les*

5. *Les verbes réfléchis,*      reflective. — 165.  
 6. *Les verbes personnels,*      personal. —  
 7. *Les verbes impersonnels,*      impersonal. — 268.

Some of them are regular, that is to say, they follow the general rule of the conjugation to which they belong; others do not, and are called *irregular*.

The *auxiliary verbs* are, *avoir*, to have, and *être*, to be. The two auxiliaries are used to conjugate all the compound tenses of the other verbs.

The *active verbs*.—In this class, the action is transitive, that is, it passes from the subject to the object: ex. *Le maître punit les écoliers paresseux.* The master *punishes* the lazy scholars.

The active verb sometimes governs two cases, one to which the action directly refers, or which is the direct object of the action, and is therefore called the *direct* or *absolute case*; the other, to which the action refers but indirectly, and it is called the *indirect* or *relative case*: ex. *Votre sœur a écrit une longue lettre à mon frère,* Your sister *wrote* a long letter to my brother.

*A long letter* is the direct or absolute case, and *to my brother* the indirect or relative case, of the verb *wrote*. The direct case can be no other but the *accusative* of a noun or pronoun, but the indirect is either the *genitive*, *dative*, or *ablative*.

In the *passive verbs*, the action is received or suffered by the subject: ex.

*Les écoliers paresseux seront punis.* Lazy scholars *shall be punished*.

In the *neuter verbs*, the action is intransitive, that is, it remains in the agent: ex.

<i>Je dors,</i>	I sleep.		<i>Vous voyagez,</i>	You travel.
<i>Nous étudions,</i>	We study.		<i>Elle soupire,</i>	She sighs.

In the *reflected verbs*, the action returns upon the agent that produces it: ex.

<i>Il se repent,</i>	He repents himself.
<i>Elle se loue,</i>	She praises herself.

These verbs have always *se* before their infinitive, and are conjugated with a double pronoun.



The *personal verbs* are those which are conjugated with three persons, in the singular and plural, throughout all their tenses.

The *impersonal verbs* have but the third person of the singular number.

N. B. There is a kind of verbs, which may be distinguished by the name of *reduplicative*, always expressing a repetition of the action : ex.

*Recommencer*, To begin again.

*Refaire*, To do again, &c.

In these verbs, the English word *again* is to be rendered in French by the syllable *re* prefixed to the radix of the verb, and not by *encore*.

All the above verbs may be *simple* or *compound*.

A verb is *simple* which cannot be divided, without losing its meaning : as,

<i>Appeler</i> ,	To call ;		<i>Voir</i> ,	To see ;
<i>Eâtir</i> ,	To build ;		<i>Prendre</i> ,	To take ;
<i>Mentir</i> ,	To lie ;		<i>Vivre</i> ,	To live ;

which would mean nothing if they were divided.

A verb is *compound* when it is preceded by one or more syllables : as,

<i>Rappeler</i> ,	To recal.		<i>Prévoir</i> ,	To foresee.
<i>Rebâtir</i> ,	To rebuild.		<i>Entreprendre</i> ,	To undertake.
<i>Démentir</i> ,	To belie.		<i>Survivre</i> ,	To outlive, &c.

These last verbs are generally formed by prefixing to them part or the whole of a preposition.

## CONJUGATIONS OF VERBS.

To conjugate verbs is to give them different inflections or terminations, according to their *moods*, *tenses*, *persons*, and *numbers*.

### M O O D S.

*Mood* or *mode*, in the sense it is taken here, is a grammatical term, which means the *manner* of affirming, or denoting, in the verbs, by different inflections.

There are, in the French language, four moods, absolutely distinct from each other, by the several inflections, or by some other difference. They are :

*L'infinitif*,

<i>L'infinitif,</i>	The infinitive.
<i>L'indicatif,</i>	The indicative.
<i>L'impératif,</i>	The imperative.
<i>Le subjonctif, ou conjonctif,</i>	The subjunctive or conjunctive.

### Of the INFINITIVE MOOD.

This mood is thus called, because it only expresses the action or signification of the verb in an *indefinite* and *indeterminate* manner, that is, without affirmation, and without any relation as to time, number, or person : ex.

<i>Parler,</i>	To speak.
<i>Chanter,</i>	To sing.
<i>Danser,</i>	To dance.

### Of the INDICATIVE MOOD.

This mood is thus called, because it not only *indicates* the affirmation in the different tenses of the verbs, but likewise the time, number, and person ; without being preceded or governed by either conjunction or verb : ex.

*J'écris une lettre,* I write a letter.

*Il chante une chanson,* He sings a song.

*Ecris* and *chante* are two verbs in the indicative mood, because they do not require to be preceded by a conjunction\* or another verb to make a complete sense. The definition of this mood will be better understood, by comparing the little that has been said with what is going to be said with respect to the subjunctive mood.

### Of the IMPERATIVE MOOD.

The name, which has been given to this mood, is derived from a Latin word which signifies *to command* ; and the imperative is in fact but a manner of denoting in the verbs the action of *commanding, entreating, praying, exhorting*, and sometimes *forbidding* : ex.

*Ne méprisez pas les avis* Do not *despise* the advice  
*que je vous donne,* which I give you.

It is easy to perceive that this manner of speaking is but an exhortation : as if I had said,

*Je*

\* Among the conjunctions, some govern the indicative, others the subjunctive : this will be explained in time.



*Je vous exhorte, je vous prie,* I exhort, I entreat you, not  
*de ne pas mépriser mes* to despise my advice.  
*avis.*

This mood has no first person in the singular, because it is impossible to command one's self; and, if it have the first person plural, it is because one speaks as much to others as to one's self: as when we say,

*Evitons tout ce qui pourroit* Let us avoid every thing  
*offenser les autres,* that might offend others.

The second person singular, the first and second plural, admit of no pronouns before them; as to the third, in both numbers, it is always preceded by the pronoun *il* or *elle*, &c. and the conjunction *que*.

### Of the SUBJUNCTIVE, or CONJUNCTIVE. ✕

The name of subjunctive, or conjunctive, sufficiently conveys what its use is in a sentence. It may be defined thus; a manner of expressing the different tenses of the verbs without any affirmation. In fact, the subjunctive never affirms; it is always preceded by, or subject to, some conjunction; and, if it should be met with in a sentence containing an affirmation, that affirmation can only be expressed by the verb that precedes the subjunctive, which is used but to modify that affirmation. In the subsequent sentence,

*Je travaille afin que vous* I work that you may rest  
*vous reposiez,* yourself,

the affirmation is only expressed by *je travaille*, I work, and what follows only expresses the end which I purpose by working, viz. to procure you some rest. Again,

*Je désire que vous fassiez* I wish that you may do your  
*votre devoir,* duty.

I will affirm that I wish; but it is clear there is no affirmation in these words, *that you may do your duty*, since I do not say, that you do, that you have done, that you will do, your duty; but only that I wish you may do it. My wish is not doubtful; but it is very doubtful whether you will or may do your duty.

TENSES.

✕ when the subjunctive is used  
 see the Teller p. 149.  
 also this grammar p. 328.

## TENSES.

There are, strictly speaking, but three natural and proper *tenses*, in the verbs: viz.

<i>Le passé,</i>	The past.
<i>Le présent,</i>	The present.
<i>Le futur,</i>	The future.

In the French language, the tenses are divided in the following manner, viz. five in the infinitive mood; three of them are simple, the two others compound.

In the simple tenses, the verb is expressed in one word: ex.

<i>Parler,</i>	To speak.
<i>Chantant,</i>	Singing.
<i>Dansé,</i>	Danced.

The compound tenses are conjugated with some one of the auxiliary verbs, *avoir*, to have, or *être*, to be, joined to a participle passive: ex.

<i>Avoir parlé,</i>	To have spoken.
<i>Ayant chanté,</i>	Having sung.
<i>Etre aimé,</i>	To be loved.
<i>Etant aimé,</i>	Being loved.

## SIMPLE TENSES.

<i>Le présent,</i>	The present.
<i>Le participe actif,</i>	The participle active.
<i>Le participe passif,</i>	The participle passive.

## COMPOUND.

<i>Le présent,</i>	The present.
<i>Le participe passé,</i>	The participle past.

There are ten tenses in the indicative mood, viz. five simple and five compound: they are,

## SIMPLE.

<i>Le présent,</i>	The present.
<i>L'imparfait,</i>	The imperfect.
<i>Le préterit,</i>	The preterite.
<i>Le futur,</i>	The future.
<i>Le conditionel,</i>	The conditional.



## COMPOUND.

<i>Le présent,</i>	The present.
<i>L'imparfait,</i>	The imperfect.
<i>Le prétérít,</i>	The preterite.
<i>Le futur,</i>	The future.
<i>Le conditionel,</i>	The conditional.

N. B. The imperative admits of no tense but the present.

The subjunctive mood has four tenses ; two simple, and two compound.

## SIMPLE.

<i>Le présent,</i>	The present.
<i>Le prétérít,</i>	The preterite.

## COMPOUND.

<i>Le présent,</i>	The present.
<i>Le prétérít,</i>	The preterite.

Before we proceed any farther on the conjugations, it has been thought proper to explain the different uses of the above tenses, as one of the most important articles in a language, whose precision partly depends on the difference which custom sets between one tense and another with regard to the sense of the sentence. We shall endeavour to be short and concise, and say nothing but what is useful, in hopes that the following explanation will be sufficient to remove a difficulty which constantly puzzles the learners.

## TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE MOOD.

## SIMPLE.

## PRESENT.

This tense is used when the state, action, or impression, mentioned by the verb, is *existing, doing, or happening*, at the very time we are speaking : ex.

<i>Je me porte bien,</i>	<i>I am well.</i>
<i>Votre sœur est malade,</i>	<i>Your sister is ill.</i>
<i>Nous nous promenons,</i>	<i>We are walking.</i>
<i>Vous écrivez,</i>	<i>You are writing.</i>
<i>Ils jouent,</i>	<i>They are playing, &amp;c.</i>

The

The present is also used.

1°. When speaking of actions or things which we *habitually* do, are *accustomed* to do, or *can* do: ex.

*Nous dînons toujours à deux heures,* We always *dine* at two o'clock.

*Elle étudie l'histoire,* She *studies* history.

*Vous parlez François,* You *speak* French.

*Lit-il l'Anglois ?* Does he *read* English ?

2°. When speaking of actions which are to be done in a very short time, we generally use this tense instead of the future: ex.

*Je pars ce soir pour la campagne,* I *set out* this evening for the country.

*Que faites-vous demain ?* What do you to-morrow ?

Instead of

*Je partirai ce soir pour la campagne,* I *shall set out* this evening for the country.

*Que ferez-vous demain ?* What *will* you *do* to-morrow ?

3°. This tense is also constantly used in French instead of the preterite or compound of the present, especially in *orations* or *set discourses*, and in *poetry*, in order to represent a past action or event as present to the mind of the hearers or readers.

#### IMPERFECT.

This tense has two uses: *in the first*, it expresses an action *present* or *doing* at the time of an action *that is past*: as when I say,

*Mon frère apprenoit sa leçon quand vous arrivâtes,* My brother *was learning* his lesson when you *arrived*.

In the above sentence, the act of learning, though past with respect to my narration, was present at the moment your arrival took place; therefore this tense is but imperfectly preterite and imperfectly present.

*In the second*, the imperfect is employed every time we speak of *actions of habit*, or *actions reiterated*, at a time which is not *defined*: ex.

*Quand*



Quand j'étois à Londres, When I *was* in London, I  
 j'allois souvent voir mes often *went* to see my  
 amis, friends.

that is, I often *used* to go, or I frequently *went*, &c.

The imperfect is likewise used when we speak of the character, or some *inherent* and *distinctive* quality, of persons or things no longer existing ; and after the English conjunction *if*, though the verb be preceded by *should*, *could*, *would* : ex.

Philippe, père d'Alexandre Philip, the father of Alex-  
 le Grand, étoit le plus ander the Great, *was*  
 fin politique de son tems, the deepest politician of  
 his time.

César avoit je ne sais quoi Cæsar *had* I know not  
 de grand dans la physiono- what of great in his  
 mie, physiognomy.

Carthage faisoit un prodi- Carthage *carried on* a pro-  
 gieux commerce par le mo- digious trade by the  
 yen de ses vaisseaux, qui means of her ships, which  
 alloient jusqu'aux Indes, *went* as far as the Indies.

Palmire et Persépolis é- Palmyra and Persepolis  
 toient de grandes et belles *were* large and fine cit-  
 villes, ies.

S'il venoit, je le payerois, If he *would* come, or *came*,  
 I would pay him.

George II. étoit d'une taille George II. *was*, in his per-  
 plutôt petite que moyenne ; son, rather lower than  
 il avoit les yeux très-sail- the middle size ; he *had*  
 lants, le nez grand, et une remarkably prominent  
 belle complexion ; il étoit eyes, a high nose, and a  
 doux, modéré, et humain ; fair complexion ; he *was*  
 sobre et régulier dans sa mild, moderate, and hu-  
 manière de vivre : il se mane ; in his way of liv-  
 plaisoit dans la pompe et ing, sober and regular :  
 dans l'appareil militaire, he delighted in military  
 et étoit naturellement pomp and parade, and  
 brave : il aimoit la guerre *was* naturally brave : he  
 comme soldat, l'étudioit *loved* war as a soldier, he  
 comme une science, et *studied* it as a science,  
 avoit, sur ce sujet, une and *had*, on that account,

cor-

*correspondance établie avec quelques-uns des plus grands généraux que l'Allemagne ait produits,*

a settled correspondence with some of the greatest generals whom Germany had produced.

From the above instances it might confidently be believed that every difficulty attending the use of this tense will be entirely removed; I shall, however add, as a farther illustration, (that whenever the verb, which in English is in the preterite, can be made by the past tense of the verb *to be*, and that preterite changed into the participle active, or (when that preterite can be turned by the verb in the infinitive mood preceded by *used*, that past tense must be made in French by the imperfect.

#### PRETERITE.

This tense is so called because it always expresses an action done at a time *determined* or *specified* by an adverb, or some circumstance in the speech, and so entirely elapsed that nothing more remains of the time when that action was doing: ex.

*Je fus malade hier pendant deux heures,* I *was* ill yesterday for two hours.

*La dernière fois que nous allâmes le voir, nous eûmes un accueil favorable,* The *last* time we *went* to see him, we *had* a kind reception.

*Vous écrivîtes à votre frère il y a huit jours,* You *wrote* to your brother *eight* days ago.

*Ils essuyèrent de grandes pertes l'année passée,* They *underwent* great losses *last* year.

#### FUTURE.

This tense simply expresses that an action will be done at a time that is not yet come: ex.

*Je vous verrai demain à Londres,* I *will* see you to-morrow in London.

*Mon frère vous écrira la semaine prochaine,* My brother *will* write to you next week.

In French, as well as in English, we sometimes express an action that is to be done instantly by the verb *aller*, or *s'en aller*, immediately followed by an infinitive: ex.

*X was walking — se promenant*  
*X. used to walk — se promenant*



*Je vais, or je m'en vais,* I am going to write to my  
*écrire à ma tante,* aunt.

*Je vais, or je m'en vais,* I am going to set out.  
*partir,*

Which signify :

*Je lui écrirai tout présente-* I will write to her pre-  
*ment,* sently.

*Je partirai dans l'instant.* I will set out instantly.

To express an uncertainty in a future tense, that is, to express that it is not decided that such a thing will be done, we make use of the word *devoir* immediately followed by a verb in the infinitive mood, and that is the only instance wherein *devoir* does not imply obligation, necessity, &c. : ex.

*Le roi doit partir pour Chel-* The king is to set out for  
*tenham vers le milieu du* Cheltenham about the  
*mois de Juillet, et ne doit* middle of July, and is  
*revenir qu'à la fin du* not to return till the lat-  
*mois d'Août,* ter end of August.

That is,

*On suppose que le roi partira* It is supposed that the king  
*&c. et qu'il ne reviendra* will set out, &c. and will  
*&c.* not return till, &c.

#### CONDITIONAL.

The name of this tense is a true definition of it : in fact it is always used to express some condition or supposition, and has always a reference to the present, because, by supposing the condition effected, the action, mentioned by the conditional, becomes present : ex.

*Je lirois si j'avois des livres,* I would read if I had books.

*Vous auriez la fièvre si vous* You would have a fever if  
*mangiez de ce fruit,* you ate of that fruit.

*Je serois mortifié s'il perdoit* I should be mortified if he  
*son procès.* should lose his law-suit.

It is sometimes used, instead of the future, after the conjunction *que* : ex.

*Il a promis qu'il viendrait,* He has promised to come,  
 or that he will come.

This tense is often called the *uncertain tense*, because it expresses an action made uncertain by the conditional  
 that

that follows it, and some grammarians place it among the tenses of the subjunctive mood, though it be very certain that it never is governed by any of the conjunctions which require a subjunctive mood after them.

## COMPOUND TENSES.

### COMPOUND OF THE PRESENT.

The compound of the present is employed in two different manners.

1°. It expresses an action past in an indeterminate time, but not too much distant from the time we speak: thus we must say,

<i>J'ai vu mademoiselle votre</i>	<i>I have seen your sister, and</i>
<i>sœur et lui ai parlé,</i>	<i>spoken to her.</i>
<i>Le roi de Prusse a conquis</i>	<i>The king of Prussia has</i>
<i>la Silésie,</i>	<i>conquered Silesia.</i>
<i>Cela s'est passé avantageuse-</i>	<i>That has passed advantage-</i>
<i>ment pour votre cousin,</i>	<i>ously for your cousin.</i>

In the above sentence, the action is certainly past, but the time when it past is neither determined nor specified.

2°. It expresses a time definite and determinate, but of which there yet remains some part to elapse: ex.

<i>Les fruits ont très bien ré-</i>	<i>Fruits have very well suc-</i>
<i>ussi cette année,</i>	<i>ceeded this year.</i>
<i>Nous n'avons pas eu beau-</i>	<i>We have not had much</i>
<i>coup de neige cet hiver,</i>	<i>snow this winter.</i>
<i>Il a plu toute cette semaine,</i>	<i>It has rained all this week,</i>
<i>tout ce mois,</i>	<i>all this month.</i>
<i>Nous avons vu d'étranges</i>	<i>We have seen strange things</i>
<i>choses dans ce siècle,</i>	<i>in this century.</i>

In the above sentences, *this year, this week, this winter, &c.* are times which still last, and are not yet elapsed.

To express an action recently past, we sometimes make use of the verb *venir* immediately followed by *de*, and the verb in the infinitive mood: ex.

<i>Je viens de le voir passer,</i>	<i>I have just seen him go by.</i>
<i>Le roi vient d'arriver,</i>	<i>The king is but just arrived.</i>
<i>Elle vient d'expirer,</i>	<i>She is but just dead.</i>

The



The same tense may be expressed by the verb *faire*, preceded by the negation *ne* and followed by the conjunction *que*, with an infinitive preceded by *de*: ex.

*Il ne fait que d'arriver,*      He is but just arrived.

*Je ne fais que de sortir,*      I have but just gone out.

N. B. This particle *de* is here indispensable, because, without it, the expression would have quite another sense, and would express a continuation or a frequent reiteration in the action: ex.

*Vous ne faites que sortir,*      You do nothing but go out.

*Elle ne fait que jouer et danser,*      She does nothing but play and dance.

#### COMPOUND OF THE IMPERFECT.

The compound of the imperfect expresses an action past before another, which is past also, but with this difference, that the action expressed by this tense is the principal object of the person who speaks, and the following sentence is subordinate to that expressed by the compound of the imperfect. So that, though the time of that subordinate sentence be defined, that of the principal sentence is not the less indeterminate, because the former has no influence on the latter. As, when we say,

*Nous avions dîné lorsqu'il arriva,*      We had dined when he arrived,

our principal object is to express the action of dining as past, without determining at what time, but only before an action which is passed also, without, however, the latter being a consequence of the former; for, we do not mean to say, that he stayed, or waited, till we had dined, to arrive.

#### COMPOUND OF THE PRETERITE.

This tense also expresses an action done or past before another which is likewise past, and is determined by the following sentence, which is the principal object of the attention. Thus, when we say,

*Quand ils eurent achevé de jouer, ils se mirent à chanter,*      When they had done playing, they began singing,

we

we mean at first to convey that they *began singing*, and that it was not till they *had done playing*; in which case, the action of having done playing is subordinate to this, *they began singing*, and consequently the latter determines the time of the other.

The following observation is very plain, and will in some manner fix the use of the above tense, viz. that it is hardly ever used except after the conjunctions

<i>Aussitôt que,</i>	} As soon as ;	<i>Après que,</i>	} After ;
<i>D'abord que,</i>		<i>Lorsque,</i>	
<i>Dès que,</i>		<i>Quand,</i>	

which never precede a compound of the imperfect, unless the verb expresses a custom or habit.

Lastly, we must use the compound of the preterite when the adverb, *bientôt*, soon precedes or follows the verbs *was* or *had*, to express an action or thing as done and accomplished: ex.

*L'affaire fut bientôt faite,* The business was *soon* over.  
*J'eus bientôt fini de manger,* I *soon* had done eating.

#### COMPOUND of the FUTURE.

The name of this tense seems at first to convey a contradiction: what is meant by that, is not that an action can be future and past at the same time, but only that the action, which is to come, will be past when another action happens, or even before it happens: ex.

*Je serai parti quand vous* I *shall be gone* when you  
*reviendrez,* come back.

*Quand vous aurez fini vos* When you *have done* your  
*affaires, vous viendrez me* business, you shall come  
*trouver ;* to me.

In the first sentence, *I shall be gone*, which is a future time with respect to the present we speak in, will be a past time by the time you will or purpose to arrive, &c.

#### COMPOUND of the CONDITIONAL.

This tense generally supposes a condition, as the first conditional, with this difference, that, the condition taking place, the action expressed by the verb in the conditional

L

is



is accomplished, and consequently in a past time : ex.  
*Je vous aurois écrit il y a un mois, si j'eusse su votre adresse,* I would have written to you a month ago, if I had known your direction.

The *indicative* mood has another tense, formed by the compound of the present of the verb *avoir*, joined to a participle passive, which has not been inserted in the preceding tenses on account of its being seldom used : ex.

*Quand j'ai eu dîné, je suis parti ;* When I have had dined, I set out.

But it is more elegant and more natural to say,  
*Après avoir dîné, je suis parti ;* After I had dined, I set out

## TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE, OR CONJUNCTIVE MOOD. X

*See Le Français par son dictionnaire p. 151. —*

The subjunctive or conjunctive, has no future distinguished from the *present*, because the present of the subjunctive likewise expresses a future tense : ex.

*Je ne crois pas qu'il vienne,* I do not think he will come.

Add the following observations to the latter.

1°. When the verb which precedes the conjunction is in the present or future of the indicative, and when we do not mean to express an action past in the second verb, we must put this last verb in the present of the subjunctive mood : ex.

*Je souhaite que vous réussissiez dans votre entreprise,* I wish you may succeed in your undertaking.

*J'attendrai qu'il vienne,* I will wait till he come.

2°. When the verb, which is before the conjunction, is in some of the past tenses, or conditional, and we wish not to design, by the second verb, a past time more distant than the first verb's, we must put this second verb in the preterite of the subjunctive : ex.

*Alexandre*

*Alexandre ordonna que tous  
ses sujets l'adorassent  
comme un dieu,*

*Je voulois que vous écrivis-  
siez à votre sœur,*

*Il souhaiteroit que vous pris-  
siez des mesures plus con-  
venables,*

Alexander ordered that all  
his subjects *should* wor-  
ship him like a god.

I wished you *to write* to  
your sister.

He would wish you *to take*  
more becoming mea-  
sures.

*part 3°.* The compound of the present of the subjunctive mood is used when we speak of an action past and accomplished, with regard to the tense of the verb which precedes the conjunction; and this tense is generally the present, compound of the present, or future, of the indicative: ex.

*Je doute qu'aucun philosophe  
ait jamais bien connu  
l'union de l'âme avec le  
corps ;*

*Il a fallu que j'aie consulté  
tous les médecins ;*

*Je n'aurai garde d'y aller  
que je n'aie reçu quelque  
assurance d'être bien ac-  
cueilli ;*

I doubt whether any philo-  
sopher *have* ever well  
*known* the union of the  
soul with the body.

I was obliged *to consult* all  
the physicians.

I shall by no means go  
there till I *have received*  
some assurances of being  
welcome.

*part 4°.* After the imperfect, preterite, compound of the imperfect, of the indicative, or one of the two conditionals, we use the compound of the preterite of the subjunctive mood; likewise after the conjunction *if*, when preceding a compound tense: ex.

*J'ignorois que vous eussiez  
embrassé cette profession-  
là ;*

*Vous n'avez pas cru que je  
fusse arrivée avant vous,*

*Nous aurions été fâchés que  
vous vous fussiez adressé  
à d'autres qu' à nous ;*

I did not know you *had*  
*embraced* that profession.

You did not believe I *should*  
*have arrived* before you.

We should have been sorry  
if you *had applied* to any  
other but us.

*\* when we speak of an action past.*

NUMBERS



## NUMBERS AND PERSONS.

A tense is composed of numbers : that is, the singular and the plural.

That there are three persons, has already been observed under the personal pronouns ; we have only to remark, that some of these three persons are always joined to the verb as its nominative case, therefore the verb must agree with that nominative in number and person : ex.

<i>Je fais,</i> I do.	<i>Nous faisons,</i> We do.
<i>Tu fais,</i> Thou doest.	<i>Vous faites,</i> You or ye do.
<i>Il fait,</i> He does.	<i>Ils font,</i> They do.

The pronoun *vous*, you, denotes the second person singular and plural, with this difference, that, when we speak to a person only, the attribute, or qualifying noun, must be put in the singular : ex.

*Vous êtes marié,* and not *You are married.*  
*mariés ;*

*Vous étiez général de l'armée,* and not *généraux ;* *You were general of the army.*

But we must say *mariés* and *généraux*, if we speak to many.

When the verb has two or three nouns or pronouns as its nominative, it must be put in the plural, though all these nominatives be in the singular, because two or more nouns in the singular are equivalent to a plural, with regard to verbs as well as to adjectives : ex.

*Mon frère et ma sœur sont partis,* *My brother and sister are gone.*

That has already been mentioned in the adjectives.

If, among these nominatives, one is of the first person and the other of the second, or one is of the second and the others of the third, the verb must agree with the first in preference to the second, and with the second in preference to the third, observing that, in French, the person spoken to must be named first, and the person speaking is to be mentioned the last : we must therefore say,

*C'est*

<i>C'est vous et moi qui avons découvert tout ce complot,</i>	It is you and I who <i>have</i> discovered all that plot.
<i>Ce n'est ni vous ni ma sœur qui avez ouvert la porte,</i>	It is neither you nor my sister who <i>have</i> opened the door, &c.
<i>Vous, mon père, et moi, par- tirons demain,</i>	You, my father, and I, <i>will</i> <i>set</i> out to-morrow.

The pronoun relative *qui*, in these and the like sentences, always takes place of the first or second person, and only agrees with the others in number; it is for that reason we must say,

<i>C'est moi qui suis cause de ce malheur,</i>	It is I who <i>am</i> the cause of that misfortune.
<i>C'est vous qui avez révélé ce secret,</i>	It is you who <i>have</i> revealed that secret.
<i>Ce n'est ni lui ni moi qui l'avons fait,</i>	It is neither he nor I who <i>have</i> done it.

There are four conjugations in the French language. Each is distinguished by the termination of the verb in the infinitive mood.

The first makes	<i>er</i> ,	as <i>donner</i> , to give.
The second	<i>ir</i> ,	as <i>punir</i> , to punish.
The third	<i>avoir</i> ,	as <i>recevoir</i> , to receive.
The fourth	<i>re</i> ,	as <i>rendre</i> , to render.

N. B. It is necessary that the learner should be well acquainted with the manner of conjugating the two following verbs, because of the frequency of their occurrence in sentences, and in forming the compound tenses of all other verbs.

## CONJUGATION OF THE AUXILIARY VERB *AVOIR*, TO HAVE.

### INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	Compound of the present.
<i>Avoir</i> , to have.	<i>Avoir eu</i> , to have had.
Participle active.	Compound of the past.
<i>Ayant</i> , having.	<i>Ayant eu</i> , having had.
Participle passive.	
<i>Eu</i> , had.	



## INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.

*J'ai*, I have.*Tu as*, thou hast.*Il a*, he has.*Elle a*, she has.

Plural.

*Nous avons*, we have.*Vous avez*, you or ye have.*Ils ont*, they have.*Elles ont*, they have.

Imperfect. Sing.

*J'avois*, I had.*Tu avois*, thou hadst.*Il avoit*, he had.

Plural.

*Nous avions*, we had.*Vous aviez*, you had.*Ils avoient*, they had.

Preterite. Sing.

*J'eus*, I had.*Tu eus*, thou hadst.*Il eut*, he had.

Plural.

*Nous eûmes*, we had.*Vous eûtes*, you had.*Ils eurent*, they had.

Future. Singular.

*J'aurai*, I shall or will have.*Tu auras*, thou wilt, &c. have.*Il aura*, he will, &c. have.

Plural.

*Nous aurons*, we shall, &c. have.*Vous aurez*, you will, &c. have.*Ils auront*, they will, &c. have.

Conditional. Singular.

*J'aurais*, I should, could, would, or might, have.*Tu aurais*, thou wouldst, &c. have.*Il auroit*, he would, &c. have.

Plural.

*Nous aurions*, we should, &c. have.*Vous auriez*, you would, &c. have.*Ils auroient*, they would, &c. have.

## COMPOUND TENSES.

They are formed by adding the participle passive, *eu*, had, to the preceding : ex.

Compound of the present.

*J'ai eu*, I have had, &c.

Compound

Compound of the imperfect.

*J'avois eu*, I had had, &c.

Compound of the preterite.

*J'eus eu*, &c. I had had, &c.

Compound of the future.

*J'aurai eu*, &c. I will or shall have had, &c.

Compound of the conditional.

*J'aurais eu*, &c. I would, should, could, or might, have had, &c.

#### IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.

*Aie*, have thou.

*Qu'il ait*, let him have.

*Qu'elle ait*, let her have.

Plural.

*Ayons*, let us have.

*Ayez*, have ye or you.

*Qu'ils or elles aient*, let them have.

#### SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.

*Que j'aie*, that I may have.

*tu aies*, thou mayest have.

*il ait*, he may have.

Plural.

*Que nous ayons*, that we may have.

*vous ayez*, you may have.

*ils aient*, they may have.

Preterite. Singular.

*Que j'eusse*, that I might have or had.

*tu eusses*, thou mightest have.

*il eût*, he might have.

Plural.

*Que nous eussions*, that we might have.

*vous eussiez*, you might have.

*ils eussent*, they might have.

#### COMPOUND TENSES.

They are formed by adding the participle passive, *eu*, had, to the two preceding : ex.

Compound



Compound of the present.

*Que j'aie eu*, &c. that I may have had.

Compound of the preterite.

*Que j'eusse eu*, &c. that I might have had.

The learner ought to conjugate the preceding verb with a negation : ex.

*Je n'ai pas*,

I have *not* ;

*Nous n'avons pas*,

We have *not* ;

always placing *ne* before the verb, and *pas* after it.

## CONJUGATION OF THE AUXILIARY VERB *ETRE*, TO BE.

### INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.

*Etre*, to be.

Participle active.

*Etant*, being.

Participle passive.

*Été*, been.

Compound of the present.

*Avoir été*, to have been.

Compound of the past.

*Ayant été*, having been.

### INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.

*Je suis*, I am.

*Tu es*, thou art,

*Il est*, he is.

Imperfect. Sing.

*J'étois*, I was.

*Tu étois*, thou wast.

*Il étoit*, he was.

Preterite. Sing.

*Je fus*, I was.

*Tu fus*, thou wast.

*Il fut*, he was.

Plural.

*Nous sommes*, we are.

*Vous êtes*, you are.

*Ils sont*, they are.

Plural.

*Nous étions*, we were.

*Vous étiez*, you were.

*Ils étoient*, they were.

Plural.

*Nous fûmes*, we were.

*Vous fûtes*, you were.

*Ils furent*, they were.

Future. Singular.

*Je serai*, I shall or will be.

*Tu seras*, thou wilt, &c. be.

*Il sera*, he will, &c. be.

Plural.

## Plural.

*Nous serons*, we shall, &c. be.*Vous serez*, you will, &c. be.*Ils seront*, they will, &c. be.

## Conditional. Singular.

*Je serois*, I would, could, should, or might, be.*Tu serois*, thou wouldest, &c. be.*Il seroit*, he would, &c. be.

## Plural.

*Nous serions*, we should, &c. be.*Vous seriez*, you would, &c. be.*Ils seroient*, they would, &c. be.

## COMPOUND TENSES.

They are formed by adding the participle passive of this verb, *été*, been, to the simple tenses of the indicative mood of the verb *avoir* : ex.

## Compound of the present.

*J'ai été*, &c. I have been, &c.

## Compound of the imperfect.

*J'avois été*, &c. I had been, &c.

## Compound of the preterite.

*J'eus été*, &c. I had been, &c.

## Compound of the future.

*J'aurai été*, &c. I shall or will have been, &c.

## Compound of the conditional.

*J'aurois été*, &c. I should, could, would, or might, have been, &c.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## Present. Singular.

*Sois*, be thou.*Qu'il soit*, let him be.

## Plural.

*Soyons*, let us be.*Soyez*, be ye.*Qu'ils soient*, let them be.

## SUBJUNCTIVE



## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.

*Que je sois*, that I may be, or be.  
*tu sois*, thou mayest be.  
*il soit*, he may be.

Plural.

*Que nous soyons*, that we may be.  
*vous soyez*, you may be.  
*ils soient*, they may be.

Preterite. Singular.

*Que je fusse*, that I might be, or were.  
*tu fusses*, thou mightest be.  
*il fût*, he might be.

Plural.

*Que nous fussions*, that we might be.  
*vous fussiez*, you might be.  
*ils fussent*, they might be.

## COMPOUND TENSES.

They are formed by adding the participle past of this verb, *été*, been, to the two simple tenses of the subjunctive mood of the verb *avoir* : ex.

Compound of the present.

*Que j'aie été*, &c. that I may have been, &c.

Compound of the preterite.

*Que j'eusse été*, &c. that I might have been, &c.

This verb, as well as the preceding, is to be conjugated with the negation : ex.

*Je ne suis pas*, I am not.  
*Nous ne sommes pas*, We are not.

*N. B.* Here it is peculiarly necessary to observe, that the two above verbs, *avoir*, to have, and *être*, to be, are only auxiliaries when they are joined with some participle passive of another verb ; otherwise, *être* may properly be called a *substantive-verb* ; that is, a verb which only expresses the affirmation, without any inherent quality ; and the verb *avoir* is an *active one*, which signifies *to possess*.

## EXERCISES

## EXERCISES UPON THE TWO AUXILIARY VERBS.

## GENERAL OBSERVATION.

Every verb must agree with its nominative case in *person* and *number*; but after collective nouns, such as *amas, foule, infinité, nombre, la plûpart, &c.* followed by a genitive, the verb must agree with that genitive in number: ex.

*La plûpart de ses amis l'ont abandonné,* Most of his *friends* have forsaken him.

In order to ease the learner, the different simple tenses are marked in the following exercises, as far as the irregular verbs, when it is hoped every difficulty will be removed by practice and attention. The second person singular, being seldom or never used in conversation, has been omitted throughout the exercises on the verbs.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRES. I have a book.——I am happy.——He has  
*livre, m.* *heureux, adj.*

a hat, which is too big. —— We have  
*chapeau, m.* *trop, adv.* *grand, adj.*

no money. —— We are not ambitious. —— You have  
*argent, m.* *ambitieux, adj.*

a sword. — You are very proud. —— Those girls  
*épée, f.* *orgueilleux, adj.* *fille, f.*

have modesty; they are virtuous.

*modestie, f.* *vertueux, adj.*

IMP. I had a friend. —— I was grateful. —— My  
*ami, m.* *reconnoissant, adj.*

sister had no work, she was lazy. —— We had  
*ouvrage, m.* *pareseux, adj.*

a holiday, we were very glad of it. —— We had  
*congé, m.* *aïse, adj.*

company, but you were not ready. — Your brothers  
*compagnie, f. mais, c.* *prêt, adj.*

had



had learning, they were loved by every body.  
*savoir, m. aimé, p.p. de*

PRET. (As soon as) I had a fine horse I  
*Dès que, c. beau, adj. cheval, m.*

was merry. — My cousin had a little gar-  
*de bonne humeur. cousin, m. petit, adj. jar-*

den, he was ingenious. — As soon as we had bread  
*din, m. adroit, adj. pain, m.*

we were satisfied. — You had fine weather, you were  
*rassasié, p.p. tems, m.*

pleased. — Your friends had beautiful flowers, they  
*content, adj. beau, adj. fleur, f.*

were very careful of them.  
*soigneux, adj.*

FUT. I shall have discretion ; I shall be prudent.

— Miss White shall have a bird that will be very  
*oiseau, m.*

tame. — We shall have no books ; we shall not  
*apprivoisé, adj.*

be learned. — You shall have pens and paper ; you  
*savant, adj. plume, f. papier, m.*

will be busy. — The English will have a good  
*occupé, adj.*

admiral ; they will be victorious.

*amiral, m. victorieux, adj.*

COND. I could have a pretty dog. — I  
*joli, adj. chien, m.*

would not be troublesome. — Mr. Thomas would have  
*importun, adj.*

good wine ; it would be a delicious thing. — We  
*vin, m. ce délicieux, adj. chose, f.*

would have a dictionary ; we would not be negligent.  
*dictionnaire, m.*

— You

—You would have good officers ; you would be in-  
*officier, m.* *in-*

vincible. — These ladies should have a better re-  
*vincible, adj.* *dame, f.* *ac-*

ception ; they would be thankful.

*cueil, m.* *reconnoissant, adj.*

#### IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Have patience, and be indulgent. — Let her have a

gown ; let her be happy. — Let us have *at least*  
*robe, f.* *au moins, adv.*

some gratitude ; let us be diligent. — Let them have  
*reconnoissance, f.*

partridges ; let them be merry.

*perdrix, f.* *joyeux, adj.*

#### SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRES. That I may have riches. — That I may  
*richesses, f. pl.*

be charitable. — That he may have scholars. — That  
*écoliers, m.*

he may be attentive. — That we may have a good  
*attentif, adj.*

house. — That we may be well lodged. — That  
*maison, f.* *bien, adj. logé, p. p.*

you may have your money ; that you may be paid. —  
*argent, m.* *payé, p. p.*

That they may have apples ; that they may be ripe.  
*pomme, f.* *mur, adj.*

PRET. That I might have generosity. — That I  
*générosité, f.*

might not be poor. — That he might have no plea-  
*pauvre, adj.* *plai-*

sure. — That he might be uneasy. — That we might  
*sir, m.* *inquiet, adj.*

M

have



have our share. — That we might not be deceived. —  
*part, f. trompé, p.p.*

That you might have a couple of fowls. — That you  
*couple, f. poulet, m.*

might be pleased. — That they might have no pen-  
*content, adj.*

sion. — That they might not be rewarded.  
*récompensé, p.p.*

## PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES UPON THE COMPOUND TENSES.

I have had (a great deal) of trouble ; I have not  
*bien, adv. peine, f.*

been rewarded. — Your brother would have had  
*frère, m.*

leave, if he had been diligent. — If you had mar-  
*permission, f. épou-*

ried him, you would have had a tyrant instead  
*fé, p.p. tyran, m. au lieu, p.*

of a husband ; you never could have been happy. —  
*mari, m. ne jamais*

If we had fought we could not have been con-  
*combattu, p.p. vain-*

quered. — Thomas has had two holidays, because he  
*cu, p.p. congé, m. parceque, c.*

has been very active. — Your friend could have had a  
*actif, adj.*

better watch, he would not have been cheated. — Your  
*montre, f. trompé, p.p.*

uncle and my brother have been wet. — You could  
*oncle, m. mouillé, p.p.*

have killed a hare if you had had a gun.  
*tué, p.p. lièvre, m. si, c. fusil, m.*

After

After these exercises, the learner ought to conjugate the two foregoing verbs, throughout the several tenses of the indicative mood only, first, with an interrogation affirmative, and then with an interrogation negative : ex.

## S I N G U L A R.

## Affirmatively.

<i>Ai-je ?</i>	have I ?	<i>Suis-je ?</i>	am I ?
<i>A-t-il ?</i>	has he ?	<i>Est-il ?</i>	Is he ?
<i>Mon frère a-t-il ?</i>	has my brother ?		
<i>Sa fille est-elle ?</i>	is her daughter ?		

## Negatively.

<i>N'ai-je pas ?</i>	have I not ?	<i>Ne suis-je pas ?</i>	am I not ?
<i>N'a-t-il pas ?</i>	has he not ?	<i>N'est-il pas ?</i>	is he not ?
<i>Ma sœur n'a-t-elle pas ?</i>	has not my sister ?		
<i>Votre cousin n'est-il pas ?</i>	is not your cousin ?		

## P L U R A L.

## Affirmatively.

<i>Avons-nous ?</i>	have we ?	<i>Sommes-nous ?</i>	are we ?
<i>Avez-vous ?</i>	have you ?	<i>Etes-vous ?</i>	are you ?
<i>Ont-ils ?</i>	have they ?	<i>Sont-ils ?</i>	are they ?
<i>Vos frères ont-ils ?</i>	have your brothers ? &c.		
<i>Ses filles sont-elles ?</i>	are his daughters ? &c.		

## Negatively.

<i>N'avons-nous pas ?</i>	have we not ?
<i>N'avez-vous pas ?</i>	have you not ?
<i>N'ont-ils pas ?</i>	have they not ?
<i>Ses enfans n'ont-ils pas ?</i>	have not his children ?
<i>Ne sommes-nous pas ?</i>	are we not ?
<i>N'êtes-vous pas ?</i>	are you not ?
<i>Ne sont-ils pas ?</i>	are they not ?
<i>Mes sœurs ne sont-elles pas ?</i>	are not my sisters ? &c.

N. B. In the interrogations, it must be observed, that, when there is a noun standing as a nominative to the verb, the pronouns *il, elle, nous, vous, ils, elles*, though not expressed in English, must be expressed in French immediately after the verb, according to the person and number ; and, when the verb terminates with a vowel,



a *-t-* is to be added, in the third person singular, between the verb and the pronoun, the noun beginning the phrase : ex.

*Votre oncle a-t-il des enfans ?* Has your uncle any children ?

that is, your uncle, has *he* any children ?

*Mon cousin aura-t-il congé ?* Will my cousin have a holiday ?

that is, my cousin, will he have a holiday ?

The same rule must be observed in the conjugation of the other verbs : ex.

*Votre frère joue-t-il du violon ?* Does your brother play on the fiddle ?

*Sa sœur dinera-t-elle ici aujourd'hui ?* Will her sister dine here to-day ? &c.

But, if the sentence begin with *que* interrogative, or an *adverb*, the pronoun is not to be expressed, and the *noun* is to be put after the verb : ex.

*Que fait votre sœur ?* What is your sister doing ?

*Comment se porte votre frère ?* How does your brother ?

The learner will have no trouble in going through the other simple tenses of the indicative mood ; and, as for the compounds, it needs only to be remarked, that *eu*, had, or *été*, been, is to be added to the simple tenses of the verb *avoir*, to have : ex.

*Ai-je eu ?* have I *had* ?

*N'ai-je pas eu ?* have I not *had* ? &c.

*Ai-je été ?* have I *been* ?

*N'ai-je pas été ?* have I not *been* ?

## PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES ON THE PRECEDING RULES.

Have I my books ? — Am I not unhappy to  
*malheureux*, adj. de  
 have

Have lost his friendship ? — Has he no money ? —  
*perdu, p.p. amitié, f.*

Is my sister arrived ? — Has not your father a great  
*arrivé, p.p.*

deal of friendship for you. — Have not your parents  
*amitié, f.*

sent you all the money you wanted ? — Have  
*envoyé, p.p. avoir, v. besoin de*

we not a garden ? — Are we not very happy ? — Have  
*jardin, m.*

you a good gun ? — Are you dexterous ? — Have not  
*fusil, m. adroit, adj.*

my brother and sister a beautiful coach ? — Are not  
*carrosse, m.*

Paul and Thomas two pretty children ? — Are your  
*joli, adj.*

brothers arrived ? — Are you not glad to see them ?  
*de voir, v.*

— Have they spoken to you ? — Had you not a little  
*parlé, p.p.*

dog ? — Was not your paper very good ? — Are not

the English ladies generally handsomer than the  
*généralement, adv.*

French ? — Shall you have occasion for your dictionary ?  
*besoin, m. de*

ry ? — Shall I not have the pleasure to see you to-  
*de voir, v. de-*

morrow ? — Were you not in the room ? — Shall we  
*main, adv. chambre, f.*

not have leave ? — Will they not be angry ? —  
*permission, f. fâché, adj.*

Could you not have had a better watch ? — If France  
*Si, c.*

were



were as rich as England, would it not be the  
*riche*, adj. *ce*, pro.

best country in\* the world? — Will you not be asha-  
*pays*, m. *bon-*

med? — Has not your friend had bad weather?  
*teux*, adj. *mauvais*, adj. *tems*, m.

— Had not our admiral better seamen than yours? —  
*matelot*, m.

Has he been victorious? — Would not your hat be too  
*victorieux*, adj.

big? — Is not your sister older than mine? —  
*grand*, adj. *âgé*, adj.

Are you not happier than if you were married? —  
*marié*, p.p.

Shall not John have a holiday if he be diligent? —  
*Jean*

Has not your cousin more money than you? — Was  
 not your wine very dear?

The learner will soon be convinced how necessary it is to know these two verbs perfectly well, because the compound tenses of all the others are formed with them. When he is well acquainted with their usage, he will only have to add the participle passive to any of their tenses: ex.

*J'ai aimé*, I have loved, or, did love.

*Je n'ai pas chanté*, I have not sung, or, did not sing.

*Ai-je parlé*? have I spoken, or, did I speak?

*N'ai-je pas étudié*? have I not studied? or, did I not study?

*Avez-vous dansé*? have you danced? or, did you dance?

*N'avez-vous pas écrit*? have you not written, or, did you not write?

*Je suis puni*, I am punished.

*Je ne suis pas attendu*, I am not expected.

*Suis-*

\* See the degrees of comparison.

*Suis-je aimé ?* am I loved ?

*Ne suis-je pas perdu ?* am I not undone ?

*Etes-vous marié ?* are you married ?

*N'êtes-vous pas convaincu ?* are you not convinced

### REMARK ON THE VERB *ETRE*, TO BE.

In English, when this verb immediately precedes any noun, signifying *old, hungry, thirsty, cold, hot, or afraid*, it should be rendered into French by *avoir*, to have, and the adjective must be changed into its substantive : ex.

*Quel âge avez-vous ?*

How *old* are you ?

*J'ai sept ans,*

I *am* seven years old.

*Avez-vous faim ?*

*Are* you *hungry* ?

*Non, mais j'ai soif,*

No, but I *am* *thirsty*, &c.

### E X E R C I S E S.

How old is your daughter ? — She is seven years

*Quel, pro.*

*fille, f.*

*an, m.*

old. — My son will be eleven years old (in the)

*en*

*fil, m.*

*au*

month of April. — I was very hungry when I

*mois, m. Avril, m.*

*grand, adj.*

*quand, c.*

arrived. — Were you not very thirsty ? — He is

*suis arrivé, v.*

*grand, adj.*

not afraid. — You will soon be warm. — Are

*peur, f.*

*bientôt, adv. chaud, m.*

you not cold ? — How old are these two young chil-

*froid, m.*

*en-*

dren ? — The one is three years old, and the other is

*fant, m.*

not yet four. — Was not my sister more than

*encore, adv.*

ten years old when she died ?

*quand, adv.*

*mourut, v.*

F I R S T



## FIRST CONJUGATION.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	Parl-er, to speak.
Participle active.	*ant, speaking.
Participle passive.	é, m. ée, f. spoken.

## COMPOUND TENSES.

Present.	<i>Avoir parlé</i> , to have spoken.
Past.	<i>Ayant parlé</i> , having spoken.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present. Singular.

<i>Je</i>	parl-e, I speak, or, I do speak, or, am speaking.†
<i>Tu</i>	es, thou speakest.
<i>Il</i>	e, he speaks.

## Plural.

<i>Nous</i>	*ons, we speak.
<i>Vous</i>	ez, you speak.
<i>Ils</i>	ent, they speak.

## Imperfect. Singular.

<i>Je</i>	parl-*ois, I was speaking, spoke, or, did speak.
<i>Tu</i>	*ois, thou wast speaking, &c.
<i>Il</i>	*oit, he was speaking, &c.

## Plural.

<i>Nous</i>	ions, we were speaking, &c.
<i>Vous</i>	iez, you were speaking, &c.
<i>Ils</i>	*oient, they were speaking, &c.

## Preterite. Singular.

<i>Je</i>	parl-*ai, I spoke, or, did speak.
<i>Tu</i>	*as, thou spokest.
<i>Il</i>	*a, he spoke.

## Plural.

† When, in English, a participle active is joined to any of the tenses of the auxiliary verb *to be*, the auxiliary must be left out in French, and the participle put in the same tense, &c. with the auxiliary that is suppressed: ex.

<i>Je parle</i> , I am speaking;	<i>Je priois</i> , I was desiring;
<i>Vous parlez</i> , you are speaking;	<i>Nous chantions</i> , we were singing;

and not *je suis parlant*, *vous êtes parlant*, *j'étois priant*, &c.

## Plural.

*Nous* parl-*\*âmes*, we spoke.*Vous* *\*âtes*, you spoke.*Ils* *èrent*, they spoke.

## Future. Singular.

*Je* parl-*erai*, I shall or will speak.*Tu* *eras*, thou shalt or wilt speak.*Il* *era*, he shall or will speak.

## Plural.

*Nous* *erons*, we shall or will speak.*Vous* *erez*, you shall or will speak.*Ils* *eront*, they shall or will speak.

## Conditional. Singular.

*Je* parl-*erois*, I should, would, could, or might, speak.*Tu* *erois*, thou shouldest, &c. speak.*Il* *eroit*, he should, &c. speak.

## Plural.

*Nous* *erions*, we should, &c. speak.*Vous* *eriez*, you should, &c. speak.*Ils* *eroient*, they should, &c. speak.

## COMPOUND TENSES.

Present. *J'ai parlé*, I have spoken.Imperfect. *J'avois parlé*, I had spoken.Preterite. *J'eus parlé*, I had spoken.Future. *J'aurai parlé*, I shall or will have spoken.Conditional. *J'aurois parlé*, I should, would, could, have spoken.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.

Parl-*e*, speak thou.*Qu'il* *e*, let him speak.

Plural.

*\*ons*, let us speak.*ez*, speak ye.*Qu'ils* *ent*, let them speak.

## SUBJUNCTIVE



## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present. Singular.

*Que je parl-e*, that I may speak, *or*, I speak.

*tu es*, thou mayest speak.

*il e*, he may speak.

## Plural.

*nous ions*, that we may speak.

*vous iez*, you may speak.

*ils ent*, they may speak.

## Preterite. Singular.

*Que je parl-\*asse*, that I might speak, *or*, I spoke.

*tu \*asses*, thou mightest speak.

*il \*ât*, he might speak.

## Plural.

*nous \*assions*, that we might speak.

*vous \*assiez*, you might speak.

*ils \*assent*, they might speak.

## COMPOUND TENSES.

Present. *Que j'aie parlé*, that I may have spoken.

Preterite. *Que j'eusse parlé*, that I might have spoken.

After the same manner are conjugated about 2700 regular verbs. The following are excepted : viz.

*Aller*, being very irregular, will be seen among the irregular verbs.

*Envoyer* is only irregular in the future and conditional ; as, instead of saying, *j'envoyerais*, I will send, &c. *j'envoyerois*, I would send, &c. according to the conjugation, we say,

## Future.

## Singular.

*J'enverrai*, I will send.

*Tu enverras*.

*Il enverra*.

## Plural.

*Nous enverrons*.

*Vous enverrez*.

*Ils enverront*.

## Conditional.

\* Verbs in this conjugation, whose radix terminates in *g* or *c* immediately succeeded by *a* or *o*, require, for the softening of their sounds, that an *e* be added to the *g*, and a cerilla to the *c*. Little stars are placed where these alterations are required.

## Conditional.

## Singular.

*J'enverrois*, I would fend.*Tu enverrois*.*Il enverroit*.

## Plural.

*Nous enverrions*.*Vous enverriez*.*Ils enverroient*.

*Puer* is only irregular in the three persons of the present tense of the indicative mood ; as, *je pus*, *tu pus*, *il put*, instead of, *je pue*, &c. This verb is seldom used, for we say, *sentir mauvais*, instead of *puer*.

Verbs ending in *AYER* and *OYER*, as *essayer*, to try, *envoyer*, to fend, change the *y* into *i* wherever the letter *y* is immediately followed by an *e* mute : ex. *j'essaie*, *tu essaies*, *il essaie*, *j'envoie*, *tu envoies*, *il envoie*, &c.

The learner, having conjugated a verb *affirmatively* and *negatively*, ought to conjugate two others, with an *interrogation affirmative* and *negative*, in the indicative mood only, and so on through the other conjugations, before he makes the exercises : ex.

## Affirmatively.

*Manges-tu ?* dost thou eat ?*Mange-t-il ?* does he eat ?*Parlons-nous ?* do we speak ? &c.

## Negatively.

*Ne parlé-je pas ?* do I not speak ?*Ma sœur ne chante-t-elle pas ?* does not my sister sing ?

*N. B.* In many verbs, the common usage does not admit an interrogation in the first person singular, present, of the indicative mood.—Instead of saying,

*Mangé-je ?* Do I eat ? *Punis-je ?* Do I punish ? &c. we say, *Est-ce que je mange ?* *Est-ce que je punis ?* &c.

Some verbs, ending in *e* mute, in the first person singular, present, in the indicative mood, change the *e* mute into an *é* with an acute accent, and *je* after it ; as it is seen by *parlé-je*.

It



It has before been observed that the compound tenses are easily formed, by adding the participle passive of the verb to any of the tenses of the auxiliaries *avoir*, to have, or *être*, to be, as they have been conjugated, either affirmatively, negatively, or interrogatively : ex.

Affirmatively.

*J'ai dansé*, I have danced, *or*, I did dance.

Negatively.

*Je n'ai pas parlé*, I have not spoken, *or*, I did not speak.

Interrogatively-affirmatively.

*Avez-vous chanté ?* Have you sung, *or*, Did you sing ?

Interrogatively-negatively.

*N'a-t-il pas mangé ?* Has he not eaten, *or*, Did he not eat ?

Observe that we make use of

<i>Mener</i> ,	To take, to carry,
<i>Amener</i> ,	To bring,
<i>Emmener</i> ,	To carry <i>or</i> take away,

and all the compound verbs of *mener*, whenever we speak of rational or irrational beings to which nature has given the faculty of walking, or has not deprived them of it through illness or accident : in all other cases we make use of

<i>Porter</i> ,	To carry, to take,
<i>Apporter</i> ,	To bring,
<i>Emporter</i> ,	To carry <i>or</i> take away,

and all the compounds of *porter*.

## EXERCISES ON THIS CONJUGATION.

### INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRES. I play sometimes, but I never  
*jou-er*, v. *quelquefois*, adv. *mais*, c. *ne jamais*, adv.  
 win. ——— How much does your brother give  
*gagn-er*, v. *Combien*, adv. *donn-er*, v.  
 for his board ? — We do not command ; we pray. —  
*pension*, f. *command-er*, v. *pri-er*, v.  
 You

You always borrow ; you never lend. — You  
*toujours, adv. emprunt-er, v. prêt-er, v.*

are always speaking when I write. — Why  
*quand, adv. écris, v. Pourquoi, adv.*

do you not grant him that favour ? — What do  
*accord-er, v. grâce, f.*

they ask you ?  
*demand-er, v.*

IMP. I was desiring them to sing a song. —  
*pri-er, v. de chant-er, v. chanson, f.*

She was not speaking to you. — Were we not joking ? —  
*badin-er, v.*

Were you not scolding them when I came ? — They  
*grond-er, v. vins, v.*

were eating fish.  
*mang-er, v. poisson, m.*

PRET. I spoke to them (a long while.) — Did not  
*long-tems, adv.*

the king forgive them ? — We wept for joy  
*roi, m. pardonn-er, v. pleur-er, v. de joie, f.*

when we found her. — Why did you not play on  
*trouv-er, v.*

Friday last ? — They fastened the man to  
*Vendredi, m. dernier, adj. li-er, v.*

tree, knocked him down, and then robbed  
*arbre, m. assomm-er, v. ensuite, adv. vol-er, v.*

him of his watch, gold ring, and all the money he  
*montre, f. bague, f.*

had in his pocket.  
*poche, f.*

FUT. I will buy a watch the first time I  
*achet-er, v. fois, f.*

go to London. — Will not your father send  
*irai, v. envoy-er, v.*

N

you



you to school this winter ? — What shall we give him ?  
*école, f. hiver, m.*

— Will you not carry the children to the play ? —  
*men-er, v. enfant, m. comédie, f.*

They will empty the bottle if you do not take  
*vid-er, v. bouteille, f. emport-er, v.*  
 it away.

COND. I would lend them money if they  
*prêt-er, v.*  
 were not so idle. — Would not your mother de-  
*pareseux, adj. mé-*  
 spise such a conduct ? — Why should we send  
*pris-er, v. tel, adj. conduite, f.*  
 them there ? — I am sure you would marry her  
*sûr, adj. épous-er, v.*  
 if she were rich. — Would they not pay us if they  
*riche, adj. pay-er, v.*  
 had money ?

#### IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Bridle my horse, and bring him to me. —  
*Brid-er, v. cheval, m. amen-er, v.*  
 Give a chair to that lady. — Let her not (come up,)  
*chaise, f. dame, f. mont-er, v.*  
 for I am engaged. — Let us carry those peaches to Mrs.  
*engagé, p.p. pêche, f.*  
 D——. — Do not neglect your affairs. — Let them  
*néglig-er, v. affaire, f.*  
 hunt.

#### SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRES. That I may help you. — Though\* he  
*aid-er, v. Quoique, c.*  
 do

\* Conjunctions which require the subjunctive mood.

do not approve of my plan. — Provided\* we  
*approuv-er, v.      plan, m.      Pourvuque, c.*

avoid their company. — That you may try  
*évit-er, v.      compagnie, f.      éprouv-er, v.*

that gun. — That they may not command.  
*fusil, m.*

PRET. That I might change my opinion. — That  
*chang-er, v.      opinion, f.*

he might eat an apple. — That we might not fall  
*pomme, f.      tomb-er, v.*

into their hands. — That you might encourage the  
*dans, p.      main, f.      encourag-er, v.*

industrious. — That they might exercise their talents.  
*industrieux, adj.      exerc-er, v.      talent, m.*

## PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES ON THE COMPOUND TENSES.

I have forgotten to bring your penknife. — He  
*oubl-er, v.      de      canif, m.*

has not yet spoken to us. — Has she brought her  
*encore, adv.*

work with her? — Have we not gained our cause? —  
*gagn-er, v.*

Why have you not yet begun your exercise? —  
*commenc-er, v.      thème, f.*

You had taken the mustard away. — You would  
*moutarde, f.*

have judged more favourably of him. — Stay  
*jug-er, v.      favorablement, adv.      Rester, v.*

here till\* we have dined. — Could we not  
*ici, adv.      jusqu' à ce que, c.      dîn-er, v.*

have assisted that family? — They have broken their  
*aid-er, v.      famille, f.      cass-er, v.*

windows,



windows, because they had not illuminated as  
*fenêtre, f. parceque, c. illumin-er, v. comme, adv.*  
 it had been ordered. — I shall have dined soon. —  
*ordonn-er, v. bientôt, adv.*  
 We would have sent them to prison if they had  
*envoy-er, v. en prison, f.*  
 resisted. — That we may have denied the fact. —  
*résist-er, v. ni-er, v. fait, m.*  
 Had you not imitated their manners. — They had not  
*imit-er, v. manière, f.*  
 executed his commands. — Had I not lighted  
*exécut-er, v. commandement, m. allum-er, v.*  
 the fire. — They would have carried him to the con-  
*feu, m.*  
 cert if I had not hindered them (from it.) — We  
*empêch-er, v.*  
 might have accepted of his offers.  
*accept-er, v. offre, f.*

## SECOND CONJUGATION.

### INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	Pun-ir, to punish.
Participle active.	<i>issant</i> , punishing.
Participle passive.	<i>i, m. ie, f.</i> punished.

### COMPOUND TENSES.

Present.	<i>Avoir puni</i> , to have punished.
Past.	<i>Ayant puni</i> , having punished.

### INDICATIVE MOOD.

Preterite. Singular.

<i>Je</i>	pun-is, I punish, I do punish, or I am punishing.
<i>Tu</i>	is.
<i>Il</i>	it.

Plural.

## Plural.

*Nous* pun-*issons*, we punish, &c.

*Vous* *issiez*.

*Ils* *issent*.

## Imperfect. Singular.

*Je* pun-*issois*, I did punish, or I was punishing.

*Tu* *issois*.

*Il* *issoit*.

## Plural.

*Nous* *issions*, we did punish, &c.

*Vous* *issiez*.

*Ils* *issaient*.

## Preterite. Singular.

*Je* pun-*is*, I punished, or I did punish.

*Tu* *is*.

*Il* *it*.

## Plural.

*Nous* *îmes*, we punished, &c.

*Vous* *îtes*.

*Ils* *irent*.

## Future. Singular.

*Je* pun-*irai*, I shall or will punish.

*Tu* *iras*.

*Il* *ira*.

## Plural.

*Nous* *irons*, we shall or will punish.

*Vous* *irez*.

*Ils* *iront*.

## Conditional. Singular.

*Je* pun-*irois*, I should, would, could, or might, punish.

*Tu* *irois*.

*Il* *iroit*.

## Plural.

*Nous* *irions*, we should, &c. punish.

*Vous* *iriez*.

*Ils* *iroient*.

## COMPOUND TENSES.

Present. *J'ai puni*, I have punished.



Imperfect.	<i>J'avois puni</i> , I had punished.
Preterite.	<i>J'eus puni</i> , I had punished.
Future.	<i>J'aurai puni</i> , I shall, &c. have punished.
Conditional.	<i>J'aurois puni</i> , I should, &c. have punished.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.

Pun-is, punish thou.

*Qu'il* *isse*, let him punish.

Plural.

*issons*, let us punish.*issez*, punish ye.*Qu'ils* *issent*, let them punish.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.

*Que je* pun-*isse*, that I may punish, or I punish.*tu* *isses*.*il* *isse*.

Plural.

*nous* *issions*, that we may punish.*vous* *issiez*.*ils* *issent*.

Preterite. Singular.

*Que je* pun-*isse*, that I might punish, or I punished.*tu* *isses*.*il* *ît*.

Plural.

*nous* *issions*, that we might punish.*vous* *issiez*.*ils* *issent*.

## COMPOUND TENSES.

Present. *Que j'aie puni*, that I may have punished.Preterite. *Que j'eusse puni*, that I might have punished.

After the same manner are conjugated about 200 regular verbs; the following are excepted, as being irregular.

*Acquérir,*

*Acquérir*, to acquire.*Affaillir*, to assault.*Bouillir*, to boil.*Courir*, to run.*Cueillir*, to gather.*Dormir*, to sleep.*Faillir*, to fail.*Fuir*, to fly, to avoid.*Mentir*, to lie.*Mourir*, to die.*Offrir*, to offer.*Ouvrir*, to open.*Partir*, to set out.*Se repentir*, to repent.*Sentir*, to smell.*Servir*, to serve.*Sortir*, to go out.*Souffrir*, to suffer.*Tenir*, to hold.*Venir*, to come.*Vêtir*, to clothe.

And their compounds.

## EXERCISES UPON THIS CONJUGATION.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRES. I always finish my work before  
*toujours,adv. fin-ir,v. ouvrage,m. avant,p.*  
 the others.—Your friend does not succeed in his  
*ami,m. réuss-ir v. dans,p.*  
 undertaking — Do we not furnish arms against  
*entreprise,f. fourn-ir,v. arme,f. contre,p.*  
 ourselves? — Why do you hate him? — They  
*ha-ir, v.*  
 cure the diseases of the body and not those of  
*guér-ir,v. maladie, f. corps,m.*  
 the mind  
*esprit,m.*

IMP. I was building my house when you de-  
*bât-ir, v. maison,f. quand,adv. de-*  
 molished yours. — Was he not enjoying a good  
*mol-ir, v. jou-ir de, v.*  
 estate? — We hated him, because he did not act kind-  
*bien,m. parceque,c. ag-ir,v. hon-*  
 ly towards us.—On what were you re-  
*nêtement,adv. envers,p. Sur,p. ré-*  
 flecting?



fleeting ?—The mountains were resounding with  
*fléch-ir, v. montagne, f. retent-ir, v.*  
 their cries.  
*cri, m.*

PRET. I warranted them very good. — Did your  
*garant-ir, v.*

master accomplish his promise ?—We (leaped over)  
*maître, m. accompl-ir, v. promesse, f. franch-ir, v.*

the ditch, and seized the guilty.—Why did you not  
*fessé, m. sais-ir, v. coupable, adj.*

applaud that pretty actresses ?—Did not the soldiers  
*applaud-ir, v. joli, adj. actrice, f. soldat, m.*

obey the commands of their general ?  
*obé-ir, v. à commandement, m.*

FUT. When shall I banish all these thoughts  
*bann-ir, v. tout, adj. pensée, f.*

from my mind ?—This plant will soon blossom if you  
*plante, f. fleur-ir, v.*

water it often.—We shall warn your relations  
*arroser, v. souvent, adv. avert-ir, v. parent, m.*

of it.—Shall you not enjoy, as we do, the  
*comme, adv.*

pure pleasures of the country. — Her children will  
*pur, adj.*

bless her for it.  
*bén-ir, v.*

COND. I would choose this cloth, if I were  
*chois-ir, v. drap, m.*

in your place. — Would he not blush if he acted  
*roug-ir, v.*

so ? — We would not punish them if they were  
*ainsi, adv.*

diligent. — Would you not act with less severe-  
*avec, p. moins, adv. severe-*  
*rity ?*

city ? — They could furnish us with arms and troops  
*rité, f.* *troupe, f.*

if we wanted any.  
*avoir besoin*

### IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Do not fill the glasses. — Let him enjoy the  
*rempl-ir, v.* *verre, m.*

fruit of his labours. — Let us reflect on what we have  
*travail, m.*

to do. — Let them define the question.  
*à faire, v.* *defin-ir, v.*

### SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRES. That I may not perish. — I wish he  
*per-ir, v.* *souhaiter, v.*

may succeed. — That we may not (bear hardships.) —  
*réuss-ir, v.* *pât-ir, v.*

That you may not hate us. — Provided they do not  
 (grow tall.)  
*grand-ir, v.*

PRET. That I might refresh my memory. —  
*rafrâich-ir, v.* *mémoire, f.*

That she might not roast the meat. — That we  
*rôt-ir, v.*

might (become younger.) — That you might punish  
*rajeun-ir, v.*

the idle. — That they might not (grow old.)  
*vieill-ir, v.*

### COMPOUND TENSES.

I have filled my cellar with good wine. — Has  
*rempl-ir, v.* *cave, f. de*

he not leaped over the ditch ? — We had finished our  
 work.



work. — They would have seized him. — We  
*ouvrage, m.*

should have perished without any assistance. — When  
*sans, p. secours, m.*

shall I have built my house? — I have (very much)  
*bât-ir, v. beaucoup, adv.*

weakened his courage. — Though they have adorn-  
*affoibl-ir, v. Quoique, c. em-*

ed their gardens to dazzle the vulgar, they  
*bell-ir, v. jardin, m. pour éblou-ir, v. vulgaire, m.*

have not succeeded, because they have disobeyed  
*parceque, c. désobé-ir, v. à*

their father and mother.

### THIRD CONJUGATION.

#### INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	Rec-evoir, to receive.
Part. active.	<i>evant</i> , receiving.
Part. past.	* <i>u</i> , m. <i>ue</i> , f. received.

#### COMPOUND TENSES.

Present.	<i>Avoir reçu</i> , to have received.
Past.	<i>Ayant reçu</i> , having received.

#### INDICATIVE MOOD.

##### Present. Singular.

*Je reç-ois*, I receive, I do receive, or I am receiving.

*Tu ois.*

*Il oit.*

##### Plural.

*Nous evons*, we receive, &c.

*Vous evez.*

*Ils oivent.*

##### Imperfect

\* Verbs of this conjugation, whose *radix* terminates in *c*, require, for the softening of their sound, that a *cerilla* be added to the (*ç*) whenever it is followed by *o* or *u*.

## Imperfect. Singular.

*Je* rec-*evois*, I did receive, or I was receiving.*Tu* *evois*.*Il* *evoit*.

## Plural.

*Nous* *evions*, we did receive, &c.*Vous* *eviez*.*Ils* *evoient*.

## Preterite. Singular.

*Je* rec-*us*, I received, or I did receive.*Tu* *us*.*Il* *ut*.

## Plural.

*Nous* *ûmes*, we received, &c.*Vous* *ûtes*.*Ils* *urent*.

## Future. Singular.

*Je* rec-*evrai*, I shall or will receive.*Tu* *evras*.*Il* *evra*.

## Plural.

*Nous* *evrons*, we shall or will receive.*Vous* *evrez*.*Ils* *evront*.

## Conditional. Singular.

*Je* rec-*evrois*, I should, would, could, or might, receive.*Tu* *evrois*.*Il* *evroit*.

## Plural.

*Nous* *evrions*, we should, &c. receive.*Vous* *evriez*.*Ils* *evroient*.

## COMPOUND TENSES.

Present. *J'ai reçu*, I have received.Imperfect. *J'avois reçu*, I had received.Preterite. *J'eus reçu*, I had received.Future. *J'aurai reçu*, I shall, &c. have received.Conditional. *J'aurois reçu*, I should, &c. have received.

## IMPERATIVE



## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.

Reçois, receive thou.

Qu'il reçoive, let him receive.

Plural.

reçoivons, let us receive.

recevez, receive ye.

Qu'ils reçoivent, let them receive.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.

Que je reçoive, that I may receive, or I receive.

tu reçois.

il reçoive.

Plural.

nous recevions, that we may receive.

vous receviez.

ils reçoivent.

Preterite. Singular.

Que je reçusse, that I might receive, or I received.

tu reçusses.

il reçût.

Plural.

nous reçussions, that we might receive.

vous reçussiez.

ils reçussent.

## COMPOUND TENSES.

Present. Que j'aie reçu, that I may have received.

Preterite. Que j'eusse reçu, that I might have received.

Recevoir des nouvelles de To hear from somebody.  
quelqu'un,After the same manner are conjugated 7 verbs only:  
the following are excepted, being irregulars :

Asséoir, to sit down.

Mouvoir, to move.

Déchoir, to decay.

Pleuvoir, (v. imp.) to rain.

Falloir, (verb impersonal),

Pouvoir, to be able.

to be needful.

Savoir, to know.

Valoir,

*Valoir*, to be worth.  
*Voir*, to see.

*Vouloir*, to be willing.  
 And their compounds.

## EXERCISES ON THIS CONJUGATION.

### INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRES. I entertain great hopes from his con-  
*conc-evoir*, v. *espérance*, f. *con-*  
 duct. — I am to write to your brother to-morrow  
*duite*, f. \* *écrire*, v.  
 to let him know that your father is arrived. —  
*pour faire*, v. *savoir*, v.  
 A commander ought to be intrepid in the midst  
*commandant*, m. *devoir*, v. *au milieu*, m.  
 of dangers. — He is to go and breakfast at my  
*aller*, v. *et déjeuner*, v. *chez*, p.  
 uncle's next Sunday, and he is to come and sup  
*venir*, v. *et souper*, v.  
 with us. — We sometimes entertain a hatred for per-  
*quelquefois*, adv. *haine*, f.  
 sons who deserve our friendship. — Do you not  
*mériter*, v. *amitié*, f.  
 perceive a mountain beyond that tree? — We are  
*apperce-evoir*, v. *derrière*, p.  
 to remit him the value in goods or in  
*remettre*, v. *valeur*, f. *en*, p. *marchandise*, f.  
 money. — Are you not to dine with my father and mo-  
 ther to-morrow? — Men commonly owe their vir-  
*demain*, adv. *d-evoir*, v.

tues

\* When the verb *to be* is used in the present or imperfect tenses of the indicative mood, and precedes another verb in the infinitive mood, denoting a futurity in the action, it is to be rendered in French by the same tenses of the verb *devoir*, and not by *être*: ex.

*Je dois aller au parc,*

*I am to go to the park.*

*Nous devons lui écrire,*

*We were to write to him.*



tues or their vices to education (as much as) to  
*autant que, c.*  
 nature. — Are these young ladies to go to the  
*aller, v.*

ball?  
*bal, m.*

IMP. I owed four guineas to your aunt when she  
*guinée, f.*

died. — Was not your brother to receive that money  
*mourut, v.*

last Thursday? — We received his tiresome visits  
*feudi, m.* *annuyant, adj.*

because we were obliged to it. — Were you not to let  
*obliger, v.* *faire, v.*

them know it sooner? — They were not to stay  
*savoir, v.* *rester, v.*

above six weeks.  
*plus, adv.*

PRET. I received yesterday, with (a great deal) of  
*bien, adv.*

pleasure, the books you sent me. — As soon as we  
*envoyer, v.*

perceived the danger, we warned him of it. — They  
*avertir, v.*

heard yesterday from your brother.

FUT. I shall entertain a bad opinion of you  
*mauvais, adj.*

if you do not avoid Mr. R——'s company. — We  
*éviter, v.*

shall owe him nothing more after this month. — I hope  
*après, p.*

you will receive all my letters during my absence.  
*pendant, p.*

COND.

COND. I should answer your brother's letter,  
\* *répondre, v. à*

but I have not time. — Ought not your sister to  
*tenir, m.*

give your mother an account of all her actions? —  
*rendre, v. en compte, m.*

She would soon perceive the danger, if she knew  
*bientôt, adv. savoit, v.*

the consequences of it. — Children should every day

learn something by heart. — You should not  
*apprendre, v. cœur, m.*

despise the advice that he gives you. — Should they,  
*mépriser, v. avis, m.*

after what they have done, expect to receive  
*après, p. fait, p. p. s'attendre, v. à*  
favours?

### IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Receive this small present as a token of my  
*marque, f.*  
friendship.

### SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRES. and PRET. Though I perceive ships  
*Quoique, c. vaisseau, m. (afar)*

\* When the word *should* expresses a duty or necessity, or can with propriety be turned by *ought*, it is rendered in French by the conditional of the verb *devoir*: ex.

*Je devrois aller le voir,* I *should*, or *ought to*, go and see him.  
*Vous devriez le secourir dans sa misère, &c.* You *should* help him in his misery, &c.

The words *should* or *ought*, when joined to the verb *to have*, immediately followed by a participle passive, must be rendered by the compound of the conditional of the above verb, with the participle passive turned into the present of the infinitive mood: ex.

*J'aurois dû l'obliger à rester ici,* I *should*, or *ought to*, have obliged him to stay here.  
*Nous aurions dû revenir plutôt,* We *should have* come back sooner.



(afar off,) I cannot distinguish them. — He  
*de loin*, adv. *ne saurois*, v.

wrote to us by the first post, that we might  
*écrivit*, v. *ordinaire*, m.

receive his orders (in proper time.)  
*à tems*, adv.

### COMPOUND TENSES.

I have not yet received his answer. — You  
*encore*, adv. *réponse*, f.

should have (been making) your theme this morning  
 \* *faire*, v. *matin*, m.

instead of playing. — He has entertained the hope  
*au lieu*, p.

of living here all his life. — She ought to have  
*vivre*, v. *ici*, adv. *vie*, f.

thanked him for the good advice he gave her. —  
*remercier*, v. *de*, p.

When did you hear from your sister? — We have

not heard from her since her departure. — Your  
*depuis*, p. *départ*, m.

uncle should not have obliged him to pay half the  
*oncle*, m. *à moitié*, f.

expenses. — We should have owed him a hundred  
*frais*, m. pl.

livres. — I beg your pardon, I ought not to have  
*livre*, f. *demander*, v.

made you wait so long. — Ought not we to  
*faire*, v. *attendre*, v. *long-tems*, adv.

have employed our time better than (we did) the  
*employer*, v. *nous n'avons fait*

last three months we were in France?

## FOURTH CONJUGATION.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	Vend- <i>re</i> , to sell.
Part. active.	<i>ant</i> , selling.
Part. passive.	<i>u</i> , m. <i>ue</i> , f. sold.

## COMPOUND TENSES.

Present.	<i>avoir vendu</i> , to have sold.
Past.	<i>ayant vendu</i> , having sold.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present. Singular.

*Je* vend-*s*, I sell, I do sell, or I am selling.

*Tu* vend-*s*.

*Il* vend.

## Plural.

*Nous* vend-*ons*, we sell, &c.

*Vous* *ez*.

*Ils* *ent*.

## Imperfect. Singular.

*Je* vend-*ois*, I did sell, or was selling.

*Tu* *ois*.

*Il* *oit*.

## Plural.

*Nous* *ions*, we did sell, &c.

*Vous* *iez*.

*Ils* *oient*.

## Preterite. Singular.

*Je* vend-*is*, I sold, or did sell.

*Tu* *is*.

*Il* *it*.

## Plural.

*Nous* *îmes*, we sold, &c.

*Vous* *îtes*.

*Ils* *îrent*.

## Future. Singular.

*Je* vend-*rai*, I shall or will sell.

*Tu* *ras*.

*Il* *ra*.

## Plural.

*Nous* *rons*, we shall or will sell.

*Vous* *rez*.

*Ils* *ront*.



## Conditional. Singular.

*Je* vend-*rois*, I should, could, would, or might, sell.*Tu*        *rois*.*Il*        *roit*.

## Plural.

*Nous*    *rions*, we should, &c. sell.*Vous*    *riez*.*Ils*       *roient*.

## COMPOUND TENSES.

Present.        *J'ai vendu*, I have sold.Imperfect.    *J'avois vendu*, I had sold.Preterite.     *J'eus vendu*, I had sold.Future.        *J'aurai vendu*, I shall, &c. have sold.Conditional.   *J'aurois vendu*, I should, &c. have sold.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.

Vend-*s*, sell thou.*Qu'il*        *e*, let him sell.

Plural.

*ons*, let us sell.*ez*, sell ye.*Qu'ils*      *ent*, let them sell.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.

*Que je* vend-*e*, that I may sell, or I sell.*tu*        *es*.*il*        *e*.

Plural.

*nous*    *ions*.*vous*    *iez*.*ils*       *ent*.

Preterite. Singular.

*Que je* vend-*isse*, that I might sell, or I sold.*tu*        *isses*.*il*        *ît*.

Plural.

## Plural.

*Que nous vend-issions.**vous issiez.**ils issent.*

## COMPOUND TENSES.

Present. *Que j'aie vendu*, that I may have sold.Preterite. *Que j'eusse vendu*, that I might have sold.

After the same manner are conjugated about 40 verbs.  
The following are excepted as being irregular.

*Absoudre*, to absolve.*Battre*, to beat.*Boire*, to drink.*Circoncire*, to circumcise.*Conclure*, to conclude.*Conduire*, to conduct.

And all the verbs ending  
in *uire*.

*Confire*, to preserve.*Connoître*, to know.

And all those ending  
in *ôître*.

*Coudre*, to sow.*Craindre*, to fear.

And all those ending  
in *indre*.

*Croire*, to believe.*Dire*, to tell.*Ecrire*, to write.*Faire*, to make, to do.*Frïre*, to fry.*Lire*, to read.*Mettre*, to put.*Moudre*, to grind.*Naître*, to be born.*Paître*, to graze, to feed.*Plaire*, to please.*Prendre*, to take.*Rire*, to laugh.

*Suffire*, to suffice, to be  
sufficient.

*Suivre*, to follow.

*Se taire*, to hold one's  
tongue.

*Traire*, to milk.*Vaincre*, to conquer.*Vivre*, to live.

And their compounds.

N. B. Verbs of this conjugation, whose radix terminates in *p*, as *romp-re*, *corromp-re*, &c. take a *t* in the third person singular of the present tense indicative mood: ex. *je romps*, *tu romps*, *il rompt*: the rest are conjugated as *vendre*.

## EXERCISES



## EXERCISES ON THIS CONJUGATION.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRES. I do not mean to wrong him. —  
*prétend-re, v. faire tort, v. lui, pro.*

Is your mother coming down? — We expect our  
*descend-re, v. attend-re, v.*

friend Mr. A——. — Do not you forbid her to  
*défond-re, v. de*

go there? — They sell bad fruit.  
*aller, v. mauvais, adj.*

IMP. Did I not interrupt him whilst he  
*interromp-re, v. pendant que, c.*

was answering them? — She was melting into tears  
*répond-re, v. fond-re, v. en, p. larme, f.*

when you arrived. — Were we not losing our time?  
*arriver, v. perdre, v. tems, m.*

—— You were not spreading your nets. —— Did they  
*étend-re, v. filet, m.*

corrupt our manners?  
*corromp-re, v. mœurs, f. pl.*

PRET. (As soon as) I had received my money, I  
*Dès que, c.*

returned them what they had lent me. — Did he not  
*rend-re, v. prêter, v.*

hear you? —— We (waited for) them a month.  
*entend-re, v. attend-re, v. mois, m.*

—— (For how much) did you sell it them? —— They  
*Combien, adv.*

did spill all the wine.  
*répand-re, v.*

FUT. I shall shear my flock (in the) month  
*tond-re, v. troupeau, m. au*

of

of May. — If you do not take care, the dog will  
*Mai, m. prenez, v. garde, f.*

bite you. — Shall we not lose if we play? — You  
*mord-re, v.*

will melt it, if you put it into the fire. —  
*fond-re, v. mettez, v. dans, p.*

They<sup>1</sup> shall<sup>3</sup> not<sup>2</sup> hear<sup>3</sup> <sup>5</sup> of<sup>6</sup> me<sup>7</sup> (any<sup>4</sup> more.)  
*entend-re parler, v. plus, adv.*

COND. Should I not do him the justice  
*rend-re, v.*

he deserves? — Would he not interrupt you? —  
*mériter, v.*

We would defend them if we could. — Why  
*défend-re, v. pouvions, v.*

would you not answer if I were speaking to you?  
*répond-re, v.*

— Your hens would (lay eggs) every day if they  
*poule, f. pond-re, v.*

were not so fat.

*gras, adj.*

### IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Give<sup>1</sup> God<sup>3</sup> thanks.<sup>2</sup> — Let her not come  
*Rend-re, v. Dieu, m. grâce, f.*

down. — Let us (give up) our accounts faithfully. —  
*rend-re, v. compte, m. fidèlement, adv.*

Do not lose my book. — Let them hear the voice of  
*voix, f.*

the Lord.

*Seigneur, m.*

### SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRES. and PRET. Speak loud that I may hear  
*haut, adv.*

what you say. — She plays upon the harpsichord  
*dites, v. clavecin, m.*

though



though you forbid her to do it. — He wrote  
*quoique, c. défend-re, v. de faire, v. écrivit, v.*  
 to us that we might not expect him.  
*attend-re, v.*

### COMPOUND TENSES.

I have lost my book ; have you found it ? —  
*perd-re, v. trouver, v.*  
 She has broken her fan. — Have you not inter-  
*romp-re, v. éventail, m.*  
 rupted me several times ? — I had not then an-  
*alors, adv. ré-*  
 swered his letter. — If they (had gone) there  
*pond-re, v. à étoient alliés, v.*  
 would they not have lost their time ? — He says he  
*dit, v.*  
 would have sold us very good wine. — Had you  
*vend-re, v.*  
 not forbidden her to speak ? — That they might have  
*de*  
 waited for us.

### RECAPITULATORY EXERCISES ON THE REGULAR VERBS OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS.

#### INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRES. I love attentive scholars, but I punish  
*attentif, adj. écolier, m. mais, c.*  
 severely laziness and inattention. — Your bro-  
*sévèrement, adv. paresse, f.*  
 ther does not receive this news with pleasure. —  
*nouvelle, f.*  
 Do we not expect your mother to-day ? — We  
*attendre, v.*  
 hope (that) you will succeed in your undertaking. —  
*espérer, v. réussir, v.*

Why

Why do you not fulfil your promise? —  
*Pourquoi, adv. accomplir, v. promesse, f.*

They perceive the danger, and they do not en-  
*appercevoir, v. tâ-*

deavour to shun it.  
*cher, v. de éviter, v.*

IMP. I was speaking of your aunt when you  
*tante, f.*

(came in,) and was doing her the justice she deserves.  
*entrer, v. rendre, v. mériter, v.*

— Mr. N. did not act towards your son with much  
*agir, v. fils, m.*

tenderness. — Mr. P. and I were answering your  
*tendresse, f.*

letters when you arrived. — You undoubtedly en-  
*arriver, v. sans doute, adv. con-*

tertained great hopes from his last voyage. —  
*cevoir, v. dernier, adj.*

They were spending their money in trifles, in-  
*dépenser, v. en, p. bagatelle, f. au*

stead of buying books.  
*lieu de, adv. acheter, v.*

PRET. I built this house in one thousand seven  
 hundred and seventy-nine. — Your father yesterday  
*hier, adv.*

received agreeable news. — She burst into tears  
*fondre, v.*

after your cousin was gone. — We sent him a  
*après que, c. parti, p.p.*

great deal of money unknown to your mother. —  
*à l'insçu, p. de*

Why did you not finish your work sooner? —  
*finir, v.*

(As



(As soon as) they perceived us, they (ran away.)  
*Dès que, c. prirent la fuite.*

FUT. I will (give up) my accompts (at the) be-  
*rendre, v. au*

ginning of next week. — My friend, Mrs. R.  
*prochain, adj. semaine, f.*

will dine with me next Wednesday. — We shall seize  
*Mercredi, m. saisir, v.*

the first opportunity to thank him for his kind-  
*occasion, f. pour remercier, v. de bon-*  
 nesses. — You will soon entertain a better opinion  
*té, f. bientôt, adv.*

of him. — Will not your sisters (come down) to-day?  
*descendre, v.*

COND. I would lay two guineas your uncle  
*gager, v.*

is not yet arrived. — If my father were rich, he  
*arriver, v.*

would rebuild his country-house. — Should we not  
*rebâtir, v. Devoir, v.*

express our gratitude towards those who do us  
*exprimer, v. reconnoissance, f. font, v.*

good? — If you would, you could render great ser-  
*bien, m. voulez, v. rendre, v.*

vices to your country. — I am certain (that) they  
*pays, m.*

would reward you if you deserved it.  
*récompenser, v. mériter, v.*

#### IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Discharge with equity the duties of your office. —  
*Remplir, v. équité, f. devoir, m. charge, f.*

Let him receive the punishment due to his crime. —  
*punition, f. du, p. p.*

Let

Let us give God thanks for the good news we re-  
*rendre, v. grâce, f. de*

ceived yesterday. — Imitate the great actions of your  
*hier, adv.*

ancestors. — Let them enjoy the fruit of their  
*ancêtres, m. jouir, v. de*

labours.

*travail, m.*

### SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRES. Write to me by the first post, that  
*Ecrivez, v. ordinaire, m. afin que, c.*

I may receive your letter before my departure from  
*avant, p. départ, m.*

London. — Though he hear what you say, yet  
*Quoique, c. entendre, v. dites, v.*

he does not understand you. — She is never pleased  
*comprendre, v. content, adj.*

though we obey her in (every thing.) — I will tell  
*en, p. tout dirai, v.*

it to you, provided you do not speak of it to your  
*pourvu que, c.*

sister. — He will pay them, provided they wait  
*attendre, v. a*

little longer.

*long-tems, adv.*

PRET. I wrote to your father (sometime ago,)  
*écrivis, v. il y a quelque tems,*

that he might engage Mr. W. to come here and  
*afin que, c. à*

spend the holidays with us. — That she might reflect  
*passer, v. vacance, f.*

on her own conduct, and not on that of others. —  
*propre, adj.*



He would not come to see us, lest we should  
*voulut, v.*                      *de peur que, c.*  
 perceive his bad designs. — Your uncle desired that  
*ordonner, v.*  
 you might sell his two horses to Mr. B. — I should be  
 very sorry if they fell into bad hands.  
*que, c.*                      *tomber, v.*

## PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES ON THE COMPOUND TENSES.

I have spoken to my father of it, but he has not  
 yet given me any answer. — Have I not faith-  
*encore, adv.*  
 fully executed your orders? — Has your sister succeeded  
 in her undertaking? — We have not yet received any  
 remittance from America. — Mrs. N. told me you had  
*remise, f.*  
 already sold the half of your goods. — Why  
*déjà, adv.*                      *moitié, f.*                      *marchandise, f.*  
 did you not pay those poor people? — He would  
*gens, m. et f. pl.*  
 have been punished if I had not defended his right. —  
*droit, m.*  
 They have sold him four dozen of handkerchiefs at an  
*mouchoir, m.*                      *à*  
 exorbitant price, but they have warranted them fine  
*prix, m.*                      *garantir, v.*  
 and well worked. — We thought you would have  
*travailler, v.*                      *croyions, v.*  
 brought your brother with you. — Have we not been  
*amener, v.*

obliged

obliged to (wait for) Miss A. ? — If you had trusted  
*de attendre, v.* *confier, v.*

them with your goods, they would have stolen the

greatest part of them. — It is for that reason my  
*partie, f.* *Ce, pro.*

father has not (thought fit) to send them to you. —  
*juger, v. à-propos*

Mr. D. had represented to him all the danger of it. —

Mrs. F. has gained her cause, but she has lost all  
*gagner, v.* *perdre, v.*

her wealth. — Had I not finished my work when  
*bien, m.* *ouvrage, m.*

she came in ? — You would have received your money  
*entrer, v.*

(a month ago) if the mail had not been robbed. —  
*il y a un mois* *malle, f.* *vôler, v.*

Mrs. P. told me she would have paid you some time  
 ago, if she had sold her goods.

## CONJUGATION OF PASSIVE VERBS.

Verbs passive are very easily conjugated ; it requires only that the participle passive of the verb, which is to be conjugated, be joined to the auxiliary verb *être*, to be, through all its moods, tenses, numbers, and persons. It is to be observed, that (in French) the participle passive varies according to the gender and number of the noun or pronoun, which stands as the nominative to the verb : ex.

### INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>être</i>	aim-é,	ée, to be loved.
<i>être</i>	pun-i,	ie, to be punished.

*étant*



<i>étant</i>	aim-é,	<i>ée</i> , being loved.
<i>étant</i>	pun-i,	<i>ie</i> , being punished.
<i>avoir été</i>	aim-é,	<i>ée</i> , to have been loved.
<i>avoir été</i>	pun-i,	<i>ie</i> , to have been punished.
<i>ayant été</i>	aim-é,	<i>ée</i> , having been loved.
<i>ayant été</i>	pun-i,	<i>ie</i> , having been punished.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

Singular.	M.	F.
<i>Je suis</i>	aim-é,	<i>ée</i> , &c. I am loved.
<i>Je suis</i>	pun-i,	<i>ie</i> , &c. I am punished.
Plural.		
<i>Nous sommes</i>	aim-és,	<i>ées</i> , &c. we are loved.
<i>Nous sommes</i>	pun-is,	<i>ies</i> , &c. we are punished.

## COMPOUND TENSES.

	M.	F.
<i>J'ai été</i> pardonn-é,		<i>ée</i> , I have been forgiven.
<i>J'ai été</i> pun-i,		<i>ie</i> , I have been punished.
<i>Nous avons été</i> aim-és,		<i>ées</i> , we have been loved, &c.

## OF NEUTER VERBS.

The conjugations of the above verbs are, like all others, distinguished by their terminations, and conjugated in the same manner.

Learners may easily know a neuter verb from an active one, because the latter generally has, or can always have, a direct case after it; whereas the neuter verb never has, or can have, but an indirect case; for instance,

<i>Dormir</i> ,	to sleep,
<i>Venir</i> ,	to come,
<i>Voyager</i> ,	to travel.

are neuter verbs, because we cannot say,

<i>Dormir une maison</i> ,	to sleep a house.
<i>Venir un livre</i> ,	to come a book.
<i>Voyager la chambre</i> ,	to travel the room, &c.

In the same manner,

*Jouir*, to enjoy,

*Profiter*,

*Profiter*, to profit by, to take advantage of,

*Parvenir*, to attain, to reach,

are neuter verbs, because they can only govern an indirect case : ex.

*Jouir d'une grande réputation,* To enjoy a great reputation.

*Profiter du tems,* To take advantage of the weather.

*Parvenir à son but,* To attain one's end.

As it is impossible for the neuter verbs to govern an absolute case, it follows that every verb of this kind, which governs an absolute case, can no longer be looked upon as a neuter : ex.

*Pleurer,* to weep, to bewail,

*Sortir,* to go out,

*Monter,* to go up, to come up,

*Plaider, &c.* to plead,

are neuter verbs, but become active when they govern any object in the absolute case or accusative : ex.

*Elle pleure ses péchés,* She bewails her sins.

*Sortez ce cheval,* Bring out that horse.

*Il plaïda sa cause lui-même,* He himself pleaded his cause.

But there are some neuter verbs which can never have an active signification, and which we are obliged to conjugate with the verb *faire*, when we wish to express an action passing from the subject who acts : ex.

*Ferai-je, bouillir ou rôtir cette viande ?* Shall I boil or roast that meat ?

*Faites-la bouillir,* Boil it.

Some of the neuter verbs conjugate their compound tenses by the auxiliary verb *avoir*, to have, others by the verb *être*, to be.

The general rule to know what neuter verbs conjugate their compound tenses with the auxiliary *avoir*, and which are the others that are conjugated with the verb *être*, is to pay attention to the participle passive of the neuter verb which is conjugated.



If that participle be declinable, that is, if it can be applied to a man or a woman, or any other animate object, the compounds of its verbs are conjugated with the verb *être* : ex.

<i>Arriver</i> , to arrive,		<i>Tomber</i> , to fall,
<i>Mourir</i> , to die,		<i>Venir</i> , &c. to come,
<i>Naître</i> , to be born,		
take the auxiliary verb <i>être</i> , because we can say,		
<i>Un homme arrivé</i> ,		a man arrived.
<i>Une femme morte</i> ,		a woman dead.
<i>Un enfant né</i> ,		a child born.
<i>Un cheval tombé</i> , &c.		a horse fallen.

If, on the contrary, the participle be indeclinable, that is, if it cannot be said of any animate object, the compound tenses of that verb must be conjugated with the verb *avoir* : ex.

<i>Dormir</i> , to sleep,		<i>Régner</i> , to reign,
<i>Languir</i> , to languish, to linger,		<i>Vivre</i> , &c. to live,
take the auxiliary verb <i>avoir</i> , because we cannot say,		
<i>Un homme dormi</i> ,		a man slept.
<i>Une femme languie</i> ,		a woman languished, or lingered.
<i>Un enfant régné</i> ,		a child reigned.
<i>Un cheval vécu</i> , &c.		a horse lived.

The verb *courir*, is in this last class, when it signifies the rapid motion of the body, moving in a certain direction with all the swiftness of its legs ; as we cannot, in this sense, say,

*Un homme couru*, a man run.

*Une femme courue*, a woman run.

nor, *je suis couru*, *j'étois couru*, &c. but *j'ai couru*, *j'avais couru*, &c.

When we say in French *un homme couru*, *une femme courue*, we mean a man or woman much sought after ; a person or thing we are very eager to see : ex.

*Ce prédicateur est fort couru* ;

*Cette danseuse est fort courue* ;

that is, people are very eager to hear that preacher, to see that dancer.

In

In the above general rule are not included some neuter verbs, which sometimes take the auxiliary *avoir*, and sometimes the auxiliary *être*; these are,

<i>Monter</i> , to go or come up.	<i>Demeurer</i> , to live, to remain.
<i>Descendre</i> , to go or come down.	<i>Périr</i> , to perish.
<i>Sortir</i> , to go out.	<i>Passer</i> , to pass, to go by.
<i>Rester</i> , to stay, to remain.	<i>Echapper</i> , to escape.

*Monter* and *descendre* often govern an absolute regimen; in which case they are considered as active verbs, and conjugated with the auxiliary *avoir*: ex.

<i>J'ai monté les degrés,</i>	<i>I have ascended the stairs,</i> <i>or gone up the stairs.</i>
<i>Nous avons descendu la montagne,</i>	<i>We have come down the hill.</i>

When the above verbs are employed without regimen, their compounds are conjugated with *être*: ex.

<i>Je suis monté,</i>	<i>I am up.</i>
<i>Elle est déjà descendue,</i>	<i>She is down already.</i>

*Sortir* is conjugated with the verb *être*, when it signifies to quit, to leave the place wherein one was dwelling, or living; but it is conjugated with the verb *avoir*, when we wish to convey that we have been from home, and that we are come back again: ex.

<i>Il est sorti de prison,</i>	<i>He is out of prison.</i>
<i>J'ai sorti ce matin à dix heures,</i>	<i>I went out this morning at ten o'clock.</i>
<i>Avez-vous sorti ce matin?</i>	<i>Did you go out this morning?</i>
<i>Nous n'avons pas sorti de tout le jour,</i>	<i>We have not been out all day.</i>
<i>Le roi n'a pas sorti de sa chambre,</i>	<i>The king has not been out of his room.</i>

*Demeurer* and *rester* take the auxiliary *avoir*; when we mean that we were, but are no longer, in a place: ex.

<i>J'ai demeuré deux ans à la campagne,</i>	<i>I lived two years in the country.</i>
---	--



*Il a resté vingt ans à Rome,* He resided twenty years at Rome.

On the contrary, they take the auxiliary *être*, while the person or persons are still in a place : ex.

*Il est demeuré à Londres* He has remained in London  
*pour y solliciter un évêché,* to solicit a bishopric.

*Nous sommes restés à York* We have tarried at York  
*pour y finir nos affaires;* to conclude our affairs.

*Périr* indifferently takes either the auxiliary *avoir* or *être* : ex.

*Il est péri deux vaisseaux* Two ships have perished  
*sur mer,* at sea.

*Trois hommes ont péri par* Three men have perished  
*cette tempête,* by that storm.

*La plupart des équipages* Most of the crews perished  
*sont périés dans les ondes,* in the waves, the rest  
*le reste est péri de misère,* perished with misery.

It seems however that the auxiliary *avoir* is more generally used.

*Passer* sometimes governs an indirect case, or is immediately followed by the preposition *par*, or some other, attended by a noun or pronoun ; in which case its compounds are conjugated with the auxiliary verb *avoir*, whether it be used in its proper signification or in a figurative sense : ex.

*Le roi a passé par Ken-  
'ton pour aller à Windsor,* The king went through  
Kenington to go to  
Windsor.

*Nous avons passé devant* We went by the church.  
*l'église,*

*Elle a passé près du parc de* She went by St. James's  
*St. Jacques,* park.

*La couronne de Naples a passé* The crown of Naples passed  
*dans la maison de Bourbon.* in the House of Bourbon.

In all other cases, *passer* takes the auxiliary *être* : ex.

*Le roi est passé, vous ne* The king is gone by, you  
*sauriez le voir,* cannot see him.

*Le*

*Le beau tems est passé,*      The fine weather *is* over.  
*Vos chagrins sont passés,*      Your sorrows *are* over.

We sometimes say, *ce mot est passé*, when we mean that it is no longer in use; but when we say, *ce mot a passé*, we understand *in the language*, which signifies that it has been received or adopted.

*Passer* is often a reflected passive verb, when its compound tenses follow the rule of the reflective verbs.

*Passer*, in several cases, becomes an active verb, and governs an absolute case: ex.

*Passiez cela sur le feu,*      Pass *that* over the fire.  
*Les ennemis ont passé la ri-*      The enemies have crossed  
*vière,*      the river.  
*Passer l'épée au travers du*      To run one through the  
*corps,*      body.

*Echapper* has two significations: sometimes it is used in the sense of *éviter*, to avoid, when it is conjugated with the auxiliary *avoir*, and governs the dative case; sometimes it signifies to come or go out by force or stratagem from a place in which one was confined or shut up: in this case, it takes the verb *être* for auxiliary: ex.

*Vous avez échappé là à un*      You *have* escaped a great  
*grand danger,*      danger.  
*Il a échappé à la mort,*      He *has* escaped death.  
*Ils sont échappés de leur pri-*      They *have* escaped from  
*son, or,*      their prison, *or,* made  
*Ils se sont échappés de leur*      their escape.  
*prison,*  
*On la tenoit depuis quelques*      They had her for some  
*jours, mais elle est échap-*      days, but she *has* escaped,  
*pée, or, elle s'est échappée,*      *or,* made her escape.

N. B. Exercises on the neuter verbs will be found among the irregular whenever they occur.

## REFLECTED VERBS.

We call *reflected*, or *reflective*, a verb whose subject and object are the same person or thing; so that the  
subject,



subject, that acts, acts upon itself, and is at the same time the agent and the object of the action : ex.

<i>Je me connois,</i>	I know myself,
<i>Tu te loues,</i>	Thou praisest thyself,
<i>Il se blesse,</i>	He wounds himself,
<i>Nous nous chauffons,</i>	We warm ourselves,

are reflected verbs, because it is I who know and who am known : thou who praisest and who art praised ; he who wounds and who is wounded, &c.

In order to express the relation of the nominative to the verb with its regimen or object, we always make use of the conjunctive pronouns, *me, te, se*, myself, thyself, himself, herself, itself, for the singular ; *nous, vous, se*, ourselves, yourselves, themselves, for the plural. But it frequently happens, that, in English, the second pronoun is implied, though it must be expressed in French : ex.

<i>Je me souviens,</i>	I remember.
<i>Elle ne veut pas se marier,</i>	She will not marry.
<i>Nous nous plaignons, &amp;c.</i>	We complain, &c.

The reflected verbs may be divided in the following manner : viz.

<i>Verbes réfléchis par la signification,</i>	Verbs reflective by signification.
<i>Verbes réfléchis par l'expression,</i>	Verbs reflective by expression.
<i>Verbes réfléchis directs,</i>	Verbs reflective direct.
<i>Verbes réfléchis indirects,</i>	Verbs reflective indirect.
<i>Verbes réfléchis passifs,</i>	Verbs reflective passive.

A verb reflective by signification is properly a verb wherein the person or thing that acts is at the same time the object of the action : ex.

<i>Je me chauffe,</i>	I warm myself.
<i>Elle se blesse,</i>	She wounds herself, &c.

A verb is reflective by expression when we add to it the double pronoun without the person or thing that acts being the object of the action : such as,

<i>Je me repens,</i>	I repent ;
<i>Il s'en va,</i>	He is going away ;

*Elle*

<i>Elle se meurt,</i>	She is dying ;
<i>Nous nous appercevons de</i>	We perceive our error ;
<i>notre erreur,</i>	

which merely signify *je suis repentant, il va, elle meurt, nous appercevons notre erreur,*

When the conjunctive pronoun is the objective case of the verb reflective by expression, we say it is a *verb reflective direct* ; when the same conjunctive pronoun is the indirect regimen, (that is, governed in the dative case,) we call it *reflective indirect* : thus,

<i>Je me flatte,</i>	I flatter <i>myself</i> ,
<i>Tu te vantes,</i>	Thou boastest,
<i>Il se félicite,</i>	He congratulates <i>himself</i> , &c.

are verbs *reflective direct*. On the contrary,

<i>Il se donne des louanges,</i>	He gives <i>himself</i> praise,
<i>Nous nous promettons un</i>	We promise <i>ourselves</i> good
<i>bon succès,</i>	success,
<i>Vous vous arrachez une</i>	You draw one of your
<i>dent, &amp;c.</i>	teeth, &c.

are verbs *reflective indirect*, because it is as if we said, *il donne des louanges à soi, nous promettons un bon succès à nous, vous arrachez une dent à vous, &c.*

*Verb reflective passive.* This verb is so called, because it not only expresses a passive sense, but that sense can only be rendered by a passive verb : ex.

<i>Cela se voit tous les jours,</i>	That is seen every day.
<i>Cela ne se dit point,</i>	That is not said.
<i>Ce livre se vend bien,</i>	That book sells well.
<i>Ce bruit se répand,</i>	That rumour is spread.
<i>Ces fruits se mangent en</i>	These fruits are eaten in
<i>hiver,</i>	winter.
<i>Cet homme s'est trouvé in-</i>	That man has been found
<i>nocent du crime dont on</i>	innocent of the crime
<i>l'accusoit,</i>	with which he was ac-
	cused.

It is as if they were *cela est vu tous les jours, cela n'est point dit, &c.* which exactly correspond with the idiom of the English language.

This



This last verb is of great use in the French language, because as it has been observed before, there are properly no passive verbs in that language, and we are often obliged to supply the want of them by the above verb, or by the pronoun general *on*, to avoid ambiguity or false sense : if, for instance, instead of saying, *ces fruits se mangent en hiver*, ou *on mange ces fruits en hiver*, I said, *ces fruits sont mangés en hiver*, one might understand that those fruits are already eaten ; whereas I only wish to express the proper season for eating those fruits.

Some authors call *réci-proque*, reciprocal, all those reflected verbs ; but this denomination to me has appeared insufficient to well determine the nature and use of these verbs. Others limit the reciprocal verb to signify what two persons or two things reciprocally do to each other : thus,

*Pierre et Jean se battent,* Peter and John are fighting  
or beating each other,

*Paul et Robert s'aiment,* Paul and Robert love each  
other,

*Le feu et l'eau se détruisent,* Fire and water destroy each  
other,

are *reciprocal verbs*, because it is as if we said, *Pierre et Jean se battent réciproquement l'un l'autre*, *Paul et Robert s'aiment réciproquement*, &c.

This distinction of the reciprocal verbs may be adopted, observing at the same time that we often prefix the preposition *entre* to the verb, the better to express the reciprocity : ex.

*Pierre et Jean s'entr'aiment,* Peter and John love each  
other.

*Ils s'entrelouent,* They praise one another.

*Elles s'entrehaïssent,* They hate each other.

*Le feu et l'eau s'entredétruisent,* &c. Fire and water destroy each  
other.

All the reflected and reciprocal verbs, without exception, are conjugated with the auxiliary verb *être* ; hence it may be believed how much French people are shocked to hear any one, who has learned that language, say,  
*Je*

*Je m'ai acheté un cheval,* I bought myself a horse ;  
*Je m'avois blessé, or* I had hurt myself ;  
*Il s'a fait mal,* He has hurt himself ;  
*Elle s'avoit moqué de moi, &c.* She had laughed at me, &c.  
 too common expressions made use of by many English  
 people who speak without principles ; whereas we must  
 say,

*Je me suis acheté un cheval.*

*Je m'étois blessé, or*

*Il s'est fait mal.*

*Elle s'étoit moquée de moi.*

*Nous nous sommes informés,*

*Ils se sont promenés,*

*Il s'est passé d'étranges choses depuis votre départ,*

*Il s'est passé bien des années depuis que j'ai ouï parler de cette affaire,*

We have inquired.

They have walked.

Strange things have happened since your departure.

Many years have elapsed since I heard of that affair.

It must be owned that, in the compounds of most part of these verbs, the verb *être* is but the substitute of the verb *avoir* ; but it is impossible to use *avoir* as auxiliary to a verb which has for its objective case a conjunctive pronoun which relates to the principle of the action of that verb, and which precedes the auxiliary ; for, though we say,

*Il a voulu se tuer,* He would kill himself ;

yet, if we change the place of the pronoun, we must say, *Il s'est voulu tuer,* which is the idiom of the language.

## CONJUGATION OF THE REFLECTED VERBS.

The conjugation of the following verb may serve as a model for all the reflected or reciprocal verbs.

### INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Se promener,* to walk.

Part. act. *Se promenant,* walking.

M. Sing. F.

Part. pass. *promen-é, ée,* walked.

Q

Plural.



M. Plural. F.

Part. pass. *promen-és, ées*, walked.

## COMPOUND TENSES.

Present. *S'être promené*, to have walked.Part. pass. *S'étant promené*, having walked.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.

*Je me promène*, I walk, or do walk, or am walking.*Tu te promènes.**Il se promène.*

Plural.

*Nous nous promenons*, we walk, &c.*Vous vous promenez.**Ils se promènent.*

Imperfect. Singular.

*Je me promenois*, I did walk, or walked, or was walking.*Tu te promenois.**Il se promenoit.*

Plural.

*Nous nous promenions*, we did walk, &c.*Vous vous promeniez.**Ils se promenaient.*

Preterite. Singular.

*Je me promenai*, I did walk, or walked.*Tu te promenais.**Il se promena.*

Plural.

*Nous nous promenâmes*, we did walk, &c.*Vous vous promenâtes.**Ils se promenèrent.*

Future. Singular.

*Je me promènerai*, I shall or will walk.*Tu te promèneras.**Il se promènera.*

Plural.

*Nous nous promènerons*, we shall or will walk.*Vous vous promènerez.**Ils se promèneront.*

Conditional.

## Conditional. Singular.

*Je me promenerois*, I would, should, or could walk.*Tu te promenerois.**Il se promeneroit.*

## Plural.

*Nous nous promenerions*, we would, &c. walk.*Vous vous promeneriez.**Ils se promeneroient.*

## COMPOUND TENSES.

## M. F.

Present. *Je me suis promen-é ée*, I have walked.Imperfect. *Je m' étois promen-é ée*, I had walked.Preterite. *Je me fus promen-é ée*, I had walked.Future. *Je me serai promen-é ée*, I shall or will  
have walked.Conditional. *Je me serois promen-é ée*, I should, &c.  
have walked.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## Present. Singular.

*Promène-toi*,\* walk thou.*Qu'il se promène*, let him walk.

## Plural.

*Promenons nous*,\* let us walk.*Promenez vous*,\* walk ye.*Qu'il se promènent*, let them walk.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present. Singular.

*Que je me promène*, that I may walk.*tu te promènes.**il se promène.*

## Plural.

*nous nous promenions*, that we may walk.*vous vous promeniez.**ils se promènent.*

## Preterite.

\* When the verb is conjugated with a *negation*, these three pronouns are put before the verb : ex. *ne vous promenez pas*, do not walk ; and *toi* changed into *te* : ex. *ne te promène pas*.



Preterite. Singular.

*Que je me promenasse*, that I might walk.

*tu te promenasses.*

*il se promenât.*

Plural.

*nous nous promenassions*, that we might walk.

*vous vous promenassiez.*

*ils se promenassent.*

## COMPOUND TENSES.

M. F.

Present. *Que je me sois promen-é ée*, that I may have walked.

Preterite. *Que je me fusse promen-é ée*, that I might have walked.

The learner may here be again reminded, that it is necessary to conjugate this verb with a negation and interrogation : ex.

*Je ne me promène pas*, I do not walk.

*Vous promenez-vous ?* do you walk ?

*Ne se promène-t-il pas ?* does he not walk ?

## COMPOUND TENSES.

*Me suis-je promené ?*

Have I walked ? or did I walk ?

*Ne vous êtes-vous pas chauffé ?*

Have you not warmed yourself ? or did you not warm yourself ?

*Mon cousin s'est-il informé ?*

Has my cousin inquired ? or did my cousin inquire ?

*Votre frère ne s'est-il pas repenti ?*

Has not your brother repented ? or did not your brother repent ?

We say in French.

*Se promener à cheval, en carosse,*

To take a ride, an airing, on horseback, in a coach.

*Se promener sur l'eau, sur la rivière,*

To go upon the water, on the river.

## EXERCISES

## EXERCISES UPON THE REFLECTED VERBS.

N. B. Verbs marked \* are irregular : see the irregular verbs.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRES. I rise (early) every morning.  
*se lever, v. de bonne heure, adv. matin, m.*

— Does not your brother remember to have  
*se ressouvenir, v. \**

seen me ? — My sister is not well, she applies herself  
*vu, p.p. sœur, f. † s'appliquer, v.*

(too much) to study. — We rejoice at the good  
*trop, adv. étude, f. se réjouir, v. de*

news he has brought us. — When do you in-  
*nouvelle, f. apporté, p.p. se pro-*

tend to go and see Mrs. H. ? — Do you not  
*poser, v. de aller, v. voir, v.*

repent of what you have done to her ? — I  
*se repentir, v. \* de fait, p.p.*

believe your brothers are not well ; for, I have not  
*croire, v. \* † car, c.*

seen them this week.

*vu, p.p. semaine, f.*

IMP. I was riding on horseback in the park when  
*parc, m. quand, c.*

I met him. — Was he not warming himself  
*rencontrer, v. se chauffer, v.*

when you (came in ?) — We did not imagine he  
*entrer, v. s'imaginer, v.*

would succeed so well. — You were boasting too  
*réussir, v. se vanter, v.*

much

† When we mean to express the state of a person's health, instead of the verb *être*, we must use the reflected one *se porter* :

*Ma sœur ne se porte pas bien, My sister is not well.*



much of what you had done for him. — They did  
*fait, p.p.*

not expect that they should meet us.  
*s'attendre, v.*

PRET. I inquired after you yesterday. — Did  
*s'informer, v. de hier, adv.*

not my son behave well in the last war? —  
*fils, m. se comporter, v. dernier, adj. guerre, f.*

Corn was sold yesterday for — a bushel. — We  
*se vendre, v.*

saw ourselves surrounded by more than twenty  
*se voir, v.\* entouré, p.p.*

persons in an instant. — Did you not find  
*en, p. se trouver, v.*

yourselves obliged to go there? — They did not  
*obligé, p.p. de aller, v.*

stop one minute.  
*s'arrêter, v. minute, f.*

FUT. I will not complain of you, if you pro-  
*se plaindre, v.\* pro-*

mise me to behave better. — Will your bird  
*mettre, v.\* de mieux, adv. oiseau, m.*

(grow tame?) — Shall we submit ourselves to  
*s'approprier, v. se soumettre, v.\**

his judgment? — You will ruin yourselves if you  
*jugement, m. se ruiner, v.*

continue (gaming.) — Will they not perceive  
*continuer, v. de jouer, v. s'appercevoir, v.*

it (as soon as) they come into the room?  
*dès que, c. entrer, v. chambre, f.*

COND. If I were in your place, I would not  
*à*

vex myself. — Would she not (make her escape?)  
*se chagriner, v. s'échapper, v.*

— We

—— We would embark (this day) if the  
*s'embarquer, v. aujourd'hui*  
 weather (would permit.) — Why would you expose  
*tems, m. le permettoit, v. s'exposer, v.*  
 yourselves to their fury? — They would agree  
*fureur, f. s'accorder, v.*  
 very well if they were not so proud.  
*bien, adv. orgueilleux, adj.*

### IMPERATIVE MOOD.

I give you leave to go out, but do not  
*donner, v. permission, f. de sortir, v. mais, c.*  
 overheat yourself. — Let him amuse himself a  
*s'échauffer, v. s'amuser, v. un*  
 little in my garden. — Let us remember what  
*peu, adv. jardin, m. se ressouvenir de, v.\**  
 we are to do. — Endeavour to please your master,  
*† faire, v. S'efforcer, v. de plaire, v. à maître, m.*  
 and do not so often mistake in the tenses, numbers,  
*se tromper, v.*  
 and persons of the verbs. — Let them (fall asleep.)  
*s'endormir, v.*

### SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRES. I must apply myself to the French  
*Il faut que s'appliquer, v.*  
 language. — I will hide it, lest she should  
*langue, f. cacher, v. de peur que, c.*  
 perceive it. — Provided we remember to  
*s'appercevoir, v. en, pro. Pourvu que, c. de*  
 ask him how his mother does. —  
*demander, v. comment, adv. se porter, v.*  
 (In order that) you may not boast (so much.)  
*Afin que, c. se vanter, v. tant, adv.*  
 — I

† See the reference \* in the exercises upon the third conjugation,  
 page 145.



— I have told them who you are, that they may  
*dit, p.p.* *afin que, c.*

behave better another time.  
*se comporter, v.* *fois, f.*

PRET. That I might not ruin myself. — That  
*se ruiner, v.*

he might not meddle with my affairs. — That we  
*se mêler, v. de*

might excuse ourselves. — That you might not go  
*s'excuser, v.* *s'en*

away. — That they might not repent too late.  
*aller, v.\** *se repentir, v.\* trop tard, adv.*

### COMPOUND TENSES.

I have inquired after you and your sister. — He  
*s'informer, v. de*

says you have not been well while you were in  
*dit, v.* *pendant que, c.* *à*

the country.—Has not your cousin laughed at  
*campagne, f.* *cousin, m.* *se moquer, v. de*

me?—Did we not get up at six (o'clock?)—They  
*se lever, v. à* *heure, f.*

have perceived the trick, but it was too late.—Did  
*détour, m.*

you remember me?—I had not applied  
*se ressouvenir, v. de* *s'appliquer, v.*

myself enough.—Had not your sister imagined that  
*assez, adv.* *s'imaginer, v.*

they would have found themselves obliged to go  
*se trouver, v.* *obligé, p.p.* *de*

to France? — Many things have been said of them  
*†* *se dire, v.*

which

† See the indefinite article, p. 23.

which are not true.—We had thought ourselves  
*se croire, v.\**

able to resist them, but we have (been de-  
*capable, adj. de résister, v. mais, c. se trom-*

ceived.)—Did you not hide yourselves in order  
*per, v. se cacher, v.*

to surprise them?—When I (shall) have walked  
*de surprendre, v. Quand, adv.*

five or six minutes in the garden, I will rest  
*se reposer, v.*

myself.—Why did you exhaust yourself as you have  
*s'épuiser, v.*

done?—Our sailors would have behaved with  
*fait, p.p. se comporter, v.*

more resolution.—Would you not have excused  
*s'excuser, v.*

yourself?—When they have repented (of) their faults,  
*se repentir, v.*

I will forgive them.—If I had been in your place, I  
*à*

would not have meddled with their affairs.—Your  
*se mêler, v. de*

friend would not have complained of you, and you  
*se plaindre, v.\**

never would have fallen out for so small a matter.  
*se brouiller, v. chose, f.*

## CONJUGATION OF THE IRREGULAR VERBS.

These are called *irregulars* because their conjugation deviates from the general rule, either by their terminations, or the want of some of their moods, tenses, persons, or numbers.

VERB



## VERB OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

*ALLER*, TO GO.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	<i>Aller</i> , to go.
Part. act.	<i>Allant</i> , going.
Part. pass.	<i>Allé</i> , gone.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. <i>Vais</i> ,	<i>vas</i> ,	<i>va</i> , I go, or am going.
Plur. <i>Allons</i> ,	<i>allez</i> ,	<i>vont</i> .

## Imperfect.

Sing. <i>Allois</i> ,	<i>allois</i> ,	<i>alloit</i> , I did go, or was going.
Plur. <i>Allions</i> ,	<i>alliez</i> ,	<i>alloient</i> .

## Preterite.

Sing. <i>Allai</i> ,	<i>allas</i> ,	<i>alla</i> , I went, or did go.
Plur. <i>Allâmes</i> ,	<i>allâtes</i> ,	<i>allèrent</i> ; or,
Sing. <i>Fus</i> ,	<i>fus</i> ,	<i>fut</i> , I went, or did go.
Plur. <i>Fûmes</i> ,	<i>fûtes</i> ,	<i>furent</i> .

## Future.

Sing. <i>Irai</i> ,	<i>iras</i> ,	<i>ira</i> , I shall or will go.
Plur. <i>Irons</i> ,	<i>irez</i> ,	<i>iront</i> .

## Conditional.

Sing. <i>Irois</i> ,	<i>irois</i> ,	<i>iroit</i> , I should, could, would, or
Plur. <i>Irions</i> ,	<i>iriez</i> ,	<i>iroient</i> . might, go.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing.	<i>Va</i> ,	<i>aille</i> , go thou.
Plur. <i>Allons</i> ,	<i>allez</i> ,	<i>aillent</i> .

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>
Sing. <i>Aille</i> ,	<i>ailles</i> ,	<i>aille</i> ,	that I may go.
Plur. <i>Allions</i> ,	<i>alliez</i> ,	<i>aillent</i> .	

## Preterite.

## Preterite.

Sing. *Allasse, allasses, allât*, that I might go.

Plur. *Allassions, allassiez, allassent*.

Among the compound tenses of this verb, it is to be remarked that those which are formed by the participle *allé* signify that we are or were yet in the place mentioned at the time we are or were speaking. Whence it follows that the first person of the preterite indefinite,

*Je suis allé*, I have gone, &c.

*Tu es allé*, &c.

can seldom be used in discourse; for, we cannot naturally say that we are still in a place which can only be mentioned in a past time, after we have left it; therefore we make use of the compound tenses of the verb *être*, as, *j'ai été, tu as été, j'avois été, j'eus été, j'aurois été*, &c. for when we say,

*Il est allé à Londres*, He is gone to London,

we give to understand that he is still in London, or is on his way going to London: on the contrary,

*Il a été à Londres*, He has been or gone to London, means that he has gone to London, but is returned.

The above verb is also conjugated as a reflected one with the particle *en*: ex.

*S'en aller*, to go away.

*Je m'en vais*, I go or am going away.

*Tu t'en vas*, thou goest or art going away.

*Il s'en va*, he goes or is going away.

*Nous nous en allons*, we go or are going away.

*Vous vous en allez*, you go or are going away.

*Ils s'en vont*, they go or are going away.

## Negatively.

*Je ne m'en vais pas*, I am not going away.

*Il ne s'en va pas*, he is not going away.

*Nous ne nous en allons pas*, we are not going away.

*Vous ne vous en allez pas*, &c. you are not going away, &c.

Interrogatively.



Interrogatively.

*S'en va-t-il ?* is he going away ?*Vous en allez-vous ?* &c. are you going away ? &c.*Ne s'en vont-ils pas ?* &c. are they not going away ? &c.

Its compound tenses are,

*Je m'en suis allé,* I have gone away.*Je m'en étois allé,* I had gone away.*Je m'en fus allé,* I had gone away.*Je m'en serai allé,* I shall have gone away, &c.

## VERBS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

*ACQUERIR*, TO ACQUIRE.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Acquérir*, to acquire.Part. act. *Acquérant*, acquiring.Part. pass. *Acquis*, acquired.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Acquiers, acquiers, acquiert*, I acquire, or amPlur. *Acquérons, acquérez, acquièrent*. acquiring.

## Imperfect.

Sing. *Acquérois, acquérais, acquéroit*, I did acquire, or  
was acquiring.Plur. *Acquérions, acquériez, acquéroient*.

## Preterite.

Sing. *Acquis, acquis, acquit*, I acquired, or didPlur. *Acquîmes, acquîtes, acquirent*. acquire.

## Future.

Sing. *Acquerrai, acquerras, acquerra*, I shall or willPlur. *Acquerrons, acquèrrez, acquerront*. acquire.

## Conditional.

Sing. *Acquerrois, acquerrois, acquerroit*, I should, would,  
or could, acquire.Plur. *Acquerriions, acquerriez, acquerroient*.

## IMPERATIVE

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Acquiers, acquière, acquire thou.*  
 Plur. *Acquérons, acquérez, acquièrent.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

*Que que que*  
 Sing. *Acquière, acquières, acquière, that I may acquire.*  
 Plur. *Acquérons, acquérez, acquièrent.*

## Preterite.

Sing. *Acquisse, acquisses, acquît, that I might acquire.*  
 Plur. *Acquissions, acquissiez, acquissent.*

## QUERIR, TO FETCH.

The primitive of the above verb is never used but in the present of the infinitive mood : ex.

*Envoyez-moi quérir, send for me.*

CONQUERIR, TO CONQUER ; REQUERIR, TO REQUIRE ; are conjugated like ACQUERIR.

## BOUILLIR, TO BOIL.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Bouillir, to boil.*  
 Part. act. *Bouillant, boiling.*  
 Part. pass. *Bouilli, boiled.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Bous, bous, bout, I boil, or am boiling.*  
 Plur. *Bouillons, bouillez, bouillent.*

## Imperfect.

Sing. *Bouillois, bouillois, bouilloit, I did boil, or was boiling.*  
 Plur. *Bouillions, bouilliez, bouilloient.*

## R

## Preterite.



## Preterite.

Sing. *Bouillis*, *bouillis*, *bouillit*, I boiled, or did boil.  
 Plur. *Bouillîmes*, *bouillîtes*, *bouillirent*.

## Future.

Sing. *Bouillirai*, *bouilliras*, *bouillira*, I shall or will boil.  
 Plur. *Bouillirons*, *bouillirez*, *bouilliront*.

## Conditional.

Sing. *Bouillirois*, *bouillirois*, *bouilliroit*, I should, would  
 Plur. *Bouillirions*, *bouilliriez*, *bouilliroient*. or could, boil.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Bous*, *bouille*, boil thou.  
 Plur. *Bouillons*, *bouillez*, *bouillent*.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

*Que* *que* *que*  
 Sing. *Bouille*, *bouilles*, *bouille*, that I may boil.  
 Plur. *Bouillions*, *bouilliez*, *bouillent*.

## Preterite.

Sing. *Bouillisse*, *bouillisses*, *bouillît*, that I might boil.  
 Plur. *Bouillissions*, *bouillissiez*, *bouillissent*.

This verb, as well as its compound *rebouillir*, to boil again, is but seldom used, except in the third person singular or plural, and its infinitive mood, which is commonly joined to the verb *faire* : ex.

Faites *bouillir* *cette viande*, boil that meat.

## COURIR, TO RUN.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Courir*, to run.  
 Part. act. *Courant*, running.  
 Part. pass. *Couru*, run.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Cours*, *cours*, *court*, I run, or am running.  
 Plur. *Courons*, *courez*, *courent*.

Imperfect.

## Imperfect.

Sing. *Courois, courais, courait*, I did run, or was running.  
 Plur. *Courions, couriez, couraient*.

## Preterite.

Sing. *Courus, courus, courut*, I ran, or did run.  
 Plur. *Courûmes, courûtes, coururent*.

## Future.

Sing. *Courrai, courras, courra*, I shall or will run.  
 Plur. *Courrons, courrez, courront*.

## Conditional.

Sing. *Courrois, courrois, courroit*, I should, would or could, run.  
 Plur. *Courrions, courriez, courroient*.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Cours, cours, run thou*.  
 Plur. *Courez, courez, courent*.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

*Que que que*  
 Sing. *Coure, couras, coura*, that I may run.  
 Plur. *Courions, couriez, courent*.

## Preterite.

Sing. *Courusse, courusses, courût*, that I might run.  
 Plur. *Courussions, courussiez, courussent*.

The compounds of this verb are,

<i>Accourir</i> , to run to.	<i>Parcourir</i> , to run over.
<i>Concourir</i> , to concur.	<i>Recourir</i> , to have recourse to.
<i>Discourir</i> , to discourse.	
<i>Encourir</i> , to incur.	<i>Secourir</i> , to succour, to assist.

COUVRIR, TO COVER.

See OUVRIER, TO OPEN.

CUEILLIR,



## CUEILLIR, TO GATHER.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	<i>Cueillir</i> , to gather.
Part. act.	<i>Cueillant</i> , gathering.
Part. pass.	<i>Cueilli</i> , gathered.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing.	<i>Cueille</i> , <i>cueilles</i> , <i>cueille</i> , I gather, or am gather-
Plur.	<i>Cueillons</i> , <i>cueillez</i> , <i>cueillent</i> . ing.

## Imperfect.

Sing.	<i>Cueillois</i> , <i>cueillois</i> , <i>cueilloit</i> , I did gather, or was
Plur.	<i>Cueillions</i> , <i>cueilliez</i> , <i>cueilloient</i> . gathering.

## Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Cueillis</i> , <i>cueillis</i> , <i>cueillit</i> , I gathered, or did
Plur.	<i>Cueillîmes</i> , <i>cueillîtes</i> , <i>cueillirent</i> . gather.

## Future.

Sing.	<i>Cueillerai</i> , <i>cueilleras</i> , <i>cueillera</i> , I shall or will gath-
Plur.	<i>Cueillerons</i> , <i>cueillerez</i> , <i>cueilleront</i> . er.

## Conditional.

Sing.	<i>Cueillerois</i> , <i>cueillerois</i> , <i>cueilleroit</i> , I should, would or could, gather.
Plur.	<i>Cueillerions</i> , <i>cueilleriez</i> , <i>cueilleroient</i> .

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing.	<i>Cueilles</i> , <i>cueille</i> , gather thou.
Plur.	<i>Cueillons</i> , <i>cueillez</i> , <i>cueillent</i> .

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>	
Sing.	<i>Cueille</i> ,	<i>cueilles</i> ,	<i>cueille</i> ,	that I may gather.
Plur.	<i>Cueillions</i> ,	<i>cueilliez</i> ,	<i>cueillent</i> .	

## Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Cueillisse</i> , <i>cueillisses</i> , <i>cueillit</i> , that I might gather.
Plur.	<i>Cueillissent</i> , <i>cueillissent</i> , <i>cueillissent</i> .

The

The compounds of this verb are,  
*Accueillir*, to make wel- *Recueillir*, to gather to-  
 come. (Very little used.)      gether.

## DORMIR, TO SLEEP.

### INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.      *Dormir*, to sleep.  
 Part. act.    *Dormant*, sleeping.  
 Part. pass.   *Dormi*, slept.

### INDICATIVE MOOD.

#### Present.

Sing. *Dors*,      *dors*,      *dort*, I sleep or am sleeping.  
 Plur. *Dormons*, *dormez*, *dorment*.

#### Imperfect.

Sing. *Dormois*, *dormois*, *dormoit*, I did sleep, or was  
 Plur. *Dormions*, *dormiez*, *dormoient*.      sleeping.

#### Preterite.

Sing. *Dormis*,    *dormis*,    *dormit*, I slept, or did sleep.  
 Plur. *dormîmes*, *dormîtes*, *dormirent*.

#### Future.

Sing. *Dormirai*, *dormiras*, *dormira*, I shall or will sleep.  
 Plur. *Dormirons*, *dormirez*, *dormiront*.

#### Conditional.

Sing. *Dormirois*, *dormirois*, *dormiroit*, I would, could  
    or should, sleep.  
 Plur. *Dormirions*, *dormiriez*, *dormircient*.

### IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing.              *Dors*,    *dorme*, sleep thou,  
 Plur. *Dormons*, *dormez*, *dorment*.

### SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

#### Present.

*Que*            *que*            *que*  
 Sing. *Dorme*,    *dormes*,    *dorme*, that I may sleep.  
 Plur. *Dormions*, *dormiez*, *dorment*.



## Preterite.

Sing. *Dormisse, dormisses, dormît*, that I might sleep.Plur. *Dormissions, dormissiez, dormissent*.

The compounds of this verb are,

*Endormir*, to make sleep.      *Se rendormir*, to fall asleep*S'endormir*, to fall asleep.      again.EXERCISES ON THE FOREGOING VERBS AND  
THEIR COMPOUNDS.Where are you going? — I am going to the  
*Où*, adv.play. — I would go with you if I had time. — Why  
*comédie*, f.are they going away so soon? — Will not your father  
*tôt*, adv.be angry if you go there without him! — We were  
*fâché*, adj.going to Miss D——'s when we met you.  
*chez*, p.      *rencontrer*, v.— These men went yesterday from house to house. —  
*en*, p.Believe me, sir, do not go to see them. — Your fa-  
*Croire*, v.      *voir*, v.ther told me you will go to France and Italy as soon  
*dire*, v.as the war (is over.) — My sister and I went last  
*sera finie*      *dernier*, adj.

Wednesday to Ranelagh. — If you had gone (there)

an hour sooner, you would have heard fine music.  
*plutôt*, adv.      *entendre*, v.— Your uncle has acquired a great name in Ameri-  
*nom*, m.

ca. —

ca. — My father went to pay him a visit last week,  
*rendre, v.*

and he did not welcome him as a friend. — Go and

fetch me the letter I left in my room. — Boil this  
*laisser, v.*

chicken, and roast that goose. — At last we have  
*poulet, m. rôtir, v. oie, f. Enfin, adv.*

conquered. — This water will soon boil. — Boil  
*bientôt, adv.*

that meat again, it is not done enough. — Do not  
*cuit, p.p.*

run so fast, you will be tired. — They always  
*vîte, adv. fatigué, p.p.*

run when they go to see their aunt. — Your brother  
*tante, f.*

runs faster than I. — When he heard that his  
*vîte, adv. apprendre, v.*

friend was in danger, he ran instantly to him. —  
*aussitôt, adv.*

Let us not discourse any more on that subject. — I  
*sujet, m.*

would assist him with all my heart, if I could. — This  
*de pouvoir, v.*

gentleman is a great traveller, he has run over all  
*voyageur, m.*

Europe. — If you do it, you will incur your  
*faire, v.*

father's displeasure. — That would concur to the public  
*déplaisir, m.*

good. — When children are guilty, they generally  
*bien, m. coupable, adj.*

have recourse to some falsehood. — For whom are you  
*ménfonge, m.*

gathering



gathering those charming flowers? — I gather them  
*fleur, f.*

for my mother. — Why do they not gather some roses?  
*rose, f.*

—— Mrs. P. would have gathered some, but the  
gardener told her he would gather them himself. —  
*jardinier, m.*

Of all nations none has welcomed the poor French  
clergy better than the English. — Do not make  
*clergé, m. faire, v.*

any noise, for my sister is asleep. — I hope she will  
*car, c.*

sleep better to-night. — She would sleep much better  
*ce soir, m.*

if she were in her bed. — If I do not walk a  
*lit, m. se promener, v.*

little I shall fall asleep. — My mother, sister, brother,

and I, went yesterday to Croydon, to see Miss  
*hier, adv. Mademoiselle, f.*

H——. — Did you go there on foot? — No, my  
*à*

mother and sister went in a coach, and my brother  
*en, p. en*

and I on horseback.  
*à cheval, m.*

**FUIR**, TO RUN AWAY, TO SHUN, TO AVOID, TO FLY,  
OR FLEE.

#### INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	<i>Fuir</i> , to fly.
Part. act.	<i>Fuyant</i> , flying.
Part. pass.	<i>Fui</i> , fled.

#### INDICATIVE

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Fuis*, *fuis*, *fuit*, I fly.  
 Plur. *Fuyons*, *fuyez*, *fuient*.

## Imperfect.

Sing. *Fuyois*, *fuyois*, *fuyoit*, I fled, or did fly.  
 Plur. *Fuyions*, *fuyiez*, *fuyoient*.

## Preterite.

This tense is conjugated with the verb *prendre* and the substantive *fuite* : ex.

*Je pris la fuite*, I fled or ran away.

## Future.

Sing. *Fuirai*, *fuiras*, *fuirai*, I shall or will fly.  
 Plur. *Fuirons*, *fuires*, *fuiront*.

## Conditional.

Sing. *Fuirois*, *fuirois*, *fuiroit*, I should, would or  
 Plur. *Fuirions*, *fuiriez*, *fuiroient*. could, fly.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Fuis*, *fuie*, fly thou.  
 Plur. *Fuyons*, *fuyez*, *fuient*.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

*Que* *que* *que*  
 Sing. *Fuie*, *fuies*, *fuie*, that I may fly.  
 Plur. *Fuyions*, *fuyiez*, *fuient*.

## Preterite.

*Je prisse la fuite*, &c. that I might fly.

## MENTIR, TO LIE.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Mentir*, to lie.  
 Part. act. *Menant*, lying.  
 Part. pass. *Menti*, lied.

## INDICATIVE



## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Mens, mens, ment*, I lie.Plur. *Mentons, mentez, mentent*.

## Imperfect.

Sing. *Mentois, mentois, mentoit*, I did lie, or was lying.Plur. *Mentions, mentiez, mentoient*.

## Preterite.

Sing. *Mentis, mentis, mentit*, I lied, or did lie.Plur. *Mentîmes, mentîtes, mentirent*.

## Future.

Sing. *Mentirai, mentiras, mentira*, I shall or will lie.Plur. *Mentirons, mentirez, mentiront*.

## Conditional.

Sing. *Mentirois, mentirois, mentiroit*, I would, could  
or should, lie.Plur. *Mentirions, mentiriez, mentiroient*.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Mens, mente*, lie thou.Plur. *Mentons, mentez, mentent*.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Que Mente, mentes, mente*, that I may lie.Plur. *Mentions, mentiez, mentent*.

## Preterite.

Sing. *Mentisse, mentisses, mentît*, that I might lie.Plur. *Mentissions, mentissiez, mentissent*.

The compound of this verb is,  
*Démentir*, to give one the lie, to belie, to contradict.

MOURIR,

*MOURIR*, TO DIE.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	<i>Mourir</i> , to die.
Part. act.	<i>Mourant</i> , dying.
Part. pass.	<i>Mort</i> , died.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing.	<i>Meurs</i> ,	<i>meurs</i> ,	<i>meurt</i> ,	I die, or am dying.
Plur.	<i>Mourons</i> ,	<i>mourez</i> ,	<i>meurent</i> .	

## Imperfect.

Sing.	<i>Mourcis</i> ,	<i>mourois</i> ,	<i>mouroit</i> ,	I was dying.
Plur.	<i>Mourions</i> ,	<i>mouriez</i> ,	<i>mouroient</i> .	

## Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Mouras</i> ,	<i>mourus</i> ,	<i>mourut</i> ,	I died.
Plur.	<i>Mourûmes</i> ,	<i>mourûtes</i> ,	<i>moururent</i> .	

## Future.

Sing.	<i>Mourrai</i> ,	<i>mourras</i> ,	<i>mourra</i> ,	I shall or will die.
Plur.	<i>Mourrons</i> ,	<i>mourrez</i> ,	<i>mourront</i> .	

## Conditional.

Sing.	<i>Mourrois</i> ,	<i>mourrois</i> ,	<i>mourroit</i> ,	I should, could or would, die.
Plur.	<i>Mourrions</i> ,	<i>mourriez</i> ,	<i>mourroient</i> .	

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing.	<i>Meurs</i> ,	<i>meure</i> ,	die thou.
Plur.	<i>Mourons</i> ,	<i>mourez</i> ,	<i>meurent</i> .

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>	
Sing.	<i>Meure</i> ,	<i>meures</i> ,	<i>meure</i> ,	that I may die.
Plur.	<i>Mourions</i> ,	<i>mouriez</i> ,	<i>meurent</i> .	

## Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Mourusse</i> ,	<i>mourusses</i> ,	<i>mourût</i> ,	that I might die.
Plur.	<i>Mourussions</i> ,	<i>mourussiez</i> ,	<i>mourussent</i> .	
	<i>Se mourir</i> , to be dying.			

*OFFRIR*,



## OFFRIR, TO OFFER.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	<i>Offrir</i> , to offer.
Part. act.	<i>Offrant</i> , offering.
Part. pass.	<i>Offert</i> , offered.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing.	<i>Offre</i> ,	<i>offres</i> ,	<i>offre</i> , I offer, or am offering.
Plur.	<i>Offrons</i> ,	<i>offrez</i> ,	<i>offrent</i> .

## Imperfect.

Sing.	<i>Offrois</i> ,	<i>offrois</i> ,	<i>offroit</i> , I did offer, or was offering.
Plur.	<i>Offrions</i> ,	<i>offriez</i> ,	<i>offroient</i> .

## Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Offris</i> ,	<i>offris</i> ,	<i>offrit</i> , I offered, or did offer.
Plur.	<i>Offrîmes</i> ,	<i>offrîtes</i> ,	<i>offrirent</i> .

## Future.

Sing.	<i>Offrirai</i> ,	<i>offriras</i> ,	<i>offrira</i> , I shall or will offer.
Plur.	<i>Offrirons</i> ,	<i>offrirez</i> ,	<i>offriront</i> .

## Conditional.

Sing.	<i>Offrirais</i> ,	<i>offrirais</i> ,	<i>offriroit</i> . I would, could, or should, offer.
Plur.	<i>Offririons</i> ,	<i>offririez</i> ,	<i>offriroient</i> .

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing.	<i>Offres</i> ,	<i>offre</i> , offer thou.
Plur.	<i>Offrons</i> ,	<i>offrez</i> , <i>offrent</i> .

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>
Sing.	<i>Offre</i> ,	<i>offres</i> ,	<i>offre</i> , that I may offer.
Plur.	<i>Offrions</i> ,	<i>offriez</i> ,	<i>offrent</i> .

## Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Offrisse</i> ,	<i>offrisses</i> ,	<i>offrît</i> , that I might offer.
Plur.	<i>Offrissions</i> ,	<i>offrissiez</i> ,	<i>offrissent</i> .

OUIR,

**OUIR, TO HEAR.**

This verb is never used but in its participle passive joined to some of the tenses of the verb *avoir*, to have, preceding the verb *dire*, to say : ex.

*J'ai ouï dire que*, I have heard that, &c.

In general we make use of *apprendre*.

**OUVRIR, TO OPEN.**

This verb, as well as its compounds,

*Couvrir*, to cover,

*Recouvrir*, to cover again,

*Découvrir*, { to discover,  
to uncover,

is conjugated like **OFFRIR**.

**PARTIR, TO SET OUT, TO GO AWAY,**

And its compounds,

*Départir*, to depart, to *Repartir*, to set out again,  
impart, to reply,

*Se REPENTIR*, TO REPENT,

**SENTIR**, TO FEEL, TO SMELL,

And its compounds,

*Consentir*, to consent, to *Resentir*, to be sensible of,  
agree, to resent,

*Pressentir*, to have a fore-  
sight of,

are conjugated like **MENTIR**.

**EXERCISES ON THE FOREGOING VERBS AND THEIR COMPOUNDS.**

As soon as they saw us coming, they ran away.  
*voir*, v. *venir*, v.

S

—Avoid



— Avoid bad company. — He does not love your  
*compagnie, f.*

sister, because she lies. — If you forgive me this time,  
*parce que, c.* *fois, f.*

I never will lie any more. — I cannot believe him ;  
*pottevoir, v.*

for, he contradicts himself at every instant. — Tell me  
*car, c.* *instant, m. Dire, v.*

what she has done to you ; but, above all, do not lie.  
*sur, p.*

— If you do not behave better, your mother will  
*se comporter, v.*

die with grief. — Mrs. S. died at Paris on the seventh  
*de chagrin, m.* *à*

of August, one thousand seven hundred and eighty. —  
*Août, m.*

Misfortune often seeks those who avoid it, and  
*Malheur, m.* *chercher, v.*

sometimes avoids those who seem to seek it. —  
*quelquefois, adv.* *sembler, v.*

Were I in your place, I would not offer her any money.  
*à place, f.*

— Why do you not open the door for your sister ?  
*Pourquoi, adv.* *porte, f.*

— Your brother was no sooner arrived in London than  
*plutôt, adv.* *à*

I offered him my services. — Your actions never belie  
your words. — Open the window. — I had heard you  
*fenêtre, f.*

were going to Holland at the beginning of next  
*commencement, m.*

month. — I hope you will never discover what I have  
*espérer, v.*

told

told you.—Cover my hat, and put it upon that  
*dire, v.* *mettre, v.*

chair.—I will set out to-morrow morning at seven  
*chaise, f.*

(o'clock.)—Do not set out with me.—Let us go and  
*heure, f.*

see Mrs. D——, I have heard she is dying.—Your sister  
 repents much for having sold her books.—Gather that  
*de*

pink, it smells charmingly.—Her mother says she  
*œillet, m.* *bon, adv.*

never will consent to it.—If you do not take  
*prendre, v.*

care, you will repent of your imprudence soon or  
*garde, f.* *tôt, adv.*

late.—Let us die for our country, and our death will  
*tard, adv.* *patrie, f.*

be glorious.—Every citizen ought to be disposed to  
*glorieux, adj.* *à*

sacrifice himself for the public good ; it is at that  
*se, pro. à, p.*

price only that one acquires a lawful right  
*légitime, adj.* *droit, m.*

to the advantages of civil society. — I should die

satisfied, if I knew you were happy. —  
*content, adj.* *savoir, v.* (by the subj.)

You soon felt the effect of it. — My cousin set out  
*effet, m.*

from here yesterday morning at nine o'clock. — I  
*ici, adv.*

offer you my house, it is at your service. — You  
*maison, f.*

may



may rely upon her, she never will discover  
*pouvoir, v. compter, v.*

your secrets. — I never will offer you my horse any  
*secret, m. cheval, m.*

more. — He will feel it in his turn, when he  
*à tour, m.*

is old  
 (by the fut.)

## SERVIR, TO SERVE, TO HELP ONE TO.

### INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	<i>Servir, to serve.</i>
Part. act.	<i>Servant, serving.</i>
Part. pass.	<i>Servi, served.</i>

### INDICATIVE MOOD.

#### Present.

Sing.	<i>Sers, sers, sert, I serve, or am serving.</i>
Plur.	<i>Servons, servez, servent.</i>

#### Imperfect.

Sing.	<i>Servois, servois, servoit, I did serve, or was</i>
Plur.	<i>Servions, serviez, servoient. serving.</i>

#### Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Servis, servis, servit, I did serve, or served.</i>
Plur.	<i>Servîmes, servîtes, servirent.</i>

#### Future.

Sing.	<i>Servirai, serviras, servira, I shall or will serve.</i>
Plur.	<i>Servirons, servirez, serviront.</i>

#### Conditional.

Sing.	<i>Servirois, servirois, serviroit, I would, should,</i>
Plur.	<i>Servirions, serviriez, serviroient. or could, serve.</i>

### IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing.	<i>Sers, serve, serve thou.</i>
Plur.	<i>Servons, servez, servent.</i>

### SUBJUNCTIVE

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

*Que que que*  
 Sing. *Serve, serves, serve*, that I may serve.  
 Plur. *Servions, serviez, servent*.

## Preterite.

Sing. *Servisse, servisses, servît*, that I might serve.  
 Plur. *Servissions, servissiez, servissent*.

The compounds of this verb are,  
*Desservir*, to do an ill office, to clear a table.  
*Se servir*, to make use of, to use.

*SORTIR*, TO GO OUT,  
 is conjugated like *MENTIR*.

*SOUFFRIR*, TO SUFFER,  
 is conjugated like *OFFRIR*.

*TENIR*, TO HOLD, TO KEEP.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Tenir*, to hold.  
 Part. act. *Tenant*, holding.  
 Part. pass. *Tenu*, held.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Tiens, tiens, tient*, I hold, or am holding.  
 Plur. *Tenons, tenez, tiennent*.

## Imperfect.

Sing. *Tenois, tenois, tenoit*, I did hold, or was hold-  
 Plur. *Tenions, teniez, tenoient* ing.

## Preterite.

Sing. *Tins, tins, tint*, I held, or did hold.  
 Plur. *Tînmes, tîntes, tinrent*.



## Future.

Sing. *Tiendrai, tiendras, tiendra*, I shall, or will hold.Plur. *Tiendrons, tiendrez, tiendront*.

## Conditional.

Sing. *Tiendrois, tiendrois, tiendrait*, I should, could,  
or would, hold.Plur. *Tiendrions, tiendriez, tiendraient*.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Tiens, tienne*, hold thou.Plur. *Tenons, tenez, tiennent*.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Que tienne, que tiennes, que tienne*, that I may hold.Plur. *Tenions, teniez, tiennent*.

## Preterite.

Sing. *Tinssse, tinsses, tînt*, that I might hold.Plur. *Tinssions, tinssiez, tinssent*.

The compounds of this verb are,

*S'abstenir*, to abstain.*Maintenir*, to maintain.*Appartenir*, to belong.*Obtenir*, to obtain.*Contenir*, to contain.*Retenir*, to retain, to keep.*Détenir*, to retain.*Soutenir*, to maintain, to*Entretenir*, to keep, to en- hold, to support.  
tertain.*TRESSAILLIR*, TO START, TO LEAP FOR.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Tressaillir*, to start.Part. act. *Tressaillant*, starting.Part. pass. *Tressailli*, started.

## INDICATIVE

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Tressaille, tressailles, tressaille, I start.*Plur. *Tressaillons, tressaillez, tressaillent.*

## Imperfect.

Sing. *Tressaillois, tressaillois, tressailloit, I did start.*Plur. *Tressaillions, tressailliez, tressailloient.*

## Preterite.

Sing. *Tressaillis, tressaillis, tressaillit, I started.*Plur. *Tressaillîmes, tressaillîtes, tressaillirent.*

## Future.

Sing. *Tressaillirai, tressailliras, tressaillira, I shall, or  
will start.*Plur. *Tressaillirons, tressaillirez, tressailliront.*

## Conditional.

Sing. *Tressaillirois, tressaillirois, tressailliroit, I should,  
would, &c. start.*Plur. *Tressaillirions, tressailliriez, tressailliroient.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD is wanting.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Que que que  
Tressaille, tressailles, tressaille, that I may start.*Plur. *Tressaillions, tressailliez, tressaillent.*

## Preterite.

Sing. *Tressaillisse, tressaillisses, tressaillît, that I might*Plur. *Tressaillissions, tressaillissiez, tressaillissent. start.*

*SAILLIR*, TO JUT, TO JET OUT, (term in architecture,) is conjugated as *TRESSAILLIR*, but is only used in the third person of some tenses and its infinitive mood.

*ASSAILLIR*, TO ASSAULT, is conjugated as above.

N. B.



N. B. *SAILLIR*, TO GUSH OUT, (speaking of any liquids,) is regular, and conjugated as *PUNIR*.

---

*VENIR*, TO COME,

And its compounds,

<i>Convenir</i> , to agree, to be-	<i>Provenir</i> , to proceed,
come, to fit, to suit,	<i>Revenir</i> , to come back, to
<i>Contrevenir</i> , to infringe,	return,
<i>Devenir</i> , to become,*	<i>Se souvenir</i> , to remember,
<i>Disconvenir</i> , to disagree,	to remind,†
<i>Intervenir</i> , to intervene,	<i>Se ressouvenir</i> , to recollect,
<i>Parvenir</i> , to attain to,	<i>Subvenir</i> , to relieve, to assist,
<i>Prévenir</i> , to prevent, to	<i>Survenir</i> , to befall, to hap-
prejudice, to anticipate,	pen unexpectedly, to
to prepossess,	come to,

are conjugated like *TENIR*.

---

*VETIR*, TO CLOTHE.

This verb is seldom used but in the present of the infinitive mood, and participle passive, *vêtu*, clothed; therefore the conjugation of its compound *REJETIR*, TO INVEST WITH, TO GIVE OTHER CLOTHES, will be given in lieu of it.

\* This verb, in English, is most generally accompanied by the preposition *of*, governing the noun or pronoun; but it must be observed, that, in French, the preposition must be suppressed, and the noun or pronoun become the nominative to the verb *devenir*: ex.

*Ne vous informez point de ce que je deviendrai,* Do not inquire about what will become of me.

*Que deviendra votre cousin, si son père l'abandonne ?* What will become of your cousin, if his father forsake him ?

*Si cela arrivoit, je ne sais ce que nous deviendrions,* Should that happen, I know not what would become of us.

† When this verb, in English, governs a noun or pronoun in the accusative case, it must be put in the infinitive mood, and preceded by the verb *faire* in the same tense, number, and person, as the verb *to remind*: ex. *Faites-moi souvenir de passer chez votre tante,* Remind me to call upon your aunt.

*Où, je vous en ferai souvenir,* Yes, I will remind you of it.

INFINITIVE

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	<i>Revêtir</i> , to invest.
Part. act.	<i>Revêtant</i> , investing.
Part. pass.	<i>Revêtu</i> , invested.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing.	<i>Revêts</i> ,	<i>revêts</i> ,	<i>revêt</i> , I invest.
Plur.	<i>Revêtons</i> ,	<i>revêtez</i> ,	<i>revêtent</i> .

## Imperfect.

Sing.	<i>Revêtois</i> ,	<i>revêtois</i> ,	<i>revêtoit</i> , I did invest.
Plur.	<i>Revétions</i> ,	<i>revétiez</i> ,	<i>revêtoient</i> .

## Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Revétis</i> ,	<i>revétis</i> ,	<i>revétit</i> , I invested, or did
Plur.	<i>Revêtîmes</i> ,	<i>revêtîtes</i> ,	<i>revêtirent</i> . invest.

## Future.

Sing.	<i>Revêtirai</i> ,	<i>revêtiras</i> ,	<i>revêtira</i> , I shall or will
Plur.	<i>Revêtirons</i> ,	<i>revêtirez</i> ,	<i>revêtiront</i> . invest.

## Conditional.

Sing.	<i>Revêtirois</i> ,	<i>revêtirois</i> ,	<i>revêtiroit</i> , I should, would,
Plur.	<i>Revêtirions</i> ,	<i>revêtiriez</i> ,	<i>revêtiroient</i> . &c. invest.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing.	<i>Revêts,</i>	<i>revête,</i>	invest thou.
Plur.	<i>Revêtons,</i>	<i>revêtez,</i>	<i>revêtent.</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>	
Sing.	<i>Revête</i> ,	<i>revêtes</i> ,	<i>revête</i> ,	that I may invest.
Plur.	<i>Revétions</i> ,	<i>revétiez</i> ,	<i>revêtent</i> .	

## Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Revêtisse</i> ,	<i>revêtisses</i> ,	<i>revêtit</i> ,	that I might in-
Plur.	<i>Revétissions</i> ,	<i>revétissiez</i> ,	<i>revétissent</i> .	vest.

## EXERCISES



# EXERCISES UPON THE FOREGOING VERBS AND THEIR COMPOUNDS.

Your friend Mr. H—— does not serve me well.—  
*ami, m.*

Shall I help you to a little bit of lamb ? —  
*morceau, m. agneau, m.*

We would serve him with all our heart, if we could.—  
*pouvoir, v.*

I shall go out in half an hour.—If we go to day  
*aujourd' hui, adv.*  
to Richmond, we will make use of your coach. — My  
*carrosse, m.*

sister went out this morning at nine o'clock, and is not  
*matin, m.*

yet returned.—Nobody knows what we suffered in our  
*savoir, v.*

last voyage.—If I were as ill as you, I would  
*voyage, m. malade, adj.*

not go out of my room. — Why do not you  
*chambre, f. Pourquoi, adv.*

serve your friends, since you may do it ? —  
*puisque, c. pouvoir, v.*

Should they forsake you, what would become of  
*abandonner, v.*

you ? — I would make use of your horse, if you would

be so kind as to lend it to me. — The more we are  
*avoir la bonté de*

above others, the more it becomes us to be  
*au-dessus de, p.*

modest and humble. — My aunt and I came yester-  
*tante, f.*

day to see you, but you were not at home. — I  
*voir, v.*

hope

hope you will keep your word, and come  
*espérer, v. parole, f.*

to-morrow. — I assure you, Mr. R——'s father holds  
*demain, adv. assureur, v.*

the first rank in the town, but his son will never  
*rang, m. ville, f.*

attain to his father's reputation. — Men acquire, by

long labours, knowledge which often becomes  
*travail, m. lumière, f.*

fatal to them. — I maintain, and will always  
*funeste, adj.*

maintain, that you will not be happy without  
*heureux, adj. sans, p.*

virtue. — We were coming to see you, but you have

anticipated all my designs. — She leapt for joy when  
*de*

she saw her. — At last she has agreed to pay her  
*Enfin, adv. \* de*

an annual pension of twenty pounds. — Her mother

started up at those words, and became furious. —  
*à, p. parole, f. furieux, adj.*

Come on Friday morning at nine o'clock. —  
*en Vendredi, m.*

This house will belong to me after her death. —  
*après, p. mort, f.*

You will obtain leave to go out another time,  
*permission, f. de fois, f.*

if you come back soon. — This box contains all  
*bientôt, adv. boîte, f.*

my jewels. — I agree Miss N. is the prettiest of the  
*bijoux, m. pl.*

\* See the neuter verbs for the formation of the compound tenses.  
 family,



family, but she is so proud that I know not what will become of her. — Who' knows whether they will re-  
*savoir, v. si, c.*

member it or not? — They assaulted the town in the  
*au*

middle of the night, and all their officers, even  
*milieu, m. même, adv.*

the general, agree that they have acquired much glory.

—Remember that if you infringe the law, you will

incur the punishments decreed by the law. —  
*peine, f. porté, p. p.*

Your illness proceeds from a great heat. — The  
*maladie, f. chaleur, f.*

first time you come to see me, I will keep you  
 (by the fut.) *voir, v.*

two or three days. — Mr. B. desired me to tell you  
*jour, m. prier, v. de*

that he will not come back to-day. — When the

surgeon had opened his vein, the blood gushed  
*chirurgien, m. sang, m.*

out with an extraordinary impetuosity. — That poor

man will bless you, if you give him new clothes. —  
*bénir,*

He is so prepossessed against me, that he will not  
*contre, p. vouloir, v.*

agree he is in the wrong. — We would certainly  
*certainement, adv.*

have come back yesterday, had we had time. — You will  
*hier, adv.*

become a great man, if you continue to study with  
*grand, adj. continuer, v. de*

the same assiduity. — He would have come to see us  
*assiduité, f.* \*

last week, if it had not rained. — The first time  
*semaine, f.* *plu, p.p.* *fois, f.*

I go out, remind me to call on your brother  
 (by the fut.) *de passer, v.* *chez, p.*

er. — That hat would suit you very well, if you  
 were a little taller. — Do not go out to-day, you

will suffer much if you do. — I should not suffer  
*beaucoup, adv.* *faire, v.*

(so much) if it were fine weather. — Why do you  
*tant, adv.* *faisoit, v.*

not abstain from drinking ? — The king has invested  
*boire, v.*

that nobleman with all his authority. — You may  
*seigneur, m. de* *pouvoir, v.*

set out this morning, but remember to come back  
*de*

at night. — Were I in your place, I would detain  
*ce soir, m.* *place, f.*

him here a little longer ; for, he always keeps  
*long-tems, adv.* *car, c.*

himself shut up in his house. — I do not think that  
*enfermé, p.p.* *croire, v.*

colour suits your sister. — When will she return  
*Quand, adv.*

from the country ? — She wrote she would come next  
*campagne, f.*

Saturday, if the weather were fine.  
*tems, m.*



## VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

## ASSEOIR, TO SIT DOWN.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	<i>Asséoir</i> , to sit down.
Part. act.	<i>Asséyant</i> , sitting down.
Part. pass.	<i>Assis</i> , sat down (or seated.)

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing.	<i>Assieds</i> ,	<i>assieds</i> ,	<i>assied</i> , I sit down.
Plur.	<i>Asséyons</i> ,	<i>asséyez</i> ,	<i>asseient</i> .

## Imperfect.

Sing.	<i>Asséyois</i> ,	<i>asséyois</i> ,	<i>asséyoit</i> , I did sit, or was sit-
Plur.	<i>Asséyions</i> ,	<i>asséyiez</i> ,	<i>asséyoient</i> . ting down.

## Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Assis</i> ,	<i>assis</i> ,	<i>assit</i> , I sat down.
Plur.	<i>Assîmes</i> ,	<i>assîtes</i> ,	<i>assirent</i> .

## Future.

Sing.	<i>Asséyerai</i> ,	<i>asséyeras</i> ,	<i>asséyera</i> , I shall or will sit
Plur.	<i>Asséyerons</i> ,	<i>asséyerez</i> ,	<i>asséyeront</i> . down.

## Conditional.

Sing.	<i>Asséyerois</i> ,	<i>asséyerois</i> ,	<i>asséyeroit</i> , I should, would,
			or could, sit down.
Plur.	<i>Asséyerions</i> ,	<i>asséyeriez</i> ,	<i>asséyeroient</i> .

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing.	<i>Assieds</i> ,	<i>asseie</i> , sit down.
Plur.	<i>Asséyons</i> ,	<i>asséyez</i> , <i>asseient</i> .

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>	
Sing.	<i>Asséie</i> ,	<i>asséies</i> ,	<i>asséie</i> , that I may sit down.	
Plur.	<i>Asséyions</i> ,	<i>asséyiez</i> ,	<i>asseient</i> .	

## Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Assisse</i> ,	<i>assisses</i>	<i>assît</i> , that I might sit down.
Plur.	<i>Assissions</i> ,	<i>assissiez</i> ,	<i>assissent</i> .

*Asséoir* is most generally conjugated as a reflexive verb, which may easily be done, by the learner adding a double pronoun to the different tenses, and forming the compound ones by the verb *être*, as in *se promener* : ex.

*Je*

*Je m'assieds, tu t'assieds, il s'assied ;*  
*Nous nous asseyons, vous vous asseyez, ils s'asseient.*

## COMPOUND TENSES.

*Je me suis assis, tu t'es assis, il s'est assis ;*  
*Nous nous sommes assis, vous vous êtes assis, &c.*

The compound of this verb is,  
*Se rasseoir*, to sit down again.

---

**SEOIR**, TO FIT WELL, TO BECOME, TO SIT,  
 the primitive of *asseoir*, is never used in the present of  
 its infinitive mood ; and in its other tenses is conjuga-  
 ted as follows :

Part. act. *Séant*, fitting well, fitting, or becoming.  
 Part. pass. *Sis*, never used but in the sense of situated,  
 or lying.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present. *Il sied, ils sièent*, it becomes, they be-  
 come, &c.  
 Imperfect. *Il séyoit, ils séyoient*, it was becoming, &c.  
 Preterite wanting.  
 Future. *Il siéra, ils siéront*, it, or they will become.  
 Cond.. *Il siéroit, ils siéroient*, it, or they would  
 become.

The other tenses are never used.

---

**SURSEOIR**, TO SUPERSEDE, TO PUT OFF, a com-  
 pound of *seoir*, is only used in law, and is thus conju-  
 gated :

Part. act. *Sursoyant*.

Part. pass. *Surfis*.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

*Je sursois, &c. nous sursoyons, &c.*

Imperfect.

*Je sursoyois, &c. nous sursoyions, &c.*

Preterite.

*Je surfis, &c. nous surfîmes, &c.*

Future.

*Je surseoirai, &c. nous surseoirons, &c.*



## Conditional.

*Je surseirois, &c. nous surseoirions, &c.*

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

*Sursois, &c. sursoyons, &c.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

*Que je surseoie, &c. que nous sursoyions, &c.*

## Preterite.

*Que je surfisse, &c. que nous surfissions, &c.*

**DÉCHOIR**, TO DECAY, TO DECLINE.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Déchoir*, to decay.

Part. act. wanting.

Part. pass. *Déchu*, decayed.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Déchois, décrois, décroît*, I decay.

Plur. *Déchoyons, décroyez, décroient*.

## Imperfect is wanting.

## Preterite.

Sing. *Déchus, déchus, déchut*, I decayed, or did de-

Plur. *Déchûmes, déchûtes, déchurent*. cay.

## Future.

Sing. *Décherrai, décherras, décherra*, I shall, or will,

Plur. *Décherrons, décherez, décherront*. decay.

## Conditional.

Sing. *Décherrois, décherrois, décherroit*, I should, would, or could, decay.

Plur. *Décherrions, décheriez, décherroient*.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD is wanting.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Que Déchoie, que décroies, que décroie*, that I may decay.

Plur. *Déchoyions, déchoyiez, décroient*.

## Preterite.

## Preterite.

Sing. *Déchusse, déchusses, déchût*, that I might de-  
 Plur. *Déchussions, déchussiez, déchussent.* cay.

*CHOIR*, the primitive of the above verb, is obsolete.

*ECHOIR*, TO FALL OUT, TO CHANCE, is conjugated like *DECHOIR*. Its part. act. is *échéant*.

*MOUVOIR*, TO MOVE.

## INFINTIVE MOOD.

Present. *Mouvoir*, to move.

Part. act. *Mouvant*, moving.

Part. pass. *Mu*, moved.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Meus, meus, meut*, I move.

Plur. *Mouvons, mouvez, meuvent.*

## Imperfect.

Sing. *Mouvois, mouvois, mouvoit*, I did move.

Plur. *Mouvions, moviez, mouvoient.*

## Preterite.

Sing. *Mus, mus, mut*, I moved, or did move.

Plur. *Mûmes, mûtes, murent.*

## Future.

Sing. *Mouvrai, mouvras, mouvra*, I shall, or will, move.

Plur. *Mouvrons, mouvrez, mouvront.*

## Conditional.

Sing. *Mouvrais, mouvrais, mouvrait*, I should, could,  
 or would, move.

Plur. *Mouvrions, movriez, mouvroient.*

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Meus, meuve*, move thou.

Plur. *Mouvons, mouvez, meuvent.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Que  
 Sing. *Meuve, meuves, meuve*, that I may move.  
 Plur. *Mouvions, moviez, meuvent.*



## Preterite.

Sing. *Musse, musses, mût*, that I might move.  
 Plur. *Mussions, mussiez, mussent*.

The compound of this verb is,  
*Emouvoir*, to stir up, to move.

---

## POUVOIR, TO BE ABLE.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Pouvoir*, to be able.  
 Part. act. *Pouvant*, being able.  
 Part. pass. *Pu*, been able.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Puis* or *peux, peux, peut*, I am able, I can, or  
 Plur. *Pouvons, pouvez, peuvent*. may.

## Imperfect.

Sing. *Pouvois, pouvois, pouvoit*, I was able, or I could.  
 Plur. *Pouvions, pouviez, pouvoient*.

## Preterite.

Sing. *Pus, pus, put*, I was able, or I could.  
 Plur. *Pûmes, pûtes, purent*.

## Future.

Sing. *Pourrai, pourras, pourra*, I shall, or will be able.  
 Plur. *Pourrons, pourrez, pourront*.

## Conditional.

Sing. *Pourrois, pourrois, pourroit*, I should be able, I  
 could, or might.

Plur. *Pourrions, pourriez, pourroient*.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD wanting.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

*Que que que*  
 Sing. *Puisse, puisse, puisse*, that I may be able,  
 Plur. *Pussions, puissiez, puissent*, or I may.

## Preterite.

Sing. *Pusse, pussés, pût*, that I might be able, or  
 Plur. *Pussions, pussiez, pussent*. I might.  
 When

When the words *can, may, could, or might*, express an absolute or permissive power, or a possibility of doing a thing, *can* and *may* are rendered by the present tense of the indicative of this verb ; ex.

*Je puis vous vendre un bon cheval, si vous en avez besoin d'un.* I can sell you a good horse, if you want one.

*Vous pouvez aller au bal, mais revenez à dix heures.* You may go to the ball, but come back at ten o'clock.

N. B. *May*, expressing a wish, is rendered by the present tense of the subjunctive : ex.

*Puissez-vous être heureux !* May you be happy !

*Could* is rendered by one of the following tenses, viz. the imperfect, preterite, compound of the present, or conditional ; and *might* by the last tense : ex.

*Je ne pouvois pas mieux faire,* I could not do better.

*Il ne put pas venir avec nous la semaine passée,* He could not come with us last week.

*Vous pourriez vous tromper aussi bien que lui,* You might mistake as well as he.

*Could, or might*, being joined to the verb *to have*, immediately followed by a participle passive, must be rendered by the compound of the conditional of the above verb, with the participle turned into the present of the infinitive mood : ex.

*J'aurois pu vous le dire hier au soir,* I could have told it to you last night.

*Vous auriez pu le faire en trois jours,* You might have done it in three days.

## SAVOIR, TO KNOW something.

### INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	<i>Savoir</i> , to know.
Part. act.	<i>Sachant</i> , knowing.
Part. pass.	<i>Su</i> , known.

### INDICATIVE.



## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Sais, sais, sait*, I know.Plur. *Savons, savez, savent*.

## Imperfect.

Sing. *Savois, savois, savoit*, I did know, or knew.Plur. *Savions, saviez, savoient*.

## Preterite.

Sing. *Sus, sus, fut*, I knew, or did know.Plur. *Sûmes, sûtes, surent*.

## Future.

Sing. *Saurai, sauras, saura*, I shall, or will, know.Plur. *Saurons, saurez, sauront*.

## Conditional.

Sing. *Saurois,\* saurois, sauroit*, I should, would, orPlur. *Saurions, sauriez, sauroient*. could, know.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Saches, sache*, know thou.Plur. *Sachons, sachez, sachent*.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Que que que Sache,† saches, sache*, that I may know.Plur. *Sachions, sachiez, sachent*.

## Preterite.

Sing. *Susse, fusses, fût*, that I might know.Plur. *Sussions, fussiez, fussent*.

\* This tense, conjugated negatively, is often Englished by *cannot* : ex.  
*Je ne saurois vous le dire, I cannot tell it to you.*

† we sometimes employ the present of the subjunctive of this verb instead of the indicative ; but it is never to be used without the negation *pas*, and most commonly in answering a question : ex.

*Le roi ira-t-il à la comédie ? Will the king go to the play ?*  
*Pas que je sache. Not that I know of.*

VALOIR,

## VALOIR, TO BE WORTH.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Valoir*, to be worth.  
 Part. act. *Valant*, being worth.  
 Part. pass. *Valu*, been worth.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Vaux*, *vaux*, *vaut*, I am worth.  
 Plur. *Valons*, *valez*, *valent*.

## Imperfect.

Sing. *Valois*, *valois*, *valoit*, I was worth.  
 Plur. *Valions*, *valiez*, *valoient*.

## Preterite.

Sing. *Valus*, *valus*, *valut*, I was worth.  
 Plur. *Valûmes*, *valûtes*, *valurent*.

## Future.

Sing. *Vaudrai*, *vaudras*, *vaudra*, I shall, or will, be  
 Plur. *Vaudrons*, *vaudrez*, *vaudront*. worth

## Conditional.

Sing. *Vaudrois*, *vaudrois*, *vaudroit*, I should, &c. be  
 Plur. *Vaudrions*, *vaudriez*, *vaudroient*. worth.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Vaux*, *vaille*, be thou worth.  
 Plur. *Valons*, *valez*, *vaillent*.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

*Que* *que* *que*  
 Sing. *Vaille*, *vailles*, *vaille*, that I may be worth.  
 Plur. *Valions*, *valiez*, *vaillent*.

## Preterite.

Sing. *Valusse*, *valusses*, *valût*, that I might be worth.  
 Plur. *Valussions*, *valussiez*, *valussent*.

The



The compound of this verb is,

*Prévaloir*, to prevail, which is conjugated as *VALOIR*; but we say much better in the present tense of the subjunctive,

*Que je préval-e, es, e ; ions, iez, ent.*

## VOIR, TO SEE.

### INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	<i>Voir</i> , to see.
Part. act.	<i>Voyant</i> , seeing.
Part. pass.	<i>Vu</i> , seen.

### INDICATIVE MOOD.

#### Present.

Sing.	<i>Vois</i> ,	<i>vois</i> ,	<i>voit</i> , I see.
Plur.	<i>Voyons</i> ,	<i>voyez</i> ,	<i>voient</i> .

#### Imperfect.

Sing.	<i>Voyois</i> ,	<i>voyois</i> ,	<i>voyoit</i> , I did see.
Plur.	<i>Voyions</i> ,	<i>voyiez</i> ,	<i>voyoient</i> .

#### Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Vis</i> ,	<i>vis</i> ,	<i>vit</i> , I saw, or did, see.
Plur.	<i>Vîmes</i> ,	<i>vîtes</i> ,	<i>virent</i> .

#### Future.

Sing.	<i>Verrai</i> ,	<i>verras</i> ,	<i>verra</i> , I shall, or will, see.
Plur.	<i>Verrons</i> ,	<i>verrez</i> ,	<i>verront</i> .

#### Conditional.

Sing.	<i>Verrois</i> ,	<i>verrois</i> ,	<i>verroit</i> , I should, &c. see.
Plur.	<i>Verrions</i> ,	<i>verriez</i> ,	<i>verroient</i> .

### IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing.	<i>Vois</i> ,	<i>voie</i> , see thou.
Plur.	<i>Voyons</i> ,	<i>voyez</i> , <i>voient</i> .

### SUBJUNCTIVE.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>	
Sing.	<i>Voie,</i>	<i>voies,</i>	<i>voie,</i>	that I may see.
Plur.	<i>Voyions,</i>	<i>voyiez,</i>	<i>voient.</i>	

## Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Visse,</i>	<i>visses,</i>	<i>vît,</i>	that I might see.
Plur.	<i>Vissions,</i>	<i>vissiez,</i>	<i>vissent.</i>	

The compounds of this verb are,

<i>Entrevoir,</i>	to have a glimpse of.	<i>Prévoir,</i>	to foresee.
<i>Revoir,</i>	to see again.	<i>Pourvoir,</i>	to provide.

*PRÉVOIR* differs from *VOIR* in the future : ex.

Sing.	<i>Prévoirai,</i>	<i>prévoiras,</i>	<i>prévoira.</i>
Plur.	<i>Prévoirons,</i>	<i>prévoirez,</i>	<i>prévoiront.</i>

And,

## Conditional.

Sing.	<i>Prévoirois,</i>	<i>prévoirois,</i>	<i>prévoiroit.</i>
Plur.	<i>Prévoirions,</i>	<i>prévoiriez,</i>	<i>prévoiroient.</i>

*POURVOIR* makes in the preterite:

Sing.	<i>Pourvus,</i>	<i>pourvus,</i>	<i>pourvut.</i>
Plur.	<i>Pourvûmes,</i>	<i>pourvûtes,</i>	<i>pourvurent.</i>

## Future.

Sing.	<i>Pourvoirai,</i>	<i>Pourvoiras,</i>	<i>pourvoira.</i>
Plur.	<i>Pourvoirons,</i>	<i>pourvoirez,</i>	<i>pourvoiront.</i>

## Conditional.

Sing.	<i>Pourvoirois,</i>	<i>pourvoirois,</i>	<i>pourvoiroit.</i>
Plur.	<i>Pourvoirions,</i>	<i>pourvoiriez,</i>	<i>pourvoiroient.</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Pourvusse,</i>	<i>pourvusses,</i>	<i>pourvût.</i>
Plur.	<i>Pourvussions,</i>	<i>pourvussiez,</i>	<i>pourvussent.</i>

*VOULOIR,*



## VOULOIR, TO BE WILLING.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Vouloir*, to be willing.  
 Part. act. *Voulant*, being willing.  
 Part. pass. *Voulu*, been willing.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Veux*, *veux*, *veut*, I am willing, or I will.  
 Plur. *Voulons*, *voulez*, *veulent*.

## Imperfect.

Sing. *Voulois*, *voulois*, *vouloit*, I was willing, or I  
 Plur. *Voulions*, *vouliez*, *vouloient*. would.

## Preterite.

Sing. *Voulus*, *voulus*, *voulut*, I was willing, or I  
 Plur. *Voulûmes*, *voulûtes*, *voulurent*. would.

## Future.

Sing. *Voudrai*, *voudras*, *voudra*, I shall be willing,  
 Plur. *Voudrons*, *voudrez*, *voudront*. or I will.

## Conditional.

Sing. *Voudrois*, *voudrois*, *voudroit*, I should be wil-  
 ling, or I would.  
 Plur. *Voudrions*, *voudriez*, *voudroient*.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD is wanting.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

*Que que que*  
 Sing. *Veuille*, *veuilles*, *veuille*, that I may be willing.  
 Plur. *Voulions*, *vouliez*, *veussent*.

## Preterite.

Sing. *Voulusse*, *voulusses*, *voulût*, that I might be  
 Plur. *Voulussions*, *voulussiez*, *voulussent*. willing.

When the words *will* or *would* express a will, choice, or deliberation, in the agent, and can be turned by *choose* or *chose*, *will* is rendered in French by the present of the indicative mood, or future of this verb : ex.

*Je veux y aller et lui parler* I will, or *choose to*, go there  
*moi-même,* and speak to him myself :  
*Il ne veut pas manger,* He will not eat, or does  
not *choose* to eat :

and *would* by one of the following tenses, viz. the imperfect, preterite, conditional, or compound of the present : ex.

*Si je voulois, je vous dirois* If I *would*, or *chose*, I could  
*où elle demeure,* tell you where she lives.  
*Il voulut absolument partir* He *would* absolutely, or ab-  
*bier,* solutely *chose* to, set out  
yesterday.

*Que voudriez-vous que je* What *would* you have me  
*fisse ?* do.

When *would* is joined to the verb *to have*, immediately followed by a participle passive, they are to be rendered by the compound of the imperfect, or compound of the conditional of the above verb, with the participle passive turned into the present of the infinitive mood : ex.

*Si j'avois voulu lui parler,* If I *would have* spoken to  
him, or *had I chosen* to  
speak to him.

*Vous n'auriez pas voulu* You *would not have* taken  
*prendre les armes, si, &c.* up arms, If, &c.

*Nous aurions pu l'arrêter si* We could have stopped  
*nous eussions voulu,* him if we *would*, or *had*  
*chosen.*

## EXERCISES ON THE FOREGOING VERBS AND THEIR COMPOUNDS.

Why do you not sit down, sir? — You  
*Pourquoi*, adv.  
come to see me very seldom. — Let us sit down upon  
*rarement*, adv.

the grass. — Do not make (so much) noise, I cannot  
*herbe*, f. *faire*, v. *tant*, adv.

learn my lesson. — Do you know what has hap-  
*apprendre*, v. *arri-*



pened to her? — As soon as he saw he could not  
*ver, v.                    Aussitôt que, c.*

make her hear reason, he went away. — We  
*entendre, v.                    s'en aller, v.*

went there ourselves, and we soon knew what she  
*bientôt, adv.*

asked. — See the letter she wrote me. — We will not  
*écrire, v.*

sit down till you have determined to set out —  
*que ne                    se déterminer, v. à*

The first time I saw your sister, she pleased me. —  
*fois, f.                    plaire, v.*

I would sit down upon the grass, if it were not so

damp. — Mrs. P. desired me to tell you she could  
*humide, adj.                    prier, v.                    dire, v.*

not come to see you this week, but she would cer-  
*semaine, f.                    cer-*

tainly come at the beginning of next  
*tainment, adv.                    commencement, m.*

month. — Cannot you lend me three or four  
*mois, m.                    prêter, v.*

guineas? — If I would, I soon could know  
*guinée, f.                    bientôt, adv.*

whether Mrs. D. has seen your aunt or not. —  
*si, c.                    tante, f.*

The last time I was in the park, I could not distin-  
 guish her on account of the trees that were between  
*à cause, p.*

her and me; (I had only a) glimpse of her. —  
*je n'ai fait que*

This cloth is not worth five shillings a yard, but its  
*drap, m.*

colour

colour becomes you very well. — Do not you see the

defects of it ? — When you know your lesson,  
*défaut, m.* (by the fut.)

come and repeat it to me. — Did you not know that  
*en répéter, v.*

Mr. A. was to marry Miss B. ? — I knew it, but  
*épouser, v.* *mais, c.*

I was not willing to tell him of it. — I believe you  
*parler, v.*

could learn your lessons much better, if you  
*apprendre, v.* *beaucoup, adv.*

would. — Could you lend me your horse for two or  
*prêter, v.*

three days ? — If your brother come with me, will he  
*jour, m.* *avec, p.*

be able to follow me ? — This room can contain  
*suivre, v.*

about a hundred people. — Could they see so great an  
*environ, p.* *personne, f.*

alteration, without being vexed (at it ?) — It is  
*changement, m.* *sans, p.* *fâché, p. p.* *en, pro.*

better to be unfortunate than criminal. — He is  
*malheureux, adj.*

incapable of commanding others who cannot command

himself. — His best coat was not worth two-pence  
*habit, m.* *sou, m.*

when he arrived from Germany. — We saw them yef-  
*Allemagne, f.* *hi-*

terday. — They did not foresee what would happen to  
*er, adv.* *arriver, v.*

them. — We ought to make a judicious choice  
*devoir, v.* *faire, v.* *judicieux, adj.* *choix, m.*  
 of



of those friends to whom we intend to give our con-  
*vouloir, v.* *con-*

fidence.—Do you know where Miss B. lives? — Yes,  
*fiance, f.* *où, adv.* *demeurer, v.*

I do (know it,) and I see her every day at her window.  
*fenêtre, f.*

— Why will you not tell it me? — She would marry  
*épouser, v.*

him in spite of all her relations.—It is for that  
*en, p.* *dépit, m.* *parent, m.* *Ce, pro.*

reason her father says he will never see her again.—  
*dire, v.*

All the finest talents reunited are not worth a virtue.—

Virtue is a quality which we cannot praise too much.  
*on, pro.* *louer, v.* *trop, adv.*

— Severity and rigour may excite fear, but not  
*Sévérité, f.* *rigueur, f.* *crainte, f.*

love — You saw with what goodness she received him.  
*amour, m.* *bonté, f.* *recevoir, v.*

— I would not tell her what I think about it, for fear  
*de, p.*

of giving her any subject of complaint. — If you foresee  
*plainte, f.*

the danger, why do you not endeavour to avoid it  
*tâcher, v.* *de éviter, v.*

— They were willing to withdraw, but your brother  
*se retirer, v.*

hindered them (from it,) and desired them to sit down  
*empêcher, v.* *prier, v.* *de*

again. — You can speak to Mr. B. whenever you  
*parler, v.* *quand, adv.*

please, but I may not take that liberty. — You  
*vouloir, v.* *prendre, v.*

know

know the esteem and friendship that I have for him ;  
*estime, f.*

you know that his father is one of my oldest friends ;  
*ancien, adj.*

you yourself know the merit of both. — He would

not sell me these buckles under four  
*vendre, v. boucle, f. à moins de, p.*

guineas. — I will not see your brother (any more,)  
*plus, adv.*

but I will see you again as soon as I can. —  
*(by the fut.)*

Every body thinks that if they would have pursued  
*poursuivre, v.*

the enemy briskly they might have ended the  
*vigoureusement, adv. finir, v.*

war on that day. — Should we see ourselves reduced  
*réduire, v.*

to so great difficulties ? — If I would have believed  
*croire, v.*

him, he would have persuaded me to go to Italy with  
*de*

him. — He could have done his work in less than  
*faire, v. en, p.*

ten minutes, if he had not amused himself by reading.  
*s'amuser, v. à lire, v.*

— If you want that book, you may take it, it is  
*avoir besoin de*

at your service. — If he sold all his horses now, the  
*à*

best of them would not be worth ten guineas. — We

might have danced till (twelve o'clock) if that  
*jusqu'à, p. minuit, m.*



had not happened. — Oh ! my children, may you be  
 happy, and never bewail the moment of your  
*heureux*, adj. *pleurer*, v.  
 birth ! — I spoke to her (a long while,) but could  
*naissance*, f. *long-tems*, adv.  
 not persuade her to come with me. — May I go  
*de*  
 and see him ? — Yes, but come back as soon as  
*aussitôt que*, c.  
 you can.  
 (by the fut.)

## VERBS OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

*ABSOUUDRE*, TO ABSOLVE, TO ACQUIT.

### INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Absoudre*, to absolve.  
 Part. act. *Absolvant*, absolving.  
 Part. pass. *Absous*, absolved.

### INDICATIVE MOOD.

#### Present.

Sing. *Absous*, *absous*, *absout*, I absolve.  
 Plur. *Absolvons*, *absolvez*, *absolvent*.

#### Imperfect.

Sing. *Absolvois*, *absolvois*, *absolvoit*, I did absolve.  
 Plur. *Absolvions*, *absolviez*, *absolvaient*.

Preterite is wanting.

#### Future.

Sing. *Absoudrai*, *absoudras*, *absoudra*, I shall, or will,  
 Plur. *Absoudrons*, *absoudrez*, *absoudront*. absolve.

#### Conditional.

Sing. *Absoudrois*, *absoudrois*, *absoudroit*, I should, &c.  
 Plur. *Absoudrions*, *absoudriez*, *absoudroient*. absolve.

### IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Absous*, *absolve*, absolve thou.  
 Plur. *Absolvons*, *absolvez*, *absolvent*.

### SUBJUNCTIVE

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Que* *Absolve*, *que* *absolves*, *que* *absolve*, that I may absolve.  
 Plur. *Absolvions*, *absolviez*, *absolvent*.

Preterite is wanting.

*SOUDRE*, TO SOLVE, the primitive of this verb, is only used in the present tense of the infinitive mood.

The other compounds are,

*Dissoudre*, to dissolve, *Résoudre*, to resolve.

*Dissoudre* has the same tenses wanting as *absoudre*,  
*Résoudre* has its participle passive, *résolu* : its preterite,

Sing. *Résolus*, *résolus*, *résolût*.

Plur. *Résolûmes*, *résolûtes*, *résolurent*.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Preterite.

Sing. *Résolusse*, *résolusses*, *résolût*.

Plur. *Résolussions*, *résolussiez*, *résolussent*.

*ASTREINDRE*, TO OBLIGE,

*ATTEINDRE*, TO REACH, TO HIT, TO ATTAIN,  
 TO OVERTAKE, and

*AVEINDRE*, TO REACH, TO FETCH OUT,  
 are conjugated as *CRAINdre*.

The three foregoing verbs grow obsolete.

*BATTRE*, TO BEAT.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Battre*, to beat.

Part. act. *Battant*, beating.

Part. pass. *Battu*, beaten.

INDICATIVE



## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Bats*, *bats*, *bat*, I beat, or am beating.Plur. *Battons*, *battez*, *battent*.

## Imperfect.

Sing. *Battois*, *battois*, *battoit*, I did beat, or was beat-Plur. *Battions*, *battiez*, *battoient*. ing.

## Preterite.

Sing. *Battis*, *battis*, *battit*, I did beat, or beat.Plur. *Battîmes*, *battîtes*, *battirent*.

## Future.

Sing. *Battrai*, *battras*, *battrà*, I shall, or will beat.Plur. *Battrons*, *battrez*, *battront*.

## Conditional.

Sing. *Battrois*, *battrois*, *battroit*, I should, &c. beat.Plur. *Battrions*, *battriez*, *battroient*.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Bats*, *batte*, beat thou.Plur. *Battons*, *battez*, *battent*.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Batte*, *battes*, *batte*, that I may beat.Plur. *Battions*, *battiez*, *battent*.

## Preterite.

Sing. *Battisse*, *battisses*, *battît*, that I might beat.Plur. *Battissions*, *battissiez*, *battissent*.

The compounds of this verb are,

*Abattre*, to pull down. *Rabattre*, to abate, to beat*Combattre*, to fight. down.*Débattre*, to debate. *Rebattre*, to beat again.*Se débattre*, to struggle.

## BOIRE, TO DRINK.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Boire*, to drink.Part. act. *Buvant*, drinking.Part. pass. *Bu*, drunk.

## INDICATIVE

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Bois*, *bois*, *boit*, I drink, or am drinking.Plur. *Buvons*, *buvez*, *boivent*.

## Imperfect.

Sing. *Buvois*, *buvois*, *buvoit*, I did drink, or wasPlur. *Buvions*, *buviez*, *buvoient*. drinking.

## Preterite.

Sing. *Bus*, *bus*, *but*, I drank, or did drink.Plur. *Bûmes*, *bûtes*, *burent*.

## Future.

Sing. *Boirai*, *boiras*, *boira*, I shall, or will drink.Plur. *Boirons*, *boirez*, *boiront*.

## Conditional.

Sing. *Boirois*, *boirois*, *boiroit*, I should, &c. drink.Plur. *Boirions*, *boiriez*, *boiroient*.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Bois*, *boive*, drink thou.Plur. *Buvons*, *buvez*, *boivent*.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Que boive*, *que boives*, *que boive*, that I may drink.Plur. *Buvions*, *buviez*, *boivent*.

## Preterite.

Sing. *Busse*, *busse*, *bût*, that I might drink.Plur. *Bussions*, *bussez*, *bussent*.N. B. *Boire dans quelque chose*, To drink out of something.*BRAIRE*, TO BRAY.

This verb is seldom used except in the present tense of the infinitive mood, and the third person singular and plural of the present, future, and conditional, of the indicative mood.

Infinitive. *Braire*, to bray.—Present, Indicative.  
*Il brait*, *ils braient*.—Future. *Il braira*, *ils brairont*.—  
 Conditional.



Conditional. *Il brairoit, ils brairoient.* — This verb expresses the discordant cry of an ass.

---

**BRUIRE**, TO ROAR, TO MAKE A GREAT NOISE.

This verb is only used in the present of the infinitive mood, and in the third person of the imperfect of the indicative : *il bruyoit, ils bruyoient.* . Its participle act. *bruyant*, is often but a mere adjective.

---

**CEINDRE**, TO GIRD,

And its compound, *Enceindre*, to enclose, to encompass, are conjugated like **CRAINdre**.

---

**CIRCONCIRE**, TO CIRCUMCISE,

is conjugated like **CONFIRE**,

but has its principle passive ending in *is* instead of *it*.

---

**CONCLURE**, TO CONCLUDE.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Conclure*, to conclude.

Part. act. *Concluant*, concluding.

Part. pass. *Conclu*, concluded.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Conclus, conclus, conclut*, I conclude.

Plur. *Concluons, concluez, concluent*.

Imperfect.

Sing. *Concluois, concluois, concluoit*, I did conclude.

Plur. *Concluions, concluez, concluoient*.

Preterite.

Sing. *Conclus, conclus, conclut*, I did conclude, or

Plur. *Conclûmes, conclûtes, conclurent*. concluded.

Future.

Sing. *Conclurai, concluras, conclura*, I shall, or will,

Plur. *Conclurons, conclurez, concluront*. conclude.

Conditional.

## Conditional.

Sing. *Conclurois, conclurois, concluroit*, I should, &c.  
 Plur. *Conclurions, concluriez, concluroient.* conclude.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Conclus, conclue*, conclude thou.  
 Plur. *Concluions, concluez, concluent.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Que que que* *Conclue, conclues, conclue*, that I may con-  
 Plur. *Concluions, concluez, concluent.* clude.

## Preterite.

Sing. *Conclusse, conclusses, conclût*, that I might con-  
 Plur. *Conclussions, conclussiez, conclussent.* clude.

**CONDUIRE**, TO CONDUCT, TO LEAD, TO CARRY.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Conduire*, to conduct.  
 Part. act. *Conduisant*, conducting.  
 Part. pass. *Conduit*, conducted.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Conduis, conduis, conduit*, I lead, &c.  
 Plur. *Conduisons, conduisez, conduisent.*

## Imperfect.

Sing. *Conduisois, conduisois, conduisoit*, I did lead.  
 Plur. *Conduisions, conduisiez, conduisoient.*

## Preterite.

Sing. *Conduisis, conduisis, conduisit*, I lead.  
 Plur. *Conduisîmes, conduisîtes, conduisirent.*

## Future.

Sing. *Conduirai, conduiras, conduira*, I shall, or will  
 Plur. *Conduirons, conduirez, conduiront.* lead.

## Conditional.

Sing. *Conduirois, conduirois, conduiroit*, I should, &c.  
 Plur. *Conduirions, conduiriez, conduiroient.* lead.

## IMPERATIVE



## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Conduis, conduise, lead thou.*  
 Plur. *Conduisons, conduisez, conduisent.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

*Que que que*  
 Sing. *Conduise, conduises, conduise, that I may lead.*  
 Plur. *Conduissions, conduisiez, conduisent.*

## Preterite.

Sing. *Conduisisse, conduisisses, conduisît, that I might*  
 Plur. *Conduisissions, conduisissiez, conduisissent. lead.*

Its compound is,  
*Reconduire, to lead again.*

## CONFIRE, TO PRESERVE.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Confire, to preserve.*  
 Part. act. *Confisant, preserving.*  
 Part. pass. *Confit, preserved.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Confis, confis, confit, I preserve.*  
 Plur. *Confisons, confisez, confisent.*

## Imperfect.

Sing. *Confisois, confisois, confisoit, I did preserve.*  
 Plur. *Confissions, confisiez, confisoient.*

## Preterite.

Sing. *Confis, confis, confit, I preserved.*  
 Plur. *Confîmes, confîtes, confirent.*

## Future.

Sing. *Confirai, confiras, confira, I shall, or will pre-*  
 Plur. *Confirons, confirez, confiront. serve.*

## Conditional.

Sing. *Confirois, confirois, confiroit, I should, &c. pre-*  
 Plur. *Confirions, confiriez, confiroient. serve.*

## IMPERATIVE

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Confis, confise, preserve thou.*  
 Plur. *Confisons confisez, confisent.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Que Confise, que confises, que confise, that I may preserve.*  
 Plur. *Confissions, confisiez, confisent.*

## Preterite.

Sing. *Confisse, confisses, confît, that I might preserve.*  
 Plur. *Confissions, confissiez, confissent.*

**CONNOITRE, TO KNOW, TO BE ACQUAINTED WITH, somebody.**

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Connoître, to know.*  
 Part. act. *Connoissant, knowing.*  
 Part. pass. *Connu, known.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Connais, connois, connoît, I know.*  
 Plur. *Connoissons, connoissez, connoissent.*

## Imperfect.

Sing. *Connoissois, connoissois, connoissoit, I did know.*  
 Plur. *Connoissions, connoissiez, connoissoient.*

## Preterite.

Sing. *Connus, connus, connût, I knew.*  
 Plur. *Connûmes, connûtes, connurent.*

## Future.

Sing. *Connoîtrai, connoîtras, connoîtra, I shall, &c.*  
 Plur. *Connoîtrons, connoîtrez, connoîtront. know.*

## Conditional.

Sing. *Connoîtrois, connoîtrois, connoîtroit, I should, &c.*  
 Plur. *Connoîtrions, connoîtriez, connoîtroient. know.*

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Connais, connoisse, know thou.*  
 Plur. *Connoissons, connoissez, connoissent.*

X

SUBJUNCTIVE



## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>	
Sing.	<i>Connoisse,</i>	<i>connoisses,</i>	<i>connoisse,</i>	that I may know.
Plur.	<i>Connoissions,</i>	<i>connoissiez,</i>	<i>connoissent.</i>	

## Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Connusse,</i>	<i>connusses,</i>	<i>connût,</i>	that I might know
Plur.	<i>Connussions,</i>	<i>connussiez,</i>	<i>connussent.</i>	

The compounds of this verb are,  
*Méconnoître*, to take for another.      *Reconnoître*, to acknowledge, to know again.

---

*CONSTRUIRE*, TO CONSTRUCT, TO BUILD,  
 is conjugated as *CONDUIRE*.

---



---

*CONTRAINDRE*, TO CONSTRAIN, TO COMPEL,  
 TO FORCE,  
 is conjugated as *CRAINdre*.

---



---

*COUDRE*, TO SEW, TO STITCH.

---

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	<i>Coudre</i> , to sew.
Part. act.	<i>Cousant</i> , sewing.
Part. pass.	<i>Coufu</i> , sewed.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing.	<i>Couds,</i>	<i>couds,</i>	<i>coud,</i>	I sew, or am sewing.
Plur.	<i>Cousons,</i>	<i>cousez,</i>	<i>cousent.</i>	

## Imperfect.

Sing.	<i>Cousois,</i>	<i>cusois,</i>	<i>cousoit,</i>	I did sew, or was sewing.
Plur.	<i>Cousions,</i>	<i>cousiez,</i>	<i>cousoient.</i>	

## Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Cousis,</i>	<i>cousis,</i>	<i>cousit,</i>	I sewed.
Plur.	<i>Cousîmes,</i>	<i>cousîtes,</i>	<i>cousirent.</i>	

## Future.

## Future.

Sing. *Coudrai, coudras, coudra*, I shall, or will sew.Plur. *Coudrons, coudrez, coudront*.

## Conditional.

Sing. *Coudrois, coudrois, coudroit*, I should, &c. sew.Plur. *Coudrions, coudriez, coudroient*.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Couds, couse*, sew thou.Plur. *Cousons, cousez, coustent*.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Que couse, que couses, que couse*, that I may sew.Plur. *Coufions, coufiez, coustent*.

## Preterite.

Sing. *Coufisse, coufisses, coustît*, that I might sew.Plur. *Coufissions, coufissiez, coufissent*.

Its compounds are,

*Découdre*, to unsew. *Recoudre*, to sew again.EXERCISES ON THE FOREGOING VERBS  
AND THEIR COMPOUNDS.I know several persons in this country who  
*plusieurs*, adj. *pays*, m.speak as good French, as if they had been brought  
*bien*, adv.up in France. — Do you know Mr. A. ? —  
*vécu*, p. p.Yes, we know him very well ; and, though he be  
*Oui*, adv.rich, I assure you he is not the more charitable for  
it. — He has been beaten (soundly) — If you  
*comme il faut*.knew the question, you would resolve it in two  
*question*, f.

words.



words. — I will soon conclude, if you think *as*  
*not, m.* *comme, adv.*

your brother does. — We should beat them, if they  
 did not fight in their own *country.* — Do not  
*propre, adj.*

beat him any more, he acknowledges his fault. —  
*faute, f.*

We ran for *above* two hours ; but, at last,  
*pendant, p. plus de, adv.* *enfin, adv.*

your brother overtook him, and brought him back. —  
*ramener, v.*

You would never see him again, if you knew him. —

He struggled a long while, but he was soon obliged  
*tems, m.*

to (cry for) mercy. — This mortification has pulled  
*de demander, v. grâce, f.*

down his pride, I assure you ; however, the judge  
*cependant, adv.*

has acquitted him of the accusation *falsely*  
*faussetment, adv.*

brought against him. — Mr. R. told me some time  
*intenté, p.p. contre, p.*

ago that he would build a ship on a new plan. —

What will you drink ? — I will drink nothing but  
*ne que*

water. — Do not drink so much. — If your fa-  
*tant, ad.*

ther were here, you would not drink (at all.) —  
*du tout.*

Let us fill our glasses and drink our friend's health. —  
*verre, m.* *santé, f.*

We beat them because our troops were better dis-  
*parceque, c.* *dis-*

ciplined than theirs. — Come with us, we shall  
*cipliné, p. p.*

see whether she will know you again or not. — If you  
*si, c.*

knew her, I am certain she would please you. —  
*plaire, v.*

The English drink as much tea as the Venetians  
*autant, adv. thé, m. Vénitien, m.*

drink coffee. — After tea we conducted the ladies  
*café, m.*

to the concert. — When they had explained to us

all that had passed, we acknowledged we (were in the  
*se passer, v.* *avoir*

wrong.) — Your brother's coat was torn,  
*tort.* *déchirer, v.*

but our tailor sewed it up again very skilfully,  
*tailleur, m.* *adroitement, adv.*

— Unsew that gown. — I will sew it to-mor-

row. — The Jews and Mahometans circumcise  
*Juif, m. Mahométan, m.*

their children a few days after their birth. — Why  
*peu, adv.* *naissance, f.*

do you not preserve some fruits this year? — He could  
*année, f.*

not know you if he saw you now. — Did you ask  
*à-présent, adv.*

him whether he were acquainted with any of these  
*si, c.*

ladies? — I know Mr. Y. but I do not trust to  
*se fier, v.*



him. — You will force your father to punish you,  
à

if you do not behave better. — The last time  
*se comporter, v.*

we went to Vauxhall, we drank three bottles of Cham-  
paign wine. — The enemies beat us on the eigh-

teenth, but we beat them again two days after. —

What will you drink, ladies? — We shall willingly  
*madame, f. volon-*

ly drink some wine; for, we have not drunk  
*tiers, adv.*

any since our departure from France. — Drink,  
*depuis, p. départ, m.*

saïd she to me, out of that cup, the only token  
*coupe, f. seul, adj. marque, f.*

which your father has left us of his love. — I  
*laisser, v. affection, f.*

would have preserved some fruits this year, but sugar

is too dear. — Thence we concluded you could  
*trop, adv. De là, adv.*

not come to-day. — I know nobody in this neighbour-  
*voisi-*

hood. — I knew your sister again as soon as I saw her.  
*nage, m.*

— Though you should take three dozen of them,  
*Quand, c. douzaine, f.*

I could not abate a farthing. — The wind was so  
*liard, m. vent, m.*

great it has thrown down one or two trees in our  
garden.

CRAINDRE,

## CRAINdre, TO FEAR, TO BE AFRAID.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Craindre*, to fear.  
 Part. act. *Craignant*, fearing.  
 Part. pass. *Craint*, feared.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Crains*, *crains*, *craint*, I fear, or am afraid.  
 Plur. *Craignons*, *craignez*, *craignent*.

## Imperfect.

Sing. *Craignois*, *craignois*, *craignoit*, I did fear, or  
 Plur. *Craignons*, *craigniez*, *craignoient*. was afraid.

## Preterite.

Sing. *Craignis*, *craignis*, *craignit*, I feared.  
 Plur. *Craignîmes*, *craignîtes*, *craignirent*.

## Future.

Sing. *Craindrai*, *craindras*, *craindra*, I shall, or will,  
 Plur. *Craindrons*, *craindrez*, *craindront*. fear.

## Conditional.

Sing. *Craindrois*, *craindrois*, *craindroit*, I should, &c.  
 Plur. *Craindrions*, *craindriez*, *craindroient*. fear.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Crains*, *craigne*, fear thou.  
 Plur. *Craignons*, *craignez*, *craignent*.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

*Que* *que* *que*  
 Sing. *Craigne*, *craignes*, *craigne*, that I may fear.  
 Plur. *Craignons*, *craigniez*, *craignent*.

## Preterite.

Sing. *Craignisse*, *craignisses*, *craignît*, that I might  
 Plur. *Craignissions*, *craignissiez*, *craignissent*. fear.

CROIRE,



## CROIRE, TO BELIEVE.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	<i>Croire</i> , to believe.
Part. act.	<i>Croyant</i> , believing.
Part. pass.	<i>Cru</i> , believed.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing.	<i>Crois</i> ,	<i>crois</i> ,	<i>croit</i> ,	I believe.
Plur.	<i>Croyons</i> ,	<i>croyez</i> ,	<i>croient</i> .	

## Imperfect.

Sing.	<i>Croyois</i> ,	<i>croyois</i> ,	<i>croyoit</i> ,	I did believe.
Plur.	<i>Croyions</i> ,	<i>croyiez</i> ,	<i>croyoient</i> .	

## Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Crus</i> ,	<i>crus</i> ,	<i>crut</i> ,	I believed.
Plur.	<i>Crûmes</i> ,	<i>crûtes</i> ,	<i>crurent</i> .	

## Future.

Sing.	<i>Croirai</i> ,	<i>croiras</i> ,	<i>croira</i> ,	I shall, or will, believe.
Plur.	<i>Croirons</i> ,	<i>croirez</i> ,	<i>croiront</i> .	

## Conditional.

Sing.	<i>Croirois</i> ,	<i>croirois</i> ,	<i>croiroit</i> ,	I should, &c. believe.
Plur.	<i>Croirions</i> ,	<i>croiriez</i> ,	<i>croiroient</i> .	

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing.	<i>Crois</i> ,	<i>croie</i> ,	believe thou.
Plur.	<i>Croyons</i> ,	<i>croyez</i> ,	<i>croient</i> .

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>	
Sing.	<i>Croie</i> ,	<i>croies</i> ,	<i>croie</i> ,	that I may believe.
Plur.	<i>Croyions</i> ,	<i>croyiez</i> ,	<i>croient</i> .	

## Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Crusse</i> ,	<i>crusses</i> ,	<i>crût</i> ,	that I might believe.
Plur.	<i>Crussions</i> ,	<i>crussiez</i> ,	<i>crussent</i> .	

CROITRE,

**CROITRE, TO GROW,**

And its compounds,

*Accroître*, to accrue,      *Recroître*, to grow again,*Décroître*, to decrease, to

grow less,

are conjugated like **CONNOITRE**.**CUIRE, TO BAKE, TO BOIL, often Englished by****TO DO,**And its compound *Recuire*, to boil again,**DEDUIRE, TO DEDUCT, TO ABATE,**and **DETRUIRE, TO DESTROY,**are conjugated like **CONDUIRE**.**DIRE, TO SAY, TO TELL.****INFINITIVE MOOD.**Present.      *Dire*, to say.Part. act.      *Disant*, saying.Part. pass.      *Dit*, said.**INDICATIVE MOOD.****Present.**Sing. *Dis*,      *dis*,      *dit*, I say, or am saying.Plur. *Disons*,      *dites*,\*      *disent*.**Imperfect.**Sing. *Disois*,      *disois*,      *disoit*, I did say, or was saying.Plur. *Disions*,      *disiez*,      *disoient*.**Preterite.**Sing. *Dis*,      *dis*,      *dit*, I did say, or said.Plur. *Dîmes*,      *dîtes*,      *dirent*.**Future.**Sing. *Dirai*,      *dirai*,      *dira*, I shall, or will, say.Plur. *Durons*,      *direz*,      *diront*.**Conditional.**Sing. *Dirois*,      *dirois*,      *diroit*, I should, &c. say.Plur. *Dirions*,      *diriez*,      *diroient*.**IMPERATIVE**



## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Dis, dise, say thou.*  
 Plur. *Disons, dites,\* disent.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>	
Sing.	<i>Dise,</i>	<i>dises,</i>	<i>dise,</i>	that I may say.
Plur.	<i>Disons,</i>	<i>disiez,</i>	<i>disent.</i>	

## Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Disse,</i>	<i>dissez,</i>	<i>dît,</i>	that I might say.
Plur.	<i>Dissions,</i>	<i>dissiez,</i>	<i>dissent.</i>	

The compounds of this verb are,

<i>Contredire,</i> to contradict.	<i>Interdire,</i> to interdict, to forbid.
<i>Se dédire,</i> to unsay, to retract, to recant.	<i>Prédire,</i> to foretell.
<i>Médire de,</i> to slander, to speak ill.	<i>Redire,</i> to say, or tell, again.
<i>Maudire,</i> to curse.	

**ECLORRE,** TO HATCH, TO OPEN, TO COME  
TO LIFE.

This verb is seldom used but in the infinitive mood, present tense, and the third persons of the following tenses.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Eclorre,* to open, to hatch, to come to life.  
 Part. pass. *Eclos.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Il éclot.*  
 Plur. *Ils éclosent.*

## Future.

Sing. *Il éclorra.*  
 Plur. *Ils éclorront.*

\* All the above compounds (*Redire* excepted, which is conjugated like its primitive) make *isez* instead of *ites*; and *Maudire* doubles its *s* through the whole verb; ex. *Nous maudissons, vous maudissez, ils maudissent, &c.*

Conditional.

## Conditional.

Sing. *Il écloorroit.*Plur. *Ils eclorroient.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Qu'il éclosse.*Plur. *Qu'ils éclosent.*

It is only used when speaking of oviparous animals, or of flowers.

The primitive of the above verb is *Clorre*, to shut, to surround, and another compound, *Enclorre*, to shut, to surround, with walls, hedges, or ditches.

*ECRIRE*, TO WRITE.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present. *Ecrire*, to write.Part. act. *Ecrivant*, writing.Part. pass. *Ecrit*, written.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Ecris, écris, écrit*, I write, or am writing.Plur. *Ecrivons, écrivez, écrivent.*

## Imperfect.

Sing. *Ecrivois, écrivois, écrivait*, I did write, or wasPlur. *Ecrivions, écriviez, écrivoient.* writing.

## Preterite.

Sing. *Ecrivis, écrivis, écrivit*, I wrote, or did write.Plur. *Ecrivîmes, écrivîtes, écrivirent.*

## Future.

Sing. *Ecrirai, écriras, écrira*, I shall, or will, write.Plur. *Ecrivons, écrirez, écriront.*

## Conditional.

Sing. *Ecrirois, écrirois, écrirait*, I should, &c. write.Plur. *Ecrivions, écriviez, écriraient.*

## IMPERATIVE



## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Ecris, écrive*, write thou.  
 Plur. *Ecrivons, écrivez, écrivent*.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

*Que que que*  
 Sing. *Écrive, écrives, écrive*, that I may write.  
 Plur. *Ecrivions, écriviez, écrivent*.

## Preterite.

Sing. *Ecrivisse, écrivisses, écrivit*, that I might write.  
 Plur. *Ecrivissions, écrivissiez, écrivissent*.

The compounds of this verb are,

<i>Décrire</i> , to describe.	<i>Proscrire</i> , to proscribe, to
<i>Inscrire</i> , to inscribe.	outlaw, to banish.
<i>Prescrire</i> , to prescribe.	<i>Souscrire</i> , to subscribe.
	<i>Transcrire</i> , to transcribe.

*ENDUIRE*, TO DO OVER,  
 is conjugated like *CONDUIRE*.

*ETEINDRE*, TO PUT OUT,  
 is conjugated like *CRAINdre*.

*EXCLURE*, TO EXCLUDE,  
 is conjugated like *CONCLURE*.

Its participle passive is *exclus*.

*FAIRE*, TO MAKE, TO DO.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Faire* to make.  
 Part. act. *Faisant*, making.  
 Part. pass. *Fait*, made.

## INDICATIVE

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Fais, fais, fait*, I make, or am making.Plur. *Faisons, faites, font*.

## Imperfect.

Sing. *Faisois, faisois, faisoit*, I did make, or was ma-Plur. *Faisions, faisiez, faisoient*. king.

## Preterite.

Sing. *Fis, fis, fit*, I made, or did make.Plur. *Fîmes, fîtes, firent*.

## Future.

Sing. *Ferai, feras, fera*, I shall, or will, make.Plur. *Ferons, ferez, feront*.

## Conditional.

Sing. *Ferois, ferois, feroit*, I should, &c. make.Plur. *Ferions, feriez, feroient*.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Fais, fasse*, make thou.Plur. *Faisons, faites, fassent*.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Que Fasse, que fasses, que fasse*, that I may make.Plur. *Fassions, fassiez, fassent*.

## Preterite.

Sing. *Fisse, fisses, fît*, that I might make.Plur. *Fissions, fissiez, fissent*.

The compounds of this verb are,

*Contrefaire*, to counterfeit, *Refaire*, to do, or make  
to mimic. up, again.*Défaire*, to undo.*Redéfaire*, to undo again.*Se défaire*, to get rid of.  
to part with.*Satisfaire*, to satisfy.*Surfaire*, to exact, to ask  
too much.



*FEINDRE*, TO FEIGN, TO DISSEMBLE,  
TO PRETEND,  
is conjugated like *CRAINdre*.

---

*FRIRE*, TO FRY.

This verb is more elegantly used in its present infinitive with the verb *faire* conjugated : ex.

Faites frire *ce poisson*, Fry that fish.

Its participle passive is *frit*, fried.

---

*INDUIRE*, TO INDUCE,  
*INSTRUIRE*, TO INSTRUCT,  
and *INTRODUIRE*, TO INTRODUCE,  
are conjugated like *CONDUIRE*.

---

*JOINDRE*, TO JOIN,  
and its compound, *Enjoindre*, to enjoin,  
are conjugated like *CRAINdre*.

---

*LIRE*, TO READ.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Lire*, to read.

Part. act. *Lisant*, reading.

Part. pass. *Lu*, read.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Lis*, *lis*, *lit*, I read, or am reading.

Plur. *Lisons*, *lisez*, *lisent*.

Imperfect.

## Imperfect.

Sing. *Lisois, lisois, lisoit*, I did read, or was reading;  
 Plur. *Lisions, lisiez, lisoient*.

## Preterite.

Sing. *Lus, lus, lut*, I did read, or read.  
 Plur. *Lûmes, lûtes, lurent*.

## Future.

Sing. *Lirai, liras, lira*, I shall, or will, read.  
 Plur. *Lirons, lirez, liront*.

## Conditional.

Sing. *Lirois, lirois, liroit*, I should, would, &c. read..  
 Plur. *Lirions, liriez, liroient*.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Lis, lise*, read thou.  
 Plur. *Lisons, lisez, lisent*.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

*Que que que*  
 Sing. *Lise, lises, lise*, that I may read.  
 Plur. *Lisions, lisiez, lisent*.

## Preterite.

Sing. *Lusse, lusses, lût*, that I might read.  
 Plur. *Lussions, lussiez, lussent*.

Its compounds are,

*Elire*, to elect. *Relire*, to read again.

*LUIRE*, TO SHINE,

and its compound *Reluire*, to glitter,  
 are conjugated as *CONDUIRE* ;

But take no *t* at the end of their participle passive : ex.

*Lui*, shined.

*METIRE*,



*METTRE*,\* TO PUT.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Mettre*, to put.  
 Part. act. *Mettant*, putting.  
 Part. pass. *Mis*, put.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Mets*, *mets*, *met*, I put, or am putting.  
 Plur. *Mettons*, *mettez*, *mettent*.

## Imperfect.

Sing. *Mettois*, *mettois*, *mettoit*, I did put, or was putting.  
 Plur. *Mettions*, *mettiez*, *mettoient*.

## Preterite.

Sing. *Mis*, *mis*, *mit*, I did put, or put.  
 Plur. *Mîmes*, *mîmes*, *mirent*.

## Future.

Sing. *Mettrai*, *mettras*, *mettra*, I shall, or will, put.  
 Plur. *Mettrons*, *mettrez*, *mettront*.

## Conditional.

Sing. *Mettrois*, *mettrois*, *mettroit*, I should, would,  
 Plur. *Mettrions*, *mettriez*, *mettroient*. &c. put.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Mets*, *mette*, put thou.  
 Plur. *Mettons*, *mettez*, *mettent*.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

*Que* *que* *que*  
 Sing. *Mette*, *mettes*, *mette*, that I may put.  
 Plur. *Mettions*, *mettiez*, *mettent*.

\* *Mettre*, when conjugated as a reflexive verb, expresses a beginning or continuation of an action or application; it is then constantly followed by the particle *à* and an infinitive mood. It is rendered, in English, by the verb *to begin*: ex.

*Toutes les fois qu'il la voit, il se met à rire,* Every time he sees her, he begins laughing.

*Il s'est mis tout de bon à étudier,* He has begun to study in earnest  
 Preterite.

## Preterite.

Sing. *Missé*, *misses*, *mît*, that I might put.Plur. *Missions*, *missiez*, *missent*.

The compounds of this verb are,

*Admettre*, to admit. *Permettre*, to permit.*Commettre*, to commit. *Promettre*, to promise.\**Compromettre*, to compromise. *Remettre*, to deliver up, to put back again, to re-*Démettre*, to turn out, to remove. *Collecter*, to collect, to put off. *Soumettre*, to submit.*Se démettre de*, to resign. *Transmettre*, to transmit!*Omettre*, to omit.

## MOUDRE, TO GRIND.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Moudre*, to grind.Part. act. *Moulant*, grinding.Part. pass. *Moulu*, ground.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Mous*, *mous*, *mout*, I grind, or am grinding.Plur. *Moulons*, *moulez*, *moulent*.

## Imperfect.

Sing. *Moulois*, *moulois*, *mouldit*, I did grind, or wasPlur. *Moulions*, *mouliez*, *mouloient*. grinding.

## Preterite.

Sing. *Moulus*, *moulus*, *moulut*, I ground, or didPlur. *Moulûmes*, *moulûtes*, *moulurent*. grind!

## Future.

Sing. *Moudrai*, *moudras*, *moudra*, I shall, or will, grind.Plur. *Moudrons*, *moudrez*, *moudront*.

\* The participle of this verb (promising), when used adjectively, and expressing the mental qualities of somebody, is rendered in French, by *qui promet*, or *promettoit*, *beaucoup*, or *dont il y a*, or *avoit*, *beaucoup à espérer*: ex.

*Major A. étoit un officier qui promettoit beaucoup, or dont il y avoit beaucoup à espérer.* Major A. was a very promising officer.



## Conditional.

Sing. *Moudrois, moudrois, moudroit*, I should, would,  
 Plur. *Moudrions, moudriez, moudroient*. &c. grind.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Mous, moule*, grind them.  
 Plur. *Moulons, moulez, moulent*.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

*Que que que*  
 Sing. *Moule, moules, moule*, that I may grind.  
 Plur. *Moulions, mouliez, moulent*.

## Preterite.

Sing. *Moulusse, moulusses, moulût*, that I might grind.  
 Plur. *Moulussions, moulussiez, moulussent*.

The compounds of this verb are,  
*Emoudre*, to whet. *Remoudre*, to grind again.

EXERCISES UPON THE FOREGOING VERBS  
AND THEIR COMPOUNDS.

Do not fear to tell her what you think of it. — I  
*de penser, v.*  
 will speak to her to oblige you, but I know she does  
*pour, p.*  
 not fear me. — Why do you not believe me? — They  
 (are afraid) of being exposed to some dangers. — We  
*être, v.*  
 would not believe him, though he should tell the  
*quand, c.*  
 truth. — You should not speak so imprudently before  
*vérité, f. devant, p.*  
 Mr. I know not whom, who flanders every body. —

These

These flowers would grow much better if you watered  
*fleur, f.* *arroser, v.*

them oftener. — Put out the candle, and do not pretend  
 to sleep. — Were I in town, I would tell them all that  
*de* *en, p.*

I know (about it) — Say nothing to her, believe me.  
*en, pro.* *ne rien*

— I will tell it to you to-morrow. — I esteem your  
*estimer, v.*

daughter much, because she told me sincerely that she  
 would do neither. — They, who say all they know, will

readily say what they do not know. — Tell the  
*volontiers, adv.*

truth with modesty : they, who do not love it, will  
 always respect and fear it. — If I see your father, shall

I tell him you are afraid of not succeeding ? — Do you  
 think me capable of forgetting my friends so soon ? —  
*oublier, v.*

You always contradict me when I speak. — It is  
 prudent and humane not to speak ill of any body ; but

it is a meanness to speak ill of your benefactors. —  
*basseffe, f.* *bienfatieur, m.*

We often do good to those who are not worthy  
*souvent, adv.* *bien, m.*

of it, and harm to those who do not deserve it. —  
*mal, m.* *mériter, v.*

Will you tell me, after this, that I am not your  
*après, p.* *que, c.*  
 friend ?



friend ?—I hope she will not tell them what happened to me yesterday.—I was telling it yesterday to several friends of mine, and every body began crying. —

I do not like Miss D. because she speaks ill of every  
*parce que, c.*

body.—Her father has transmitted her all his fortune, but not his virtues.—Sylla proscribed above four  
*plus de, adv.*

thousand Roman citizens.—Does Mr. R. write to you  
*citoyen, m.*

(now and then) from Paris ?——Do you know his  
*de tems en tems, adv.*

direction ?—Would you not write to him if you knew  
*adresse, f.*

it ? —We were writing while they slept.—If  
*pendant que, c.*

your brother come here, detain him, and tell him that

I have something to shew him. — The last time they  
*à faire voir*

wrote to him, they desired him to send them the invoice  
*prier, v. de facture, f.*

of the goods, and he has still omitted it in this  
*encore, adv.*

letter. — What are you doing now ? —— I am ma-  
*maintenant, adv.*

king a cap for your sister. — Do not do that, I will do it myself. — I would do it with all my heart if I could.

—What would you have done, if you had been in  
*de si, c. à, p. my*

my place? — Why do you not fry that fish? — The  
first time you come to see me, I will shew you  
*fois, f.* (by the fut.)

some flowers in my garden which will surprise you.  
*surprendre, v.*

— Silk-worms generally hatch at the beginning of  
*Soie, f. ver, m.*

the spring. — Before the invention of water and  
*printems, m.*

wind mills our forefathers were obliged to grind  
*ancêtre, m. de*

corn in mortars. — These rose-trees grow per-  
*grain, m. mortier, m. rosier, m. à vue*

ceptibly, and those tulips would soon open, if it  
*d'œil, adv.*

were a little warmer. — Though they should  
*faisoit, v. chaud, adj. Quand, c.*

deduct ten per cent. they still would get  
*encore, adv. gagner, v.*

enough. — I never buy any thing at Mr. P —'s;  
*acheter, v.*

for, he always asks too much for his goods. — I  
*car, c. marchandise, f.*

will undo my gown tomorrow, and do it up again  
immediately. — The first time you mimic any  
*sur-le-champ, adv. (by the fut.)*

one, I will punish you severely. — I would introduce

your sister to Mrs. F. if I knew her. — She would

consent to that, if you would promise her to come  
*de*

here.



here.—They were playing while you instructed them.

—You truly join what is useful to what is  
*vraiment*, adv.

agreeable.—Did not our foldiers join dexterity to  
*adrefse*, f,

valour? —If you do not take great care of your  
*prendre*, v.

flowers, the froft will deftroy them. — Mr. S. fays  
*gelée*, f.

he will get rid of his horfe at the beginning of  
*commencement*, m.

next month. — You would put out the fire, if, &c.

—Undo that, and make it up again before dinner.  
*avant*, p.

— Your daughter joins to the love of ftudy the defire  
of furpaffing her companions. — Always virtuous,  
*compagne*, f.

ftill handsome, fhe makes herfelf more enemies  
*toujours*, adv.

than friends ; but a day will come, when every body  
*que*, c.

will do her the juftice fhe deferves. — She reads  
*rendre*, v. *mériter*, v.

the Hiftory of England every day from three o'clock  
*heure*, f.

to five.— I will read your letter as foon as I  
*jufqu' à*, p.

am drefled. — The inhabitants of W —  
(by the fut.) *habillé*, p.p.

have elected Mr. X. for their representative in parlia-  
*repréfentant*, m.

ment.

ment. — I was reading Marmontel's Tales when you  
*Conte, m.*

came in. — Mr. R. wrote to me some time ago, that,  
*entrer, v.*

when he was in London, the Earl of E ——— told  
*Comte, m.*

him we should soon see a great change in the  
*changement, m.*

ministry. ——— He often writes to me, and always con-  
*ministère, m.*

cludes his letters thus : (Be so kind as to) send me some  
*Avoir la bonté de*

news, whatever they be. — Put these books in their

places again. — I believe he did it through spite. —  
*par, p. dépit, m.*

Shall I put another trimming to your gown ? — I read  
*garniture, f.*

last year a very good book, but I cannot remember the

author's name. — What grammar do you read ? ———

Whatever merit a master has, he cannot succeed in  
*à, p.*

teaching young people, if he do not join practice to

theory. — I would put all your china in that closet,  
*porcelaine, f. cabinet, m.*

if I had the key of it. — You could not do it in ten

days, if I did not help you. — We would not per-  
*aider, v.*

mit him to go out, though they would. — Why do you  
*de quand, c.*

not



not abstain from wine, since it hurts you ? — He  
*puisque, c. faire mal.*

promised to pay me the tenth of this month, but he has  
 now put me off to the third of December. — He sub-  
 mitted to it with the greatest patience. — You promise  
 enough, but you seldom keep your word. — Mr.  
*rarement, adv. tenir, v.*

D. is a very promising young man. — It is he who  
*Ce, pro.*

told me, that, before the invention of water and wind  
 mills, the ancients used to grind corn in mor-  
*de grain, m. mor-*  
 tars. — Will they not admit Mr. Z. into their society ? —  
*tier, m.*

The English fleets have performed actions worthy to  
*faire, v.*

be transmitted to posterity. — Your brother promises  
 me every day to amend, but, &c. — Were I their  
*de se corriger, v.*

master, I would not permit them to go out to-day. — I  
*de*  
 was writing to you when your servant brought me your  
 letter.

### NAÎTRE, TO BE BORN, TO RISE.

#### INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	<i>Naître</i> , to be born.
Part. act.	<i>Naissant</i> , being born, rising.
Part. pass.	<i>Né</i> , been born.

#### INDICATIVE

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Nais*, *nais*, *nait*, I am born.Plur. *Naïssons*, *naïssiez*, *naïssent*.

## Imperfect.

Sing. *Naïssois*, *naïssois*, *naïssoit*, I was born.Plur. *Naïssions*, *naïssiez*, *naïssaient*.

## Preterite.

Sing. *Naquis*, *naquis*, *naquit*, I was born.Plur. *Naquîmes*, *naquîtes*, *naquirent*.

## Future.

Sing. *Naîtrai*, *naîtras*, *naîtra*, I shall, or will, be born.Plur. *Naîtrons*, *naîtrez*, *naîtront*.

## Conditional.

Sing. *Naîtrois*, *naîtrois*, *naîtroit*, I should, &c. bePlur. *Naîtrions*, *naîtriez*, *naîtroient*. born.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Nais*, *naïsse*, be thou born.Plur. *Naïssons*, *naïssiez*, *naïssent*.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Que* *que* *que* *Naiſſe*, *naiſſes*, *naiſſe*, that I may be born.Plur. *Naïſſions*, *naïſſiez*, *naïſſent*.

## Preterite.

Sing. *Naquiſſe*, *naquiſſes*, *naquiſſe*, that I might bePlur. *Naquiſſions*, *naquiſſiez*, *naquiſſent*. born.

The compound of this verb is,

*Renaître*, to be born again, to revive.**NUIRE, TO HURT,**is conjugated like *CONDUIRE*, but makes, in its participle passive, *nui*.



## OINDRE, TO ANOINT.

This verb is seldom used, except in speaking of sacred ceremonies wherein oil is made use of. It is conjugated like *CRAINdre*.

*PAITRE*, TO FEED, TO GRAZE,

*PAROITRE*, TO APPEAR, TO SEEM,

and its compounds,

*Comparoitre*, to appear, to *Disparoitre*, to disappear, make one's evidence,

are conjugated like *CONNOITRE*.

*PEINDRE*, TO PAINT, TO DRAW,

*PLAINdre*, TO PITY,

and *Se plaindre*, to complain,

are conjugated like *CRAINdre*.

*PLAIRE*, TO PLEASE.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	<i>Plaire</i> , to please.
art. act.	<i>Plaisant</i> , pleasing.
Part. pass.	<i>Plu</i> , pleased.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing.	<i>Plais</i> ,	<i>plais</i> ,	<i>plait</i> ,	I please.
Plur.	<i>Plaisons</i> ,	<i>plaisez</i> ,	<i>plaisent</i> .	

## Imperfect.

Sing.	<i>Plaisois</i> ,	<i>plaisois</i> ,	<i>plaisoit</i> ,	I did please, or was
Plur.	<i>Plaisions</i> ,	<i>plaisiez</i> ,	<i>plaisoient</i> .	pleasing.

## Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Plus</i> ,	<i>plus</i> ,	<i>plut</i> ,	I pleased, or did please.
Plur.	<i>Plûmes</i> ,	<i>plûtes</i> ,	<i>plurent</i> .	

## Future.

Sing.	<i>Plairai</i> ,	<i>plairas</i> ,	<i>plaira</i> ,	I shall, or will, please.
Plur.	<i>Plairons</i> ,	<i>plairez</i> ,	<i>plairont</i> .	

## Conditional.

## Conditional.

Sing. *Plairois, plairois, plairoit*, I should, would, &c.  
 Plur. *Plairions, plairiez, plairoient*. please.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Plais, plaife*, please thou.  
 Plur. *Plaisons, plaidez, plaissent*.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Que que que*  
*Plaife, plaifes, plaife*, that I may please.  
 Plur. *Plaisons, plaidez, plaissent*.

## Preterite.

Sing. *Plusse, plusses, plût*, that I might please.  
 Plur. *Plussions, plussiez, plussent*.

The compounds of this verb are,  
*Complaire*, to humour. *Déplaire*, to displease.

*PRENDRE*, TO TAKE.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Prendre*, to take.  
 Part. act. *Prenant*, taking.  
 Part. pass. *Pris*, taken.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Prends, prends, prend*, I take, or am taking.  
 Plur. *Prenons, prenez, prennent*.

## Imperfect.

Sing. *Prenois, prenois, prenoit*, I did take, or was  
 Plur. *Prenions, preniez, prenoient*. taking.

## Preterite.

Sing. *Pris, pris, prit*, I took, or did take.  
 Plur. *Prîmes, prîtes, prirent*.

## Future.

Sing. *Prendrai, prendras, prendra*, I shall, or will, take.  
 Plur. *Prendrons, prendrez, prendront*.

## Conditional.

Sing. *Prendrois, prendrois, prendroit*, I should, would,  
 Plur. *Prendrions, prendriez, prendroient*. &c. take.

## IMPERATIVE



## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Prends, prenne*, take thou.  
 Plur. *Prenons, prenez, prennent*.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

*Que que que*  
 Sing. *Prenne, preennes, prenne*, that I may take.  
 Plur. *Prenions, preniez, prennent*.

## Preterite.

Sing. *Prisse, prisses, prît*, that I might take.  
 Plur. *Prissions, prissiez, prissent*.

The compounds of this verb are,

*Apprendre*, to learn. *Entreprendre*, to undertake.  
 ———— *des nouvelles*, to *Méprendre*, to mistake, to  
 hear of. be deceived.  
*Comprendre*, to apprehend, *Reprendre*, to take again,  
 to understand, to in- to chide, to rebuke.  
 clude. *Surprendre*, to surprise.  
*Désapprendre*, to unlearn.

*PRODUIRE*, TO PRODUCE,  
*REDUIRE*, TO REDUCE, TO BRING TO,  
 are conjugated like *CONDUIRE*.

*RESTREINDRE*, TO RESTRAIN,  
 is conjugated like *CRAINdre*.

*RIRE*, TO LAUGH.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Rire*, to laugh.  
 Part. act. *Riant*, laughing.  
 Part. pass. *Ri*, laughed.

## INDICATIVE

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Ris, ris, rit*, I laugh, or am laughing.  
 Plur. *Rions, riez, rient*.

## Imperfect.

Sing. *Riois, riois, rioit*, I laughed, or was laughing.  
 Plur. *Riions, riez, rioient*.

## Preterite.

Sing. *Ris, ris, rit*, I laughed, or did laugh.  
 Plur. *Rîmes, rîtes, rirent*.

## Future.

Sing. *Rirai, riras, rira*, I shall, or will, laugh.  
 Plur. *Rirons, rirez, riront*.

## Conditional.

Sing. *Rirois, rirois, riroit*, I should, could, &c. laugh.  
 Plur. *Ririons, viriez, riroient*.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Ris, rie*, laugh thou.  
 Plur. *Rions, riez, rient*.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

*Que que que*  
 Sing. *Rie, ries, rie*, that I may laugh.  
 Plur. *Riions, riez, rient*.

## Preterite.

Sing. *Risse, risses, rît*, that I might laugh.  
 Plur. *Rissions, rissiez, rissent*.

The compound of this verb is,  
*Sourire*, to smile.

*SEDUIRE*, TO SEDUCE,  
 is conjugated as *CONDUIRE*.



**SUFFIRE**, TO SUFFICE, TO BE SUFFICIENT;  
is conjugated like **CONFIRE**; but its participle passive  
is *suffi*.

---

**SUIVRE**, TO FOLLOW.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	<i>Suivre</i> , to follow.
Part. act.	<i>Suivant</i> , following.
Part. pass.	<i>Suivi</i> , followed.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. <i>Suis</i> ,	<i>suis</i> ,	<i>suit</i> ,	I follow, or am following.
Plur. <i>Suivons</i> ,	<i>suivez</i> ,	<i>suivent</i> .	

Imperfect.

Sing. <i>Suivois</i> ,	<i>suivois</i> ,	<i>suivoit</i> ,	I did follow, or was
Plur. <i>Suivions</i> ,	<i>suiviez</i> ,	<i>suivoient</i> .	following.

Preterite.

Sing. <i>Suivis</i> ,	<i>suivis</i> ,	<i>suivit</i> ,	I followed, or did fol-
Plur. <i>Suivîmes</i> ,	<i>suivîtes</i> ,	<i>suivirent</i> .	low.

Future.

Sing. <i>Suivrai</i> ,	<i>suivras</i> ,	<i>suivra</i> ,	I shall, or will, follow.
Plur. <i>Suivrons</i> ,	<i>suivrez</i> ,	<i>suivront</i> .	

Conditional.

Sing. <i>Suivrois</i> ,	<i>suivrois</i> ,	<i>suivroit</i> ,	I should, &c. fol-
Plur. <i>Suivrions</i> ,	<i>suivriez</i> ,	<i>suivroient</i> .	low.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing.	<i>Suis</i> ,	<i>suive</i> ,	follow thou.
Plur. <i>Suivons</i> ,	<i>suivez</i> ,	<i>suivent</i> .	

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>	
Sing. <i>Suive</i> ,	<i>suives</i> ,	<i>suive</i> ,	that I may follow.	
Plur. <i>Suivions</i> ,	<i>suiviez</i> ,	<i>suivent</i> .		

Preterite.

## Preterite.

Sing. *Suivisse, suivisses, suivît*, that I might follow.  
 Plur. *Suivissions, suivissiez, suivissent*.

The compounds of this verb are,  
*S'ensuivre*, to follow from. *Poursuivre*, to pursue.

*Se TAIRE*, TO HOLD ONE'S TONGUE,  
 is conjugated as *PLAIRE*.

*TEINDRE*, TO DIE,  
 is conjugated like *CRAINdre*.

*TRADUIRE*, TO TRANSLATE,  
 is conjugated like *CONDUIRE*.

*TRAIRE*, TO MILK.  
 INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Traire*, to milk.  
 Part. act. *Trayant*, milking.  
 Part. pass. *Trait*, milked.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Trais, trais, trait*, I milk, or am milking.  
 Plur. *Trayons, trayez, traient*.

## Imperfect.

Sing. *Trayois, trayois, trayoit*, I did milk, or was  
 Plur. *Trayions, trayiez, trayoient* milking.

## Preterite wanting.

## Future.

Sing. *Trairai, trairas, traira*, I shall, or will, milk.  
 Plur. *Trairons, trairez, trairont*.

Conditional



## Conditional.

Sing. *Trairois, traistrois, traistroit*, I should, &c. milk.  
 Plur. *Trairions, trairiez, traistroient*.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Trais, traie*, milk thou.  
 Plur. *Trayons, trayez, traient*.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

*Que que que*  
 Sing. *Traie, traies, traie*, that I may milk.  
 Plur. *Trayions, trayiez, traient*.

Preterite is wanting.

The compounds of this verb are,

*Abstraire*, to abstract.      *Rentraire*, to finedraw.  
*Distraindre*, to distract.      *Saustraire*, to subtract.  
*Extraire*, to extract.

*VAINCRE*, TO VANQUISH, TO CONQUER.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Vaincre*, to conquer.  
 Part. act. *Vainquant*, conquering.  
 Part. pass. *Vaincu*, conquered.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Vaincs, vaincs, vainc*,\* I conquer.  
 Plur. *Vainquons, vainquez, vainquent*.

## Imperfect.

Sing. *Vainquois, vainquois, vainquoit*, I did conquer.  
 Plur. *Vainquions, vainquiez, vainquoient*.

## Preterite.

Sing. *Vainquis, vainquis, vainquit*, I conquered.  
 Plur. *Vainquîmes, vainquîtes, vainquirent*.

\* The singular is very little used.

Future.

## Future.

Sing. *Vaincrai, vaincras, vaincra*, I shall, or will con-  
 Plur. *Vaincrons, vaincrez, vaincront.* quer.

## Conditional.

Sing. *Vaincrois, vaincrois, vaincroit*, I should, &c.  
 Plur. *Vaincrions, vaincriez, vaincroient.* conquer.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Vaincs, vainque*, conquer thou.  
 Plur. *Vainquons, vainquez, vainquent.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>	
Sing.	<i>Vainque,</i>	<i>vainques,</i>	<i>vainque,</i>	that I may con-
Plur.	<i>Vainquions,</i>	<i>vainquiez,</i>	<i>vainquent.</i>	quer.

## Preterite.

Sing. *Vainquissè, vainquisses, vainquît*, that I might  
 Plur. *Vainquissions, vainquissiez, vainquissent.* conquer.

The compound of this verb is,  
*Convaincre*, to convince.

*VIVRE*, TO LIVE.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Vivre*, to live.  
 Part. act. *Vivant*, living.  
 Part. pass. *Vécu*, lived.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Vis, vis, vit*, I live, or am living.  
 Plur. *Vivons, vivez, vivent.*

## Imperfect.

Sing. *Vivois, vivois, vivoit*, I did live, or was living.  
 Plur. *Vivions, viviez, vivoient.*

## Preterite.



## Preterite.

Sing. *Vécus, vécu, vécu*, I lived, or did live.  
 Plur. *Vécûmes, vécûtes, vécurent*.

## Future.

Sing. *Vivrai, vivras, vivra*, I shall, or will, live.  
 Plur. *Vivrons, vivez, vivront*.

## Conditional.

Sing. *Vivrois, vivrais, vivrait*, I should, would, &c.  
 Plur. *Vivriions, vivriez, vivroient*. live.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Vis, vive*, live thou.  
 Plur. *Vivons, vivez, vivent*.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

*Que, que, que*  
 Sing. *Vive, vives, vive*, that I may live.  
 Plur. *Vivions, viviez, vivent*.

## Preterite.

Sing. *Vécusse, vécusses, vécût*, that I might live.  
 Plur. *Vécussions, vécussiez, vécussent*.

The compounds of this verb are,  
*Revivre*, to revive. *Survivre*, to outlive.

## EXERCISES ON THE FOREGOING VERBS AND THEIR COMPOUNDS.

My brother was born in Paris on the eighth of Feb-  
 à Fé-  
 ruary, one thousand seven hundred eighty one.—The  
 vrier, m.

same men, who seem not to fear death when they  
 lorsque, adv.

are in good health, often dread it when they are  
 redouter, v.

sick. — What does your sister complain of? — The  
 swallows

swallows generally disappear towards the end of au-  
*hirondelle, f.* *au-*

tumn. — You do not seem to pay any attention to  
*tomme, f.* *faire, v.*

what I say to you. — This man paints very well, I as-  
*af-*

sure you. — Why would you hurt him, he never  
*surer, v.*

did you any harm? — I should pity and succour him  
*faire, v.* *mal, m.*

if it were not his fault. — You shall disappear as  
*ce, pro.*

soon as you have executed my orders. — The last  
 (by the fut.)

time I saw your sister, she appeared to me thoughtful and  
*pensif, adj.*

melancholy. — She is a lady that pleases every body.  
*mélancholique, adj.*

— She appears quite young: how old is she? — Does

she not learn drawing? — Your brother has not inclu-  
*dessein, m.*

ded his tailor's bill in the account which he  
*tailleur, m. mémoire, m.*

has given me. — I see you do not complain of him  
*rendre, v.*

without a cause. — I really am surprised (at it,) but  
*en, pro.*

he always smiles at every thing I tell him. — As sur-

prising as this seems to you, yet, it is true. —  
*cependant, adv.*

At last the enemy surprised, defeated, and dispersed,  
*Enfin, adv.* *dissiper, v.*

them,



them, in the space of twelve days. — Children  
*espace, m.*

seldom unlearn, when they continually  
*rarement, adv. lorsque, c. continuellement, adv.*

exercise their minds to study. — If my brother do  
*exercer, v.*

not come this week, as he promised me, if you will,

we will go and see him in the country. — Does not

Mrs. H. appear much concerned at her daughter's  
*affligé, p.p. de*

death? — When you see Mrs. B. I am  
*(by the fut.)*

certain she will please you. — Did you never

see her? — The children, who shall be born

from this happy marriage, will be the delight  
*délices, f.pl.*

of their father and mother. — She joins to the qualities

of the body those of the mind. — Take some pears, and

carry them to your brother. — Every time I see him, I

take him for a foreigner. — My sister and I learn French,  
*étranger, m.*

and understand very well all that (is said) to us in that  
*on dit*

language. — Though you should learn all the rules, they

would not (be sufficient) without practice. — I did not  
*Quand, c. suffire, v.*

understand

understand what you said.—Do not undertake to unde-  
*de dé-*  
 deceive her ; believe me, you will loose your time.—  
*tromper, v.*

Virtue procures and preserves friendship, but vice  
*obtenir, v.                      conserver, v.                      vice, m.*  
 produces hatred and quarrels. — If you complain to  
*haine, f.                      querelle, f.*

the master, I will complain to the mistress. — Though  
 you should undertake to prove the contrary, she would  
*de*

not believe you. — Why did you not take the same road  
 as we ? — He (is not pleased) in his situation, he now  
*que                      se plaire, v.*

feels all the dangers of it.—He has suffered much, and  
 none of his friends has pitied him.—The idea of  
*idée, f.*

his misfortunes pursues him every where.—When did  
*malheur, m.                      par-tout, adv.*

you hear of him ?—Captain D. told my father that he  
 had seen him and spoken to him at Madras.—We of-

ten mistake when we judge of others by appear-  
*se méprendre, v.                      juger, v.*

ances, and often a person displeases us by the very  
*même, adj.*

quality by which another has pleased us. — The people  
*gens, m.*

who often seem the most zealous, are not always the most  
*zélé, adj.*

A a

constant.



constant.—Leave me that book a little longer, do not  
*Laisser, v.*

take it again. — That appletree produces no fruit.—  
*pommier, m.*

We were reduced to the last extremity when they re-  
 took our ship. — Go and speak to Mr. — : but,

above all, do not laugh. — Would you not laugh, if you  
*sur, p.*

were in my place? — We laughed much yesterday at the  
*à*

play.—She was an agreeable lady, she was ever  
*toujours, adv.*

smiling when any body had the honour of speaking to

her. — He seduced her by his fine promises. — What-

ever he may undertake, he never will succeed, he is

too much addicted to the pleasures of this world. —  
*adonné, p. p.*

Young people tell what they do, old people what  
*gens, m. & f. vieillard, m.*

they have done, and fools what they intend to  
*fol, m. se proposer, v.*

do. — We learn much more easily the  
*facilement, adv.*

things which we understand than those which we do not.

— If we go together to my brother's, will you be  
*chez, p.*

able to follow us? — I will follow you step by step.—  
*pas à pas, adv.*

Why

Why do you follow me as you do? — You may see  
*comme*

out when you please, we will follow you. — Hold your

tongue, you do not know what you say. — What books

do you translate? — My master says I shall soon trans-

late Marmontel's works. — We should have conquer-

ed them if we had fought. — They have debated the

question a long time, without being able to resolve it.

— They were quite transported with joy when they  
*de, p.*

heard of the happy news of peace. — Every thing

smiles in nature at the return of spring. —

*dans, p.*

*retour, m.*

*printemps, m.*

As long as her father and mother live, they

*Tant que, adv.*

(by the fut)

never will consent to her marriage with Mr. R. — You

will not live long if you drink so much. — She lived

about four years after her husband's death. —

*environ, p.*

*après, p.*

George III. the eldest son of Frederic, prince of

*aîné, adj.*

Wales, was born on the fourth of June, 1738, and  
*Galles, f.*

was proclaimed king of Great Britain on the twenty-

*proclamer, v.*

sixth of October, 1760. — Let a man live in any

country



country whatever, he is sure to be respected and well  
*de*

treated every where, if his behaviour and manners be  
*mœurs, f. pl.*

ruled by the principles of sound policy, and the  
*régler, v.* *politique, f.*

laws of the country he lives in.

## OF IMPERSONAL VERBS.

Verbs which relate to no person or thing, and which, as has been before observed, are only conjugated in the third person singular, are called impersonal verbs: they generally are preceded by one of the following pronouns, *il* or *on*: of this number are,

*Il tonne,* It thunders.

*Il pleut,* It rains.

*On dit,* People say, or it is said, &c.

To which may be added several other verbs, which become impersonal when employed in the same manner: ex.

*Il vous convient d'être modeste,* It becomes you to be modest.

*Il fait beau, froid, &c.* It is fine, cold, &c.

*Il semble,* It seems.

*Il s'ensuit que,* It follows that.

*Il vaut mieux,* It is better, &c.

These verbs, like others, whether regular or irregular, have their different tenses, and are conjugated in the same manner as the personal verbs from which they are derived. The learner having gone through the other conjugations, the verbs of this class may the more easily be dispensed with. It will only be necessary to select one that is not derived, and shew the manner of conjugating it, only premising, that the compound tenses are formed, like others, by joining the participle passive to one of the tenses of the auxiliary verb *avoir*, to have.

## CONJUGATION

# CONJUGATION OF THE IMPERSONAL VERBS.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	<i>Pleuvoir</i> , to rain.
Part. act.	<i>Pleuvant</i> , raining.
Part. pass.	<i>Plu</i> , rained.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

### Affirmatively.

Present.	<i>Il pleut</i> , it rains, it does rain.
----------	---

### Negatively.

Present.	<i>Il ne pleut pas</i> , it does not rain.
----------	--

### Interrogatively.

*Pleut-il ?* does it rain ?

*Ne pleut-il pas ?* does it not rain ?

Imperfect.	<i>Il pleuvait</i> , it rained, or it was raining.
------------	--

Preterite.	<i>Il plut</i> , it rained.
------------	-----------------------------

Future.	<i>Il pleuvra</i> , it shall, or will, rain.
---------	--

Conditional.	<i>Il pleuvrait</i> , it would, should, &c. rain.
--------------	---

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.	<i>Qu'il pleuve</i> , that it may rain.
----------	---

Preterite.	<i>Qu'il plût</i> , that it might rain.
------------	---

The following being the first conjugation, I shall only give the third person, present tense, of the indicative mood ; the learner may easily find out the rest.

*Il arrive*, it happens ; from *arriver*, to happen.

*Il bruine*, it drizzles ; *bruiner*, to drizzle.

*Il éclaire*, it lightens ; *éclairer*, to lighten.

*Il gèle*, it freezes ; *geler*, to freeze.

*Il grêle*, it hails ; *grêler*, to hail.

*Il importe*, } it matters ; *importer*.  
                  } it concerns ;

*Il neige*, it snows ; *neiger*, to snow.

*Il tonne*, it thunders ; *tonner*, to thunder.

The verb *AVOIR*, to have, conjugated impersonally with *y*, the adverb of place.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

*Y avoir*, there be,



## INDICATIVE MOOD.

Affirmatively.

Present. *Il y a*, there is,\* there are.

Negatively.

Present. *Il n'y a pas*, there is not, there are not.

Interrogatively.

*Y a-t-il ?* is there ? are there ?Imperfect. *Il y avoit*, there was, there were.Preterite. *Il y eut*, there was, there were.Future. *Il y aura*, there shall, or will, be.Conditional. *Il y auroit*, there should, would, &c. be.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

*Qu'il y ait*, let there be.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. *Qu'il y ait*, that there may be.Preterite. *Qu'il y eût*, that there might be.

## COMPOUND TENSES.

*Il y a eu*, there has, or have, been.*Il y avoit eu*, there had been.*Il y eut eu*, there had been.*Il y aura eu*, there shall, or will, have been.*Il y auroit eu*, there should, &c. have been.*Qu'il y ait eu*, that there may have been.*Qu'il y eût eu*, that there might have been.

This verb *il y a*, &c. when used to denote a quantity of time, is sometimes rendered in English by *it is*, *it was*, &c. when the English preposition *since* is rendered (in French) by *que* : ex.

*Combien y a-t-il que votre père est arrivé ?*      How long is it since your father arrived ?

But, in all cases where the English phrase can be rendered negatively, *que* must be accompanied by the negation *ne* : ex.

\* *There is*, immediately followed by the negation *no* and a participle active, must be rendered by *on ne peut pas*, *on ne sauroit* : ex.

*On ne peut pas, or, on ne sauroit, sortir aujourd'hui à cause de la pluie.*      *There is no going out to day because of the rain ; that is, one cannot, &c.*

Il y a long-tems que je ne vous ai vu,      It is a long while since I saw you, or I have not seen you this long time.

It often happens that the verb *there is*, or *it is*, &c. is understood ; in this case, one of the words *ago*, *these*, or *for these*, is expressed as its substitute : ex.

Il y a trois mois que j'étois en France, or j'étois en France il y a trois mois,\*      I was in France three months ago.

Il y a quatre ans que mon frère est mort, or mon frère est mort il y a quatre ans,\*      My brother has been dead these four years.

Il y a six mois que mon père est malade,      My father has been ill these six months.

It also happens, that neither the verbs, nor any of the words *ago*, *these*, &c. are expressed in the sentence : ex.

Il y a à-présent neuf ans que ma tante demeure dans ce voisinage,      My aunt has now lived nine years in this neighbourhood.

Il y avoit deux ans que ma sœur étoit en France quand j'y allai,      My sister had been two years in France when I went there.

N'y avoit-il pas six mois qu'elle demeurait avec nous quand elle mourut ?      Had she not lived six months with us when she died ?

Il n'y a pas plus d'une heure que nous pêchons ici,      We have not been above an hour fishing here.

Il y aura six ans à Noël que votre frère est chez M. O——.      Your brother will have been at Mr. O's six years at Christmas.

N'y aura-t-il pas un an au mois d'Août prochain que votre sœur est à Paris ?      Will not your sister have been a year at Paris next August ?

\* From these two instances it may be observed, that, if the verb *il y a*, &c. begin the sentence, the word *que* must immediately follow the noun of number ; but, if it be transposed, *que* must be omitted. The first construction is to be preferred. The learner must, at the same time, observe, that in the above sentences the verb which, in English, is in the compound of the present, is rendered in French by the *present* of the indicative, and when in the compound of the imperfect by the *imperfect* of the same mood.



N. B. The learner cannot pay too great attention to the construction of the preceding sentences.

The verb *être*, to be, becomes impersonal, when followed by a *substantive*, or one of the pronouns *personal*, *possessive*, or *demonstrative*, and is always conjugated with the pronoun demonstrative *ce*, whether speaking of person or things : ex.

*C'est la loi qui l'ordonne,*      *It is the law that prescribes it.*  
*C'est moi qui l'ai fait,*      *It is I who have done it.*  
*C'est une chose triste,*      *It is a sad thing.*  
*C'est une fâcheuse extrémité,*      *It is a dreadful extremity.*  
*C'est, or ce sont, eux qui l'ont fait,*      *It is they who have done it.*

From these two last instances, it appears, that *it is*, &c. followed by a noun or pronoun of the third person plural, may be rendered in French two ways ; but when *it is*, &c. is used in asking a question, it is always put in the singular, though the noun or pronoun be in the plural number : ex.

*Est-ce eux qui l'ont fait ?*      *Is it they who have done it ?*

*He, she, they*, immediately followed by *who*, *whom*, or *that*, and *such as*, whether separated in English or not, but implying people in general, are often made into French by the impersonal *c'est*, with an infinitive followed by *que de* before an infinitive : ex.

*C'est être fou que de perdre*      *He is a fool who loses his*  
     *le tems à ces bagattelles,*      *time in those trifles.*  
*C'est être heureux que d'être*      *Such as are satisfied with*  
     *content de son sort,*      *their lot are happy.*

But, if the sentence be negative, *c'est ne pas* must be used, and the above rule followed for the rest of the sentence : ex.

*C'est ne pas connoître la*      *He does not know the court*  
     *cour que de se fier aux*      *who relies on the prom-*  
     *promesses qu'on y fait,*      *ises made there.*  
*C'est ne pas goûter les plai-*      *Such as love nobody do*  
     *sirs de l'amitié que de*      *not enjoy the pleasures*  
     *n'aimer personne,*      *of friendship.*

This

This verb *être*, to be, becomes also impersonal every time it is followed by a noun adjective used in a vague indeterminate sense, and relates to no particular object ; in which case the verb is generally preceded by the pronoun *il* : ex.

<i>Il est étonnant que, &amp;c.</i>	It is surprising &c.
<i>Il est nécessaire, &amp;c.</i>	It is necessary &c.
<i>Il est dangereux de, &amp;c.</i>	It is dangerous, &c.
<i>Il est extraordinaire, &amp;c.</i>	It is extraordinary, &c.

When the English verb *to be* is used, to denote the state of the weather, it must be rendered by the third person singular of the verb *faire*, to make or do.

<i>Il fait beau tems,</i>	It is fine weather.
<i>Il fait chaud,</i>	It is hot.
<i>Il ne fait pas chaud,</i>	It is not hot.
<i>Fait-il chaud ?</i>	Is it hot ?
<i>Ne fait-il pas chaud ? &amp;c.</i>	Is it not hot ? &c.

See the verb *FAIRE*.

The learner must observe, that the following verb is absolutely impersonal throughout all its tenses, and that nothing is more disagreeable than to hear young people say *je faut, vous faut, on faut, &c.* to prevent which, as much as possible, some examples are here set down.

#### INFINITIVE MOOD.

Affirmatively. Singular.

Present. *Falloir*, to be needful, requisite; necessary.

Part. pass. *Fallu*, been needful.

#### INDICATIVE MOOD.

Affirmatively. Singular.

Present. *Il faut que je fasse*, I must do.

*Il faut que tu fasses*, thou must do.

*Il faut qu'il fasse*, he must do.

*Il faut qu'elle fasse*, she must do.

Plural.

*Il faut que nous fassions*, we must do.

*Il faut que vous fassiez*, you must do.

*Il faut qu'ils, or elles, fassent*, they must do.

Negatively.



## Negatively.

*Il ne faut pas que je fasse*, I must not do.

*Il ne faut pas que vous fassiez*, you must not do, &c.

## Interrogatively.

*Faut-il que je fasse ?* must I do ?

*Faut-il que vous fassiez ?* must you do ?

*Ne faut-il pas que je fasse ?* must I not do ?

*Ne faut-il pas que vous fassiez ?* must you not do ?

Imperfect. *Il falloit qu'il écrivît*, it was necessary, &c.  
for him to write.

Preterite. *Il fallut qu'il partît*, he was obliged to set out.

Future. *Il faudra qu'il vienne*, he must come, he shall be obliged to come.

Conditional. *Il faudroit que j'allasse*, I should go, or it would be necessary for me to go.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. *Qu'il faille*, that it may be necessary, &c.

Preterite. *Qu'il fallût*, that it might be necessary, &c.

As to the compound tenses of this verb, they are formed by adding its participle passive to the third person singular of any of the simple tenses of the verb *avoir*, to have : ex. *Il a fallu, il avoit fallu, &c.*

This verb, being used before the verb *to have*, followed immediately by a noun substantive, may be rendered without expressing the auxiliary verb ; instead of which, insert one of the following pronouns, *me, te, lui, nous, vous*, or *leur*, according to the number and person : ex.

*Il me faut des livres*, I must have books, or I want books.

*Il lui faut un chapeau*, He or she must have a hat, or he or she wants a hat, &c.

But, if the verb *to have* be expressed, it must be rendered by the subjunctive mood : ex.

*Il faut que j'aie des livres*, I must have books, &c.

This method however is not so elegant as the former.  
From

From the foregoing instances, it is easy to see, that; when the verb  *falloir* , is used in the present or future tenses of the indicative mood, the following verb must be rendered by the present of the subjunctive : ex.

*Il faut, or il faudra, que je fasse,*  I must  *do* , I shall be obliged  *to do, or*  it will be necessary for me to do.

When  *falloir* , is used in the imperfect, preterite, or conditional of the indicative, the verb following it must be rendered by the preterite of the subjunctive : ex.

*Il falloit, or il fallut, que je parlasse,*  I was obliged,  *or*  it was necessary for me, to  *speak* .

*Il faudroit que je vendisse,*  I should be obliged,  *or*  it would be necessary for me, to  *sell* .

The same observation is to be made on the verb  *valoir mieux* , to be better, used impersonally ; and the adjectives,  *bon, difficile, impossible, nécessaire, à-propos, &c.*  joined to the verb  *être* , used in the third person singular only.

Before the conclusion of this section, it will be proper to say something about the pronoun general  *on* , which commonly precedes an active verb used impersonally in French, and in English is made by a passive verb : ex.

*On m'a permis de chanter,*  I have been permitted,  *or*  allowed, to sing.

*On lui a défendu de sortir,*  He has been forbidden to go out.

In this case, the verb, which, in English, is in the passive voice, must, in French, be turned into the active, and translated as if there were, in English,

*One*  has allowed me to sing,  *one*  has forbidden him to go out : ex.

*On n'a pas encore reçu la nouvelle,*  The news have not been received yet, that is,  *one*  has not yet received the news.

*On*



On rapporte que les Russes ont battu les Turcs,	It is reported that the Rus- sians have beaten the Turks.
On le dit, mais on ne le sait pas encore pour sûr,	It is said so, but it is not yet known for certain.
On croit que la Suède a déclaré la guerre à la Russie,	It is thought Sweden has declared war against Russia.

## EXERCISES UPON THE IMPERSONAL VERBS.

Does it rain? — No, sir, it is fine weather. — Is it

not very cold? — It is neither cold nor hot. — Was  
*froid, m.                      ni, adv.                      ni, adv.*

it not you that told me (that) there was a man below  
*en bas, adv.*

who asked to speak to me? — No, madam, it  
*demander, v. à*

was not I. — If it did not freeze, I would go to see them  
*voir, v.*

to-day. — Believe me, it is better for you  
*aujourd'hui, adv.                      valoir mieux, v.\**

to go there to-morrow; for, it will snow soon. — It  
*demain, adv. car, c.                      bientôt, adv.*

is a year since I met your brother in Italy. — Where is

he now? — It is not known; for, we have not heard from

him these two years. — Was there not formerly a  
*autrefois, adv.*

(coffee-house) at the corner of this street? — I had been  
*café, m.                      coin, m.                      rue, f.*

\* After the words *better, necessary, needful, expedient, &c.* joined to the verb *to be*, conjugated impersonally, the preposition *for* is to be rendered by *que*, with the following verb in the subjunctive mood, either present or preterite, according to the tense of the preceding verb.

four years in England when that happened. — I have  
*arriver, v.*

not seen your sister these four months. — If you go to

Coxheath to-day, you must come back to-mor-  
*aujourd'hui, adv. revenir, v.*

row. — We had been playing at cards for two hours

when you came in. — He has been in London these  
*entrer, v.*

five years, and it is said he there enjoys a considerable

employment. — My father and mother had not been

gone out above a quarter of an hour when he arrived.  
*sortir, v. plus, adv.*

— Some people have no pity on their poor (fellow-  
*gens, pl. de sem-*

creatures.) — More virtue is requisite to support good  
*blable.*

fortune than bad. — They are strangers to the charms

of society who shun company. — Thomas will have  
*fuir, v.*

been at Mr. H——'s academy two years the tenth of

next month. — Had not Mr. D. been four years in

Spain when his sister was married? — Mr. N. had on-  
*ne*

ly learned French four months when he wrote me a  
*que*

letter in that language. — I assure you that there is a  
*assurer, v.*

great deal of pleasure in teaching diligent scholars. —



How long is it since you wrote to your mother? —  
*Combien, adv.*

It is<sup>3</sup> but<sup>4</sup> two<sup>5</sup> months<sup>6</sup>. — I would have written  
*ne que mois, m.*

to you a month ago, if I had known your direction. —  
*savoir, v. adresse, f.*

He is the same man whom we saw a quarter of an hour  
 ago. — It is not so cold now as it was at the beginning

of this month. — It is said there will not be so much  
*tant, adv.*

danger in travelling as there was before. — You  
*à voyager, v. que auparavant.*

must have been well acquainted with the places  
*endroit, m.*

to expose yourself in that manner. — You may go  
*pour, c. de, p.*

to London this morning, but remember that you must

be back at three o'clock. — Would it not be better for  
*de retour*

you to go and speak to them yourself, than to send  
*de envoyer, v.*

your servant? — Shall I be obliged to carry  
*domestique, m. & f. falloir, v. mener, v.*

them there? — There is no going out to-day, it is too

warm. — You must get up to-morrow morning at  
*se lever, v.*

four o'clock. — Will it not be better for you to be

there too soon than too late? — Custom must not al-

ways prevail over reason. — Some people fancy that  
*sur, p. s'imaginer, v. they*

they can learn a language without studying.—They are  
*sans, p.*

idle, who do not know the value of time.—Let there

be danger or not, I will (go home.) — Do you think  
*s'e en retourner, v. croire, v.*

(that) it is hotter in Italy than here? — I shall want  
*en, p. Italie, f.*

(or, I must have) paper, pens, and ink.—If he be-  
*se*

haved well, there would not be a man (in the) world  
*comporter, v. au monde, m.*

that I should esteem more. — Much art and nicety are

requisite to please every body.—They obey the com-  
*pour, p.*

mands of God who love their neighbours, and do not

reproach them with their small defects.—I have already

told you that nobody in the world has prepossessed me

against you; how many times must I repeat it to you?—  
*contre, p.*

(How long) is it since your brother went to France?  
*Combien, adv. est allé, v.*

—It may be four months.—Have the letters  
*pouvoir, v.*

been received which were expected yesterday? — It

greatly concerns children to avoid bad company.  
*beaucoup, adv. enfant, m. de éviter, v.*

—I was in England ten years ago.—Every body agrees

there



the fine women in Great Britain, but there is not  
so good wine as in France. — It may be two years

since Mr. Robert set out for the Indies. — Was it not  
*partir, v.*

you who wrote to Miss A — ? — No, it was Miss  
*avez écrit, v.*

Rose's sister. — It does not matter whether it is my  
servant or yours who carries it — How long is it since  
*porter, v.*

you were in England ? — You do not seem to be  
*paroître, v.*

as lively as you were three years ago. — Must I not  
*enjoué, adj.*

show you my work ? — If there were any real vir-  
*montrer, v.*

tue in the world, should we (meet with) so many false  
*trouver, v.*

friends ? — No object is more pleasing to the eye than  
*plaire, v.*

the sight of a man whom you have obliged, nor (is)  
*vue, f.*

any music so agreeable to the ear, as the voice of a  
*oreille, f.      voix, f.*

man who owns you for his benefactor.  
*reconnoître, v.*

---

## S E C T. V.

### OF PARTICIPLES.

Participles are either active or passive. The *partici-  
ple active*, in French, always ends in *ant* : ex. *parlant*,  
*punissant* : and, in English, in *ing* : ex. *speaking*, *pun-  
ishing*.

*ishing, &c.* It is always, in its own nature, indeclinable : ex.

*Je vois des hommes et des femmes venant à nous,* I see men and women coming to us.

When the participle active is preceded by another verb, an article, or a preposition, it must be rendered in French by the verb in the infinitive mood : ex.

*La grâce de Dieu nous empêche de pécher,* The grace of God keeps us from sinning.

*Faut-il que je parte sans le voir ?* Must I set out without seeing him ? &c.

It is sometimes used as a substantive : ex.

*La pauvreté du corps est la richesse de l'âme,* The impoverishing of the body is the enriching of the soul.

N. B. There are some active participles which, by use, have been converted into substantives or adjectives ; as, *méditant*, flanderer ; *ignorant*, ignorant, &c. which are declinable.

The participle passive is sometimes declinable and sometimes indeclinable.

It is declinable,

First, When it is joined to the verb *être*, to be, forming a passive verb, and agrees with the nominative case of the verb in gender and number : ex.

*Mon frère est aimé,* My brother is loved.

*Ma sœur est aimée,* My sister is loved.

*Mes cousins sont partis,* My cousins are gone.

*Mes cousines sont parties,* My cousins are gone.

Secondly, When it is joined to the verb *avoir*, or *être*, forming the compound tenses of an active or reflected verb, immediately preceded by a pronoun which it governs in the *accusative case* ; it must then agree with the gender and number of the substantive to which that pronoun refers : ex.

*J'ai parlé à votre frère, et l'ai prié de venir dîner avec moi,* I spoke to your brother, and desired him to come and dine with me.



Connoissez-vous Madame  
Wrighten ? Oui, je l'ai  
(1) vue, et l'ai entendue  
chanter plusieurs fois,

J'ai lu tous les livres que  
vous m'avez prêtés,

Avez-vous vu les marchan-  
dises que j'ai reçues ?

(2) Mademoiselle B. a passé deux  
ou trois jours avec vos  
sœurs, et les a vues pein-  
dre.

Vous m'avez souvent prié,  
or priée, de &c.

Elles se sont repenties de  
leurs fautes,

In the above instances the pronouns are governed by  
the verbs *avoir* or *être* and the participle passive.

*Dû*, (when not made by *owed*,) *pu*, and *voulu*, are  
excepted as being always indeclinable.

The participle passive is indeclinable in the following  
cases :

First, When the contrary to the above rule happens ;  
that is, when the pronoun, though preceding the par-  
ticiple passive, is governed by another verb : ex.

Plusieurs personnes se sont  
présentées à la porte, la  
sentinelle les a laissés passer.

(1) C'est une belle chanson, je  
l'ai entendu chanter deux  
ou trois fois.

La langue que vous avez  
commencé d'apprendre  
est fort utile.

(2) J'y suis allé avec elle, et l'ai  
vu peindre.

Do you know Mrs.  
Wrighten ? Yes, I saw  
her, and heard her sing  
many times.

I have read all the books  
(which) you lent me.

Did you see the goods  
(which) I have received ?

Miss B. spent two or three  
days with your sisters,  
and saw them painting.

You often desired me to,  
&c.

They have repented of  
their faults.

Several persons came to  
the door, the sentinel  
let them pass.

It is a fine song, I heard  
it sung two or three  
times.

The language you began  
to learn is very useful.

I went there with her, and  
saw her picture drawn.

In the above instances the pronouns are not governed  
by the participle passive, but by the verbs *passer*, *chan-*  
*ter*, *apprendre*, and *peindre*. Secondly,



Secondly, When it is immediately followed by a noun (either substantive or adjective) in the accusative case, or by another participle passive, though it should be preceded by a pronoun : ex.

*Les Anglois se sont rendu fameux dans cette guerre,*      The English have made themselves famous (in) this war.

*Les Espagnols se sont trouvés obligés de lever le siège,*      The Spaniards found themselves obliged to raise the siege.

*Ma sœur s'est cassé le bras,*      My sister broke her arm.

And, lastly, when the auxiliary verb and the participle passive are used impersonally : ex.

*Les pluies qu'il a fait,*      The rains we have had.

In order to illustrate the application of the above rules in a single example, we must write,

<i>J'ai reçu les lettres que vous m'avez écrites au sujet de l'affaire que je vous avois proposée : et, après les avoir lues avec attention j'ai reconnu, comme vous, que, si je l'avois entreprise, j'y aurois trouvé des obstacles que je n'avois pas prévus.</i>	I have received the letters which you wrote to me with respect to the affair which I had proposed to you : and, after having read them with attention, I perceived, as you did, that, if I had undertaken it, I should have met with obstacles that I had not foreseen.
---	---

In this period, *reçu* is indeclinable ; because, it is not preceded by any regimen ; *écrites* is declinable, and agrees in gender and number with its absolute regimen, or accusative, expressed by the pronoun relative *que*, which precedes the verb and relates to *lettres* ; *proposée* likewise agrees with *que*, by which it is preceded, and which relates to the word *affaire* ; *lues* is declinable on account of its regimen *les*, which precedes it and relates to *lettres* : *reconnu* is indeclinable, because it is not preceded by any regimen to which it can relate ; *entreprise*, on the contrary, is declinable, and takes the gender and number of the conjunctive pronoun *l'*, which is its absolute



solute regimen and its antecedent, relating to *affaire* ; *trouvé* is indeclinable, because it is not preceded, but followed, by its absolute regimen *obstacles* ; *prévus*, on the contrary, is declinable, because it is preceded by its absolute regimen *que*, which relates to *obstacles*.

If custom, in any case, has deviated from the preceding rules, it is sufficient to observe that they have the sanction of the best authors. A little practice will soon remove many of these apparent difficulties.

### PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES ON THE FOREGOING RULES.

I have not yet received the goods which  
*marchandise, f.*  
 you sent me by the ship Goodwill. — Ladies,  
*vaisseau, m.*  
 have you returned him the letters which he had desired.  
*rendre, v.* *prier, v.*  
 you to read ? — They are people truly fear-  
*gens, pl. vraiment, adv. crain-*  
 ing God and loving virtue. — Where did you  
*dre, v.* *Ou, adv.*  
 buy these gloves ? — I bought them in France. —  
*acheter, v.* *gant, m.*  
 She met our father and sister (as she was) coming  
*en*  
 here. — Alexander conquered Asia with the troops  
*ici, adv.*  
 whom his father Philip had disciplined. — The  
 faults which he had committed greatly in-  
*beaucoup, adv.* *aug-*  
 creased his prudence. — There is a real ad-  
*menter, v.*  
 vantage in being learned, but science must not in-  
*à, p.*

spire

aspire pride. — His brother, remembering the in-  
*se ressouvenir, v. des*

juries he had received, refused to see him. —  
*refuser, v. de voir, v.*

Louis the Great had especially the superior and rare  
*sur-tout, adv.*

talent of knowing and choosing men of merit. —

He has spent all the treasures which his father had  
*trésor, m.*

amassed with so much care and labour. — I shall nev-

er forget the good actions which I have seen you  
*oublier, v.*

do. — The defending of a bad cause is worse than

the cause itself. — Your mother, having given the

necessary orders to my sister, set out for London  
*partir, v.*

without speaking a word to me. — The resolution  
*sans, p. dire, v. mot, m.*

which she has taken of going in the country surprises  
*à, p. étonner, v.*

me very much ; I have spoken to her myself, but I

have not been able to learn the reasons which have

engaged her to it. — Miss Farren was an excellent ac-

tress, I have seen her play several times. — Of all

the letters which my brother has received (to-day,)  
*aujourd'hui, adv.*

there is not one (of them) for me. — The reasons  
*raison, f.*

which



which you have given me have satisfied me.—I am

very sorry for the trouble that affair has given to  
*fâché, adj. de peine, f.*

your aunt. — The goods, which you have ordered  
*tante, f. marchandise, f.*

me to send, are arrived ; permit me to shew you  
*de montrer, v.*

the letters which we have received from Germany.—

He was hanged for having robbed Mr. D. — What  
*pendre, v. voler, v.*

books have you lost ? — The fable I gave to you to  
*perdre, v. à*

translate is not difficult. — At last he has returned  
*traduire, v. Enfin, adv. rendre, v.*

all the sums which I had lent to him, and which he  
*somme, f.*

has owed me so long. — If you can come with me,  
*devoir, v.*

I will shew you the lady whom I have heard sing.  
*dame, f. entendre, v.*

— Your sister has rendered herself celebrated by her  
*célèbre, adj.*

wit and beauty. — She obtained from the king all  
*esprit, m.*

the favours she would. — What stuff have you cho-  
*grâce, f. étoffe, f. choi-*

sen ? — Have you already read the books I saw you  
*lire, v. déjà, adv. lire, v.*

buying ? — Not yet ; for, I have sent them to my  
*Pas, adv.*

sister, who is in the country. — They have found  
*à*

themselves.

themselves furrounded by foldiers, who carried them  
*conduire, v.*

to prison, where they have been detained . . . for  
*en, p.* *retenir, v. pendant, p.*

eight days, but they have been found innocent of the  
crime with which they were accused, and, at last,  
*de*

(acquitted.) — I should despise a man who is ca-  
(renvoyer, v. absous,) mépriser, v.

pable of deceiving	his friends.—The fine	actions
<i>tromper, v.</i>	<i>ami, m.</i>	<i>beau, adj.</i>

your brothers have done in America deserve  
*faire, v. en, p. mériter, v.*

great praises, and want to be well related.—  
*demand*er, v.      *de*      *recount*er, v.

Their general has shewn them all the gratitude he  
*témoigner, v.*

ought.—I have lost the books which you have seen

me buying.—The three country-houses, which your

father is said to have bought, are extremely fine and

well situated.—The history which I have begun to  
à

read is not entertaining.—After having (waited for)  
*amusant*, adj. *attendre*, v.

her (a long while,) she (sent me word) that she was  
*long tems, adv.* *envoyer dire, v.*

not ready to go out.—She has written more books  
*prêt*, adj. *à sortir*, v.

than you ever have read.—She spends all her time  
*que ne passer, v.*

iii



reading or writing. — The soldiers, whom they  
à

have obliged to set out, are come back already. —  
à, p. *revenir*, v.

Did you not see them coming? — The rain we  
*voir*, v. *pluie*, f.

have had this week has prevented me from going  
*empêcher*, v.

into the country. — The city of Liverpool has ren-  
à *ville*, f.

dered itself flourishing by its trade. — My sister  
*florissant*, adj. *commerce*, m.

has bought herself a fine gown. — My mother  
*acheter*, v.

takes an infinite pleasure in admiring the situation  
*prendre*, v. *situation*, f.

of your house. — The letter you have written to me

in French was tolerably well; I have shewn  
*passablement*, adv. *montrer*, v.

it to your aunt, who is much pleased (with it.)  
*très*, adv. *content*, adj. *en*, pro.

## SECT. VI.

### INDECLINABLE PARTS OF SPEECH.

Under this head are comprehended *adverbs*, *preposi-  
tions*, *conjunctions*, and *interjections*.

#### OF ADVERBS.

*Adverbs* have been distinguished, according to their  
several significations, into *adverbs* of *place*, *time*, *qual-  
ity*, *quantity*, *number*, *order*, *affirmation*, *negation*, *doubt*,  
*interrogation*, *comparison*, *collection*, *separation*, &c. But  
this

this classification, however ingenious, is far from being exact : it was therefore judged, that, if those of the most frequent use, and which, when compounded, form a particular idiom, were carefully selected, and arranged in an alphabetical series, it would be more to the advantage of the learner.

### TABLE OF ADVERBS.

*Abondamment*, abundantly, plentifully.

*à l'Abandon*, at random, in confusion, in disorder.

*d'Abord*, at first, immediately.

*Absolument*, absolutely.

*d'Accord*, grant it, done.

*Agréablement*, pleasantly, comfortably.

*Ainsi*, (*de même*,) so.

*Aisément*, easily.

*mal Aisément*, much ado.

*dans un An d'ici*, a year hence.

*l'Année qui vient*, the next year.

*Anciennement*,  
*Autrefois*, } formerly, anciently.

*en Ami*, friendly.

*à l'Amiable*, amicably.

*en Arrière*,  
*à reculons*, } backwards.

*Assez*, enough.

*Assurément*, certainly.

*Aujourd'hui*, to-day.

Time { *d'Aujourd'hui en huit*, this day se'nnight.

to come. { *d'Aujourd'hui en quinze*, this day fortnight.

Time { *il y a Aujourd'hui huit jours*, this day week,  
 past. { this day se'nnight.

{ *il y a Aujourd'hui quinze jours*, this day fort-  
 night.

{ *il y a Aujourd'hui un an*, this day twelve  
 months.

*Autant*, as much, as many.

*d'Autant plus*, so much the more.

*d'Autant moins*, so much the less.



*tout Autant,* { just as, just as much, every whit.  
*tout Aussi,* {  
*à l'Avenir,* for the future, hereafter.  
*à l'Angloise,* after the English manner, fashion, or way.  
*à l'Italienne,* after the Italian, &c.  
*à la Française,* after the French, &c.  
*à la Turque,* after the Turkish, &c.

*Bas,* { below, down.  
*à or en Bas,* {  
*en Badinant,* for fun.  
*Beaucoup,* { much, many, a great deal.  
*Bien,* {

X *à Beaucoup près,* nothing so near.

*de Beaucoup,* by much.

*Bien,* well, very.

*de Bon cœur,* heartily.

*de Bonne heure,* betimes.

*de Bonne foi,* { sincerely.  
*sincèrement,* {

X *de Bon jeu,* fairly.

*de Bon matin,* early.

*de Bouche,* by word of mouth.

X *à la Bonne heure,* in good time, luckily, well and good.

*à Bon droit,* deservedly.

*à Bon marché,* cheap.

*à Bride abattue,* full speed.

*Ca et là,* to and fro.

*à Cause de quoi ?* on what account ?

X *à Cela près,* that excepted.

*Cependant,* in the meanwhile, nevertheless.

*à Cheval,* on horseback.

*Combien,* how much, how many, how,\* how long.

\* *How much, how many, how,* are rendered in French by *que*, before an admiration : ex.

*Que vous êtes jolie ! How pretty you are !*

*Combien*

*Combien y a-t-il que, or*  
*Combien de tems y a-t-il que,*  
*Combien y avoit-il que,*  
*Depuis quand,*  
*Combien de tems,*  
*pendant Combien de tems,*  
*dans Combien de tems, how long will it be before ?*

} how long ?\*

*Comme, as, like.*

*Comme il faut, soundly.*

*Comment, how.*

*à Contre-cœur, against one's will.*

*à Contre-sens, the contrary way, in a wrong sense.*

*à Contre-tems, unseasonably.*

*à Corps perdu, hand over head, desperately.*

*à Côté,*

*à l'écart,*

*à part,*

*à quartier,*

} aside.

\* We make use of *combien y a-t-il que, or depuis quand*, when the action mentioned in the interrogation has not yet ceased ; then the verb, which (in English) is in the compound of the present, must be rendered (in French) by the present of the indicative mood : ex.

*Combien y a-t-il que vous apprenez, How long have you learned French ?*  
*or depuis quand apprenez-vous, le*  
*François ?*

*Combien y a-t-il que vous êtes, or How long have you been in London ?*  
*depuis quand êtes-vous, à Londres ?*

If the verb (in English) be in the compound of the imperfect, it is to be rendered (in French) by the imperfect of the indicative : ex.

*Combien y avoit-il que vous appreniez, How long had you been learning*  
*French when you wrote to me ?*  
*vous, le François quand vous m'écrivîtes ?*

*Combien y avoit-il que vous étiez, How long had you been in Paris*  
*or depuis quand étiez-vous à Paris quand il mourut ?*  
*when he died ?*

But, if the action have entirely ceased, we make use of *pendant combien de tems*, with the following in the compound of the present : ex.  
*Pendant combien de tems avez-vous appris le François ?*  
*How long did you learn French ?*

*Pendant combien de tems avez-vous été à Londres ?*  
*How long were you in London ?*

N. B. *How long*, in the sense of *for what time*, is also rendered by *pendant combien de tems*, with the verb in the same tense as it is in English : ex.  
*Pendant combien de tems votre sœur se propose-t-elle de rester en Italie ?*  
*How long does your sister intend to stay in Italy ?*



*à Côté l'un de l'autre*, abreast.  
*de ce Côté-ci*, on this side.  
*de ce Côté-là*, on that side.  
*de Côté et d'autre*, up and down, about.  
*de tous Côtés*, on all sides, on every side.  
*Coup sur Coup*, one after another..

*Davantage*, more.

*Dedans*,  
*en Dedans*, } within, inwardly.

*Dehors*,  
*en Dehors*, } without.

*Déjà*, already.

*Demain*, to-morrow.

*le lendemain*, the day after.

*après Demain*, the day after to-morrow.

*Dernièrement*, lately.

*ci-Dessus*, above.

✕ *par Dessus*, over and above.

*Dessous*,  
*au Dessous*, } underneath.

*à Découvert*, openly.

*à Demi*,  
*à moitié*, } half, by halves.

*à Dessein*, on purpose, designedly.

*à Droite*, on the right.

*à Double entente*, with a double meaning.

*Encore*, again, yet, as yet.

*Enfin*, at last.

*Ensuite*, afterwards, then.

*Entièrement*, entirely.

*Exprès*, on purpose.

*à l'Ecart*, out of the way.

*à l'entour*, round about.

*à l'Envers*, the wrong side outwards.

*à l'Envi*, in emulation.

*aux Environs*, thereabout.

*En nulle manière*, in no wise.

*En plein jour*, or } at noon, at mid-day.  
*En plein midi*, }  
*En tems et lieu*, in a proper time and place.  
*En tout cas*, whatever may happen.  
*En un clin d'œil*, in the twinkling of an eye.  
*En sursaut*, suddenly.

*Facilement*, easily.  
*Fidèlement*, faithfully.

*à la or de* } *File*, in a File.

*à la Fois*, together.

*combien de Fois* ? how many times ?

*une Fois*, once.

*deux Fois*, twice.

*tant de Fois*, so many times.

*Fort*, very.

*Fort et Ferme*, stoutly.

*à Fond*, thoroughly.

*de Fond en comble*, from top to bottom, to all intents and

*de Front*, abreast. purposes.

*Galamment*, genteelly, gallantly.

*Goutte à Goutte*, by drops.

*Guères*, (with *ne* before the verb,) little, but little.

*à la Hâte*, in haste.

*en or là* } *Haut*, up there, above stairs.

*d'Heure en Heure*, hourly, every hour.

*Hier*, yesterday.

*Hier au soir*, last night.

*avant Hier*, the day before yesterday.

*Ici*, here.

*Ici autour*, hereabouts.

*Ici près* hard by.

*d'Ici*, hence.

*d'Ici en quinze jours*, within a fortnight.



*par Ici*, through here, this way.

*par Ici par là*, here and there.

X *à l'Instant*, immediately, instantly.

*Jamais*, ever.

*ne — Jamais*, never.

*à Jamais*, for ever.

*Justement*, justly, exactly.

*Jusqu'à quand ?* how long ?

*Jusqu'ici*, hitherto, as far as here.

*Jusques-là*, so far, as far as that.

*Jusqu'où ?* how far ?

*de Jour*, in the day-time.

*de Jour à autre*, or } from day to day, daily.

*de Jour en Jour*, }

*de deux en deux Jours*, } every other day.

*de deux Jours l'un*, or, }

*tous les deux Jours*,

*dans quinze Jours*, in a fortnight.

*Là*, there, thither.

*Là autour*, thereabouts.

X *Là bas*, yonder.

*de Là, (en,)* thence.

*par Là*, through there, that way.

*Loin*, far.

*de Loin*, afar off, at a distance.

*Long tems*, a long while.

*Lors*, then, at the time.

*alors*, } then.

*pour Lors*, }

*dès Lors*, from that time.

*Mal*, ill, wrong.

*Maintenant*, now.

*Médiocrement*, indifferently.

*Même*, even, yet.

*de Même*, so, in the same manner.

*Mieux*, better.

*de Mieux en Mieux*, better and better.

*Moins*,

*Moins*, less.

*Moins*——*Moins*,——the less——the less.

*à Moins*, for less, at less.

*au Moins*,  
*tout au Moins*, } at the least.

*en Moins de rien*, in a trice.

*Naïvement*, plainly, ingenuously.

*Naturellement*, naturally, by nature.

*au Naturel*, to the life.

*Ne — ni — ni*, neither——nor.

*Non pas*, or *point*, } no, not.

*Non*,

*de Nuit*, by night, in the night-time.

*Obligemment*, kindly, obligingly.

*Où ?* where ?

*d'Où ?* whence ?

*par Où ?* through what place ? which way ? through

*Oui*, yes.

which ?

*d'Outre en Outre*, through.

*Pas à Pas*, step by step.

*de Part et d'autre*, on both sides.

*nulle Part*, no where.

*à Peine*, hardly, scarcely.

*Pêle-mêle*, helter-skelter.

*Peut-être*, may be, perhaps.

*Peu*, little.

*Peu à Peu*, by little and little, by degrees.

*à Peu près*

*à Peu de chose près*, } almost, very near, thereabouts.

*dans Peu*, in a short time.

*depuis Peu*, lately, not long ago, a little while ago.

*à Pied*, on foot.

*à Pieds nuds*, bare-feet.

*au Pis-aller*, let the worst come to the worst.

*de Pis en Pis*, worse and worse.

*de Plein gré*, with a good will, freely.

*de Plein pied*, on the same floor.



*à Pleines mains*, largely.

*Plus*, more, above.

*Plus — Plus*, the more — the more.

*Plus qu'il n'en faut*, more than enough.

*au Plus, tout au Plus*, at the most.

*de Plus en Plus*, more and more.

*à Plus forte raison*, much more so.

*Plutôt*, sooner.

*Point du tout*, not at all.

*à Point nommé*, seasonably.

*tout à Point*, in the nick of time.

*à Propos*, seasonably.

*Pourquoi ? or que ne ?* why.

*de Près*, near, nearly, narrowly.

*Premièrement*, or } first, in the first place.  
*en Premier lieu*, }

*dès à Présent*, from this time.

*Presque*, almost, hardly.

*Presque toujours*, most commonly.

*de Propos délibéré*, on purpose, purposely, deliberately.

*Par cas fortuit*, by chance, accidentally.

*Par derrière*, behind.

*Par dessus le marché*, into the bargain.

*Par en bas*, downward.

*Par en haut*, upward.

*Par malice*, through ill-nature.

*Par mégarde*, unawares.

*Par terre*, upon the ground.

*Quand ?* when ?

*depuis Quand ?* how long is it since ?

*Que ?* why ? how ?

*Quelquefois*, some time.

*à Quoi bon ?* to what purpose ?

*Rarement*, seldom.

*au or du Reste*, as to the rest.

*à Rebours*, the wrong way.

*à la Renverse*, } backward, upon one's back.  
*à Reculons*, }

à Rez de chauffée, even with the ground.

Sens devant derrière, preposterously.

Sens dessus dessous, topsy-turvy.

de tous Sens, or }  
de tous les Sens, } every where.

Séparément, separately.

Seulement, only.\*

de Sang froid, in cold blood.

de Suite, together, one after another.

dans la Suite, }  
par la Suite, } afterwards.

Sur-le-champ, directly, upon the spot.

Tant, so much, so many.

Tant mieux, so much the better.

Tant pis, so much the worse.

Tantôt, by and by, sometimes.

Tantôt ——— Tantôt, sometimes ——— sometimes.

Tôt, }  
bientôt, } soon.

Tôt ou tard, one time or other.

✧ Tant soit peu, ever so little.

Tard, late.

✧ à Temps, time enough, in proper time.

de long Temps, for a long time, this long while.

de Temps en Temps, or }  
de Temps à autre, } now and then, from time to time.

à Tort, wrongfully.

à Tort ou à droit, right or wrong.

✧ à Tort et à Travers, at random.

Trop, too much.

Toujours, always, now-a-days.

pour Toujours, for ever and ever.

Tous les jours, every day.

Tour à Tour, by turns.

\* Only is also expressed, in French, by *ne* before the verb and *que* after it, when it becomes a conjunction.



*Tout*, quite, wholly, thoroughly, entirely.\*

*Tout à coup*, suddenly, on a sudden, all at once.

*Tout bas*, softly, with a low voice.

*Tout d'un coup*, suddenly, on a sudden, all at once.

*Tout à fait*, quite.

*Tout à l'heure*, this minute, presently.

*Tout droit*, straight along.

*Tout de bon*, in good earnest.

*Tout de long*, all along.

*Tout franc*, frankly, freely.

*Tout haut*, aloud.

*Tout outre*, through and through.

*à Tout bout de champ*, } at every turn.

*à Tous coups*,

*à Tous égards*, in all respects.

*de Toutes ses forces*, with all his or her might.

*par Tout*, every where.

*par Tout où*, wherever.

*Vîte*, } quickly.

*Vitement*,

*Vivement*, } to the quick.

*au Vif*,

*à Vide*, empty.

*au plus Vîte*, with all speed.

*Voici*, here is, behold.

*Voilà*, there is, behold.

*à Vue d'œil*, perceptibly.

*Y*, there, therein, within, thither.

## EXERCISES ON THE PRECEDING ADVERBS.

Your sister left all her things IN DISORDER. —  
*laisser*, v.

\* This adverb takes the nature of a noun adjective; and becomes declinable in French, when placed before another adjective feminine beginning with a consonant : ex.

*Ces femmes paroissoient tout effrayées* These women seemed quite fright-  
*et toutes consternées,* tened and quite dismayed.

I hope you will not do so.—You did not know me  
 AT FIRST.—A YEAR HENCE you will (be able) to  
 speak French TOLERABLY WELL.—My father says I  
 shall go to\* France THE NEXT YEAR.—Your broth-  
 er and mine have settled their affairs AMICABLY.—  
*régler, v.*

She dresses herself QUITE AFTER THE ENGLISH  
*s'habiller, v.*  
 FASHION, but she lives AFTER THE FRENCH WAY.  
*vivre, v.*

—Your sister has a cap AFTER THE TURKISH  
*bonnet, m.*

FASHION.—If it be fine weather, I shall be (back)  
*de retour*  
 THIS DAY FORTNIGHT.—You may say what  
*pouvoir, v.*

(you please,) but she is NOTHING NEAR so handsome  
*il vous plaira, v.*

as her sister.—We will get up EARLY, and set out  
*se lever, v.*

BETIMES.—I wish you A GREAT DEAL of pleasure.  
 —It (is better) to tell it him BY WORD OF MOUTH  
*valoir mieux, v.*

than to write to him.—I was so MUCH THE MORE  
 convinced of what you told me, that I dismissed him  
*renvoyer, v.*

THIS DAY MONTH.—THIS DAY WEEK I was  
 (at your house.)—If you do not do it HEARTILY, I  
*chez vous*

will do it myself.—We said it FOR FUN.—THAT  
 EXCEPTED, he has bought it VERY CHEAP.—Have

\* See the article indefinite.



I not won FAIRLY? — You see to HOW MANY  
*gagner, v.*

dangers and HOW MANY reproaches we are liable. —  
*exposé, p. p.*

How dare you run ABOUT whilst your mother  
*pendant que, c.*

(is waiting for) you? — Miss B. is handsome; NEVER-  
*attendre, v.*

THELESS I do not love her. — Put that ASIDE. — He  
 arrived VERY UNSEASONABLY. — We went THERE  
 AGAINST OUR WILL. — They drank three bottles  
 of wine ONE AFTER ANOTHER. — Let us walk ON  
 THIS SIDE. — We learn ON EVERY SIDE that peace  
 (will take place) VERY SOON. — Have they not been  
*avoir, v. lieu, m.*

beaten SOUNDLY? — Come TO-MORROW MORNING  
 to see me. — I WAS LATELY (at your house,) and your  
 brother took all that I said to him IN A WRONG  
 SENSE. — I have heard that your sister will be married  
 IN A SHORT TIME. — She was WITHIN, and I was  
 WITHOUT. — We were more than HALF dead. — Take  
 all these papers and put them OUT OF THE WAY. —  
 You have put on your waistcoat THE WRONG SIDE  
 OUTWARDS. — I was stopped AT NOON. — We will  
 tell him what we think IN A PROPER TIME AND  
 PLACE. — He did it IN THE TWINKLING OF AN  
 EYE. — I have written to your brother TWICE, but he  
 has NOT YET answered my letters. — HOW MANY  
*répondre, v. à*

TIMES shall I be obliged to bid you (to) go THERE?  
*de dire, v. de*

—How

—How<sup>1</sup> troublesome<sup>4</sup> you<sup>2</sup> are<sup>3</sup> !—My brother knows  
*importun*,adj.

the French THOROUGHLY.—How LONG have you  
been in England ?—How LONG did he learn French ?  
—How LONG had you been in Italy when you wrote  
to me ?—I have told you so MANY TIMES to write to  
your mother, that I am QUITE weary of repeating  
*fatigué*,p.p.

it.—Give him BUT LITTLE wine.—Is Mr. D. UP  
STAIRS ?—Come THIS WAY.—How MANY miles  
are there from HERE to Hampton-Court ? — There<sup>2</sup>  
must<sup>1</sup> be<sup>3</sup> A GREAT DEAL of game HEREABOUTS.  
*il doit*,v. *gibier*,m.

—I will call upon your brother WITHIN A FORT-  
*passer*,v. *chez*,p.

NIGHT.—Come back IMMEDIATELY.—How sorry  
*Revenir*,v. *fâché*,adj.

I am for having displeased you !—I NEVER will see him  
*de*

again.—How FAR will you go ?—My master comes  
HERE EVERY OTHER DAY.—How LONG have you  
learned mathematics ? — How FAR is it HENCE ? —  
I shall go to Richmond IN A FORTNIGHT.—How  
LONG do you intend to stay THERE ?—If you go  
*se proposer*,v. *rester*,v.

THAT WAY, you may call at Mr. H—'s.  
*pouvoir*,v. *passer*,v. *chez*,p.

—How MUCH I should be obliged to you if you would  
grant me that favour !—FROM THAT TIME I saw  
him NO MORE.—I do not believe that he EVER will  
follow your advice.—They are NOW in England.—He  
*conseil*,m.



will not do it FOR LESS.—THENCE I went to France,  
and soon after to Italy.—How LONG were you in  
*après, p.*

Germany? — She has written three letters IN A TRICE.  
*Allemagne, f.*

—Virtue is amiable EVEN in an enemy. — You  
*dans, p.*

work BETTER than your sister. — She reads French  
BETTER AND BETTER, but she writes WORSE AND  
WORSE. — THE LESS you work, THE LESS you  
will improve. — There are now in America 30,000  
*faire des progrès.*

men AT THE LEAST. — Did you see Miss Nicole's  
picture? — It is drawn TO THE LIFE. — I (asked for)  
*portrait, m. fait, p. p. demander, v.*

a glass of wine, and NOT a glass of water. — How  
*verre, m.*

LONG have your brothers been at Mr. L—'s academy?

— WHERE did you meet them? — Did not they tell  
you WHENCE they came? — WHICH way are they  
gone? — I will NEITHER see them NOR speak to him. —

The hole, THROUGH WHICH they (made their escape,)  
*s'échapper, v.*

was so small, that I do not know HOW they could get  
out. — I will follow you STEP BY STEP. — Have you  
dined? — NOT YET. — AT LAST the rebels retired  
*se retirer, v.*

into the woods with a great loss. — The fight was  
*dans, p. bois, m. perte, f. combat, m.*

cruel and bloody, and (was kept up) a LONG TIME  
*sanglant, adj. se maintenir, v.*

with an equal advantage ON BOTH SIDES. — If you give  
me a verb, I will learn it LITTLE BY LITTLE. — She  
is

is as tall as you, or THEREABOUTS.—WHY did not you come SOONER ? —How LONG has that gentleman been waiting for me ? —I have written three letters, NEITHER MORE NOR LESS.—You are ABOVE twenty years old. —You give me MORE THAN ENOUGH.—You come VERY SEASONABLY.—You are HARDLY EVER at home.—How LONG did Mrs. B. wait for me ? —They killed him PURPOSELY.—How LONG has he been dead ? —I met him BY CHANCE.—You study MORE THAN EVER.—He gave me three yards of muslin  
*mousseline, f.*

INTO THE BARGAIN.—If I have done that. *to*  
*pour, p.*  
oblige you, I will MUCH MORE so do it for her.—THE MORE we are above others, THE MORE it  
*au-dessus, de, p.*

becomes us to be modest and humble.—Virtue reigns SO MUCH THE MORE SOVEREIGNLY as it does not reign by force and fear.—We dine MOST COMMONLY between three and four o'clock.—Our eating-room is  
*entre, p.*

EVEN WITH THE GROUND.—Shall I begin UPWARDS or DOWNWARDS ? —Begin UPWARDS.—He has torn my book OUT OF ILL-NATURE.—WHEN  
*déchirer, v.*

shall I have the pleasure to see you ? —How LONG had  
*de*  
your friend been in his regiment when he died ? —How  
*à*

LONG was he ill ? —To WHAT PURPOSE shall I write to him ? —WHY do you walk BACKWARDS ? —  
*marcher, v.*

You!



You SELDOM come to see us.—Do DIRECTLY what  
 I bid you.—She has left all things TOPSY-TURVY.  
*dire, v.*

—He committed the murder IN COOL BLOOD.—  
*meurtre, m.*

We will dance BY TURNS.—Do you believe it IN  
 GOOD EARNEST ?—GO STRAIGHT ALONG.—WHY  
 do not you come to see us NOW AND THEN ?—SOME-  
 TIMES I am at my uncle's in London, and some-  
*chez, p. à, p.*

TIMES at my grandfather's in the country.—You  
 arrive TOO LATE.—She speaks AT EVERY TURN  
 without knowing what she says.—Have patience, I  
*jans, p. savoir, v.*

hope you will succeed ONE TIME OR OTHER.—I have  
 (looked for) you EVERY WHERE.—She can find it  
*chercher, v.*

NO WHERE.—He struck me WITH ALL HIS MIGHT.  
*frapper, v.*

—She is better than her sister IN ALL RESPECTS.—  
 I will follow you WHEREVER you go.—Her  
 (by the fut.)

misfortunes touch me TO THE QUICK.—My sisters  
*malheur, m.*

were QUITE transported with joy when they heard the  
*de, p.*

happy news of the victory.—GO WITH ALL SPEED  
 to Mrs. Lucas, and tell her to come DIRECTLY.—  
*chez, p. de*

HERE is my room, and THERE is yours.

## S E C T. VII.

### OF PREPOSITIONS.

Prepositions are divided into the three following classes. First, those that govern the genitive or ablative cases. Secondly, those that govern the dative. And, lastly, those that govern the accusative.

✕ First, the following govern the genitive or ablative.

*Autour de*, about, round.

*à Cause de*, because of, on account of.

*à Cause de vous, de lui, d'elle, de nous, &c.* on your, his,

*à Côté de*, aside, by. her, our, &c. account.

*à Couvert de*, free, secure, or screened, from.

*à Fleur de*, close to, even with.

*à Force de*,\* by dint of.

*à Moins de*, under.

*à Raison de*, at the rate of.

*à l'Abri de*, sheltered from.

*à l'Egal de*, to, in comparifon.

*à l'Egard de*, with regard, with respect, as to, con-

*à la Faveur de*, by means of. cerning.

*à l'Inſçu de*, without the knowledge of, unknown to.

*à la Manière de,* } in or after the manner or fashion.

*à la Mode de* }  
*à l'Opposite de, or* } over against.  
*Vis à Vis de* }

*au Deçà de,* } on this fide.  
*en Deçà de,* }

*au Delà de*, on that fide, on the other fide.

*au Dehors de*, out, without.

*au Deſſus de*, above, over, upon.

*au Deſſous de*, under, below.

*au Dévant de*, before.

*aller au Devant de*, to go to meet.

*au Derrière de*, behind, on the back part.

*au Dedans de*, in, within.

*au Lieu de*, inſtead of.

\* This propoſition is ſometimes Engliſhed by *with*: ex.

*Il pleure à force de rire,* He cries *with* laughing.



*au Milieu de*, in the middle of.

*au Prix de, en comparaison de*, in comparifon, for to.

*aux Environs de*, about, round about.

*Enfuite de*, after.

*Faute de*, for want of.

*à la Hauteur de*, (fea-term,) off.

*Hors de*, out.

*le Long de*, along.

*Loin de*, far from.

*Près, or Proche de, } near, or nigh, by:*  
*Auprès de,*

*pour l'Amour de moi, de lui, d'elle, de vous, &c.* for my  
 fake, for his, her, your, fake, &c.

*tout Auprès de*, clofe, hard by.

Secondly, The following govern the dative.

*Conformément*, according, purfuant.

*Jufqu' à, or } till, until, even to, as far as, to.*  
*Jufques à,*

*Par rapport à*, with refpect to, on account.

*Quant à*, as for, as to.

Thirdly, The following require the accusative.

*Après*, after.

*d'Après*, after.\*

*Avant*, before.

*Avec*, with.

*à Travers*, crofs, through.

*Chez*, in, to, at, amongft.

*Chez moi, chez toi, chez lui, chez elle, chez nous, &c.* at or

*Contre*, againft. to my, thy, his, her, our, &c. houfe.

*Dans*, in, into, within.†

*Depuis*,

\* We make ufe of this prepoſition in the following ſenſe only.

*Il peint d'après un bon maître,* He paints after a good maſter.

† The uſe of theſe two prepoſitions requires ſome attention from the learner, who is to obſerve, that *dans* always conveys a limited idea, and is followed by the article : ex.

*Il eſt dans la maifon,* He is in the room.

*Mettez-le dans la boîte,* Put it in the box.

*Entrez dans la chambre,* Walk into the room.

*Nous ſommes dans la province de* We are in the county of Surrey.

*Surrey,*

*En,*

*Depuis*, since, from.

*Derrière*, behind.

*Dès*, from.

*Devant*, before.

*de Dessus*, from the top.

*de Dessous*, from under, from beneath.

*Durant*, during.

*En*, in, into, like, as, at.† (See the preceding page.)

*Entre*, between.

*Envers*, towards, with regard to.

*Environ*, about.

*Excepté*,

*Hors*,

*Hormis*,

} except, but, save.

*Moyennant*, for; provided.

*Nonobstant*,

*Malgré*.

} notwithstanding, in spite.

*Outre*, besides.

*Par*, by, through.

*par Deçà*, on this side.

*par Delà*, on that side.

*par Derrière*, behind.

*par Dessus*, about, over.

*par Dessous*, under, below.

*Parmi*, among.

*Pendant*, during, for.

*Pour*, for.

*Sans*, without.\*

*En*, on the contrary, conveys a very determinate idea, and seldom admits of the article, whether expressed in English or not: ex.

*Elle est en Angleterre,*

She is in England.

*Nous logeons en chambre garnie.*

We lodge in ready-furnished lodgings.

*Etre en paix, en guerre,*

To be in or at peace, in or at war.

*Il se conduit en roi,*

He behaves like a king.

\* This preposition is sometimes rendered (in English) by the preterite of the subjunctive, or compound of the imperfect, of the verb *to be* preceded by the conjunction *if*, and sometimes by *but for*: ex.

*Sans vous, je ne fais ce que je deviendrois ;*

If it were not for you, I do not know what would become of me.

*Sans lui, mon frère auroit été puni ;*

Had it not been for him, my brother would have been punished

*Sans elle, je serois mort de faim ;*

But for her, I should have been starved.

*Sauf,*



*Sauf*, saving, but with.

*Selon,*  
*Suivant,* } according to.

*Sous*, under.

*Sur*, upon, about.

*Touchant*, concerning, about.

*Vers*, towards, to.

# OBSERVATIONS ON SOME PREPOSITIONS.

~~ABOVE.~~ This preposition, when preceding a noun expressing *time* or *number*, so as to be turned by *more than* or *longer than*, is to be made in French by *plus de* :  
ex.

*Le combat dura plus de deux heures,*      *The fight lasted above two hours.*

AT is most commonly rendered by *à*, and sometimes by one of the French articles, *au, à la, à l', aux*, according to the gender and number of the noun following : ex.

*Nous étions à dîner,*      *We were at dinner.*

*Vous n'étiez pas au logis,*      You were not *at home.*  
*or chez vous,*

Je vous payerai à la fin de l'année,      I will pay you at the end of the year.

*Il est allé à l'église,*                      He is gone to church.

On dit que vous jouez très-  
bien aux cartes,      It is said you play very well  
   at cards.

After *nouns* or *verbs* denoting *anger*, *derision*, *joy*, *provocation*, *resentment*, *sorrow*, *surprise*, or *concern*, *at* is rendered by one of the following articles, *de*, *du*, *de la*, *de l'*, *des* : ex.

*Il se moque de vous,*                      *He laughs at you.*

*Je me réjouis du bonheur  
qui vous est arrivé,*      I rejoice at the good for-  
tune that has befallen you.

*Nous sommes surpris de ce*      We are surpris'd at what  
*que vous dites,*                      you say.

*At* is made by *chez* when, in English, it precedes the word *house*, either expressed or understood: ex.

*J'étois*

*J'étois chez votre frère,* I was *at* your brother's ;  
*Elle est chez sa tante,* She is *at* her aunt's,  
 that is, at your brother's house, at her aunt's house.

N. B. The same rule is to be observed with respect to the preposition *to*.

✓ By, when it precedes a verb in the participle active, is rendered by *en* : ex.

*Vous parlerez bientôt François en vous appliquant ainsi,* You will soon speak French, by applying so.

By, after the verbs *to sell*, *to buy*, and the like, preceding a noun of *weight* or *measure*, is made into French by *à*, *au*, *à la*, *à l'*, *aux*, according to the gender and number of the following noun : ex.

*Nous ne vendons rien à la livre,* We sell nothing *by* the pound.

*Vous achetez toujours à l'aune,* You always buy *by* the ell.

The above preposition, immediately following the verbs *to kill*, *to wound*, *to knock down*, and the like, is made into French by *d'un coup de*, when it expresses the effect, blow, thrust, stroke, firing, &c. of an instrument by which a man was either killed, wounded, &c. provided the blows have not been repeated : ex.

*Il fut blessé d'un coup de flèche,* He was wounded *by* an arrow.

*Il fut assommé d'un coup de pierre.* He was knocked down *by* a stone.

*Ils furent tués d'un coup de canon,* They were killed *by* a cannon-ball.

If the blows, strokes, thrusts, &c. have been repeated, we make use of *à coups de*, in which case it is most commonly rendered in English by the preposition *with* : ex.

*Ils le tuèrent à coups de flèches.* They killed him *with* arrows.

*Il l'assomma à coups de bâton,* He knocked him down *with* a stick.

For,



✕ **FOR**, after *reflected verbs*, as also those which denote *thanksgiving*, &c. is rendered by one of the following articles, *de, du, de la, des* : ex.

*Je me repens de ce que j'ai fait,* I repent for what I have done.

*Il m'a prié de vous remercier de la part que vous avez prise dans son affaire,* He desired me to thank you for the part you took in his affair.

✕ **FROM**, preceding the name of a *man* or *woman*, or one of the *personal, possessive, relative, or interrogative*, pronouns, after the verbs *to go, to come, to send*, &c. is generally made in French by *de la part de*, or *de ma, de sa, de notre, de votre, de leur*, part : ex.

*De la part de qui venez-vous ?* From whom do you come ?

*Je viens de la part de M. D—,* I come from Mr. D—.

*Allez de ma part chez Madame R—,* Go from me to Mrs. R—'s.

✕ **IN**, after words denoting *pain, hurting, or wounding*, and preceding one of the *possessive pronouns* in conjunction with any part of the body, is to be rendered by one of the following articles, *à, au, à la, à l', aux*, and the *possessive pronoun* left out : ex.

*J'ai mal à la tête,* I have a pain in my head.

*Il étoit blessé au bras et non à la jambe,* He was wounded in his arm, and not in his leg.

*In*, when placed before the article *the*, preceding a noun denoting a part of time, is not to be expressed at all in French : ex.

*Vous le trouverez toujours chez lui le matin,* You will always find him at home in the morning.

✕ **ON** or **UPON**. This preposition is made by *de*, after the verbs *to depend, to live, to subsist*, and the like : ex.  
*Il vit de pain et d'eau,* He lives on bread and water :  
 and by one of the following articles, *de, du, de la, de l', des*, after the verb *to play*, preceding the name of an instrument : ex.

*Vous*



*Vous jouez du violon, de la flûte ;*      You play *on* the fiddle, *on* the flute.

Before the days of the week and the names of the months, preceded by a numeral adjective, the above preposition must not be expressed : ex.

*Venez Vendredi de bonne heure,*      Come *on* Friday early.

*Cela arriva le dix-huit du mois dernier,*      That happened *on* the eighteenth of last month.

*On*, preceding the words *foot, horseback*, meaning the state of walking or riding, is rendered by *à* : ex.

*J'étois à pied, et elle étoit à cheval ;*      I was *on* foot, and she was *on* horseback.

✕ *OVER* is made by the participle passive of the verbs *finir, passer, achever*, when it denotes an action ended : ex.

*Votre frère partit dès que la pluie fut passée,*      Your brother set out as soon as the rain was *over*.

✕ *WITH* is to be rendered by *dans* when it is used before nouns denoting the *purpose, design, or motive*, in the agent : ex.

*Il le fit dans l'attente d'être bien récompensé,*      He did it *with* an expectation of being well rewarded.

*Mon frère est allé chez vous dans le dessein de bien vous gronder,*      My brother is gone to your house *with* a design of scolding you well.

But it must be made by *de* after the following verbs, *to starve, to die, to do, to dispense, to meddle, to encompass, to surround, to load, to accuse, to cover, to strike*, and those denoting fulness ; likewise after the following adjectives, *amorous, charmed, pleased, displeased, endowed, &c.* ex.

*Elle meurt de froid et de faim,*      She starves *with* cold and hunger.

*Ils ne savent que faire de leur argent,*      They do not know what to do *with* their money.

*Je suis content de ce que j'ai,*      I am pleased *with* what I have.

*With* is rendered by *contre* after words denoting *anger or passion* : ex.

*Madame*



*Madame votre mère est fâ- Your mother is angry with*  
*chée contre vous, you.*

*With*, before nouns denoting the *matter, instruments, tools*, or expressing how and in what manner a thing is done or made, is rendered by one of the following articles, *à, au, à la, à l', aux*, according to the gender and number of the following noun : ex.

*Une table à tiroirs, A table with drawers.*

*Bâtir à chaux et à sable, To build with lime and sand.*

*Dessiner au crayon, à la To draw with a pencil,*  
*craie, with chalk.*

*Se battre à l'épée, au pist- To fight with swords, with*  
*olet, pistols.*

The above preposition is not to be expressed after some verbs, such as, *to meet with, to supply with, to reproach with, &c.* ex.

*Il a essuyé bien des chagrins, He has met with many*  
*troubles.*

*Je lui reprochai son ingra- I reproached her with her*  
*titude, ingratitude.*

*Nous lui fournirons tout ce We will supply him with*  
*dont il aura besoin, every thing he wants.*

It is likewise to be suppressed when it expresses the *situation, position, &c.* of a person, or when it is used in the sense of *having, holding, &c.* ex.

*Il se promène toujours un He always walks with a*  
*livre à la main book in his hand ;*

that is, having or holding a book, &c.

## EXERCISES ON THE PREPOSITIONS.

I have sent nothing to your brother BECAUSE OF his idleness, but I forgive him ON YOUR ACCOUNT.—Sit down BY that lady's sister.—Though we are  
*Quoique, &c. (in the subj.)*

NEAR town, we are not yet SECURE FROM all danger.

—He is become a very good master BY DINT OF study  
 and

and practice. — Cut that forrel EVEN WITH the  
ozeille, f.

ground. — He will not sell it UNDER twelve guin-  
terre, f. vouloir, v.

neas. — As to what she says, I do not mind it  
se soucier de, v.

but I cannot help. being surprised AT her manner  
s'empêcher, v.

of answering. — All the prisoners (made their escape)  
s'échapper, v.

BY MEANS of the darkness of the night. — Your broth-  
obscurité, f.

er is gone to London WITHOUT THE KNOWLEDGE  
of your mother. — Now the English ladies (dress them-  
s'habiller, v.

selves) AFTER THE French FASHION. — I give you  
all my books, EXCEPT the History of France. — Why  
did you not play on the fiddle, ON Friday last? — Do  
you not say that you met my father ON THE OTHER  
SIDE OF the bridge? — Yes, I spoke to him ABOUT  
your affairs, and I assure you, he acts AS a tender fa-  
ther who loves you. — We now live ON THIS SIDE OF  
the river; and, if you come to see me, we will fish  
WITH a net or a line. — Mrs. A. is very proud, she—  
filet, m. ligne, f.

thinks herself ABOVE every body. — I am going to MEET  
my aunt, will you go WITH me? — He took my hat  
INSTEAD of his. — Let us go INTO THE MIDDLE OF  
the meadow. — You always travel by night AT the per-  
il of your life. — Do not meddle WITH my affairs,  
meddle WITH your own. — As to us, little satisfied  
WITH his answers, we took other measures. — Your



horse (is worth) very little IN COMPARISON WITH his.  
*valoir, v.*

— He walks two or three times a day ROUND the  
*fois, f.\**

garden WITH a stick in his hand, and only lives ON  
 milk and vegetables. — We drank tea, AFTER  
*légumes, m. prendre, v.*

which we went to the play. — I can do  
*comédie, f. pouvoir, v. faire, v.*

nothing FOR WANT OF money. — How do you mea-  
 sure your cambric, BY the ell or BY the yard? — Do  
*batiste, f.*

not push me OUT OF the room. — We will walk  
*pousser, v.*

BY the river. — They were OFF the Cape of Good  
 Hope when they were taken : ABOVE five hundred  
 men perished in the action. — We are still FAR from  
 our house. — I met your friend Mr. A. NEAR the  
 church. — My mother was buried NEAR this marble  
 pillar. — I do assure you (that) I do it FOR YOUR  
 SAKE. — ON June the 8th, 1376, died Edward, prince  
 of Wales, the delight of the nation, IN the 46th year of  
 his age. The parliament accompanied his corpse TO  
 Canterbury, where he was interred. — Ovid, one of  
 the finest poets of the Augustan age, expired IN  
*Auguste, m. siècle, m.*

the seventeenth year of our Lord, AT Tomi, NEAR  
 Varna, ON the western coast of the Black Sea,  
*occidental, adj. côte, f.*

whither he had been banished BY the emperor Au-  
*où, adv.*

\* Remember the observations after the article *un, une, a or an.*  
*gustus.*

gustus. — Mrs. Fair lives in the Strand, OVER  
*demeurer, v.*

AGAINST Catherine-street. — My brother bought  
yesterday twenty pair of silk stockings AT THE RATE  
of fourteen shillings and six-pence a pair. — He has  
been punished PURSUANT to an act of parliament—  
*parlement, m.*

We accompanied them AS FAR AS Barnet ; there they  
fought WITH swords and pistols ; your brother was  
*se battre, v.*

wounded IN the arm, and my cousin IN THE head.—  
As FOR me, I will not give him a penny.—He ar-  
rived here an hour AFTER you.—Let me drink BE-  
*Laisser, v.*

FORE you.—Did you not see her walk WITH her father ?  
—You mistake, they were both ON horseback.—Yester-  
day I waited, FROM one o'clock TILL five, for the per-  
son whom you were to send to me ; I was beginning to  
grow impatient, when, at last, I saw her coming in.  
*s'impatients, v.                      enfin, adv.*

— Are you not satisfied WITH the behaviour of  
*content, adj.                      conduite, f.*

your son Thomas ? — He behaved LIKE an honest  
man IN that affair. — Miss A. paints AFTER nature.  
— Did she shew you the picture she has drawn WITH  
Indian ink ? — No, but she shewed me her mother's  
*Chine, f.*

picture done WITH chalk ; I assure you it is very  
*craie, f.*

like. — It was the ancient Britons who cut a  
*ressemblant, adj.                      Breton, m.*

road



road THROUGH this mountain.—Are you going.  
*chemin, m.*

TO Mrs. L—'s? ——— No, I am going TO YOUR HOUSE ; but, since I have met you, we will go TO MY HOUSE, where we will dine.—ACCORDING TO what you tell me, and what I have heard, she has a great deal of wit and merit ; and, BUT FOR that large scar she has IN her forehead, she would be very *écatrice, f.*

handsome.—A woman may please WITHOUT beauty, but she cannot succeed WITHOUT virtue. ——— Do not lean AGAINST that wall, it is newly painted *s'appuyer, v.*

WITH oil.—Go INTO my room ; you will find a letter BEHIND the looking-glass ; (be so kind as) to *miroir, m. avoir la bonté de* bring it to me. ——— Do not put yourself BEFORE me,

and never speak to any body WITH your hat ON your head. ——— Go FROM me to Mrs. B.'s, and tell her I shall be glad to see her. ——— No, stay : tell her you come FROM my cousin, who has something to shew her. — FROM this moment I believe you, but I was very angry WITH her when she told me she would *fâché, adv.*

not do it. ——— Be not surpris'd AT it, she often has been accused WITH indifference TOWARDS her best friends.—I have read this book FROM the beginning TO the end. — We saw the camp FROM THE TOP OF the hill.—They dissolv'd the army as soon as it was resolv'd that the campaign was OVER. — He always

ways goes out WITHOUT me. — He poisoned his brother, WITH the hope of inheriting his estates. — The  
*hériter, v. bien, m.*

army marched three days and three nights WITHOUT stopping. — ON the 3d of June, 1664, the English obtained a great victory OVER the Dutch OFF  
*remporter, v. Hollandois, m.*

Harwich, took eighteen ships, and destroyed fourteen more. — At last the king, having broken his  
*Enfin, adv.*

battle-axe and sword BY the force of his blows,  
*hâche d'armes, f.*

was knocked down WITH a stone, and taken prisoner.  
*renversé, p.p. fait, p.p.*

oner. — IN what does happiness<sup>2</sup> consist<sup>1</sup> ? — If

you wish to be happy and esteemed IN this world, live LIKE a man of honour and probity. — Thence we went to France and Italy. — It is reported on all sides that Paris is to be surrounded WITH walls. — My master comes generally IN the morning. — We are BETWEEN fear and hope daily. — Be not unjust TOWARDS your neighbours. — It was ABOUT four o'clock when  
*prochain, m. II*

we set out. — Take all that you please EXCEPT my sword. — UPON what instrument does your sister play ? — She plays very well ON the harpsichord, and she is now learning to play ON the harp. — He will do it FOR two guineas. — I thank you FOR your kindness. — IN France they drink coffee as soon as dinner is OVER. —

*on*

I walk every day NOTWITHSTANDING the bad weather.  
*E e 2*



ther. — I hope you will succeed in your undertaking  
IN SPITE OF Mrs. Slander. — BESIDES his own money,  
he spends all his sister's. — It is said that Gibraltar  
is blocked up BY land and BY sea. — I have passed  
*bloquer, v.*

THROUGH France and Italy. — Let us see whether you  
*si, c.*

can jump OVER the table. — You may go and walk  
*sauter, v.*

when the rain is OVER. — William the Second was  
killed BY an arrow in the New Forest. — We have  
passed THROUGH Germany. — Look UNDER the door.  
*Allemagne, f.*

and you will see it. — Envy, jealousy, and slander;  
*médifance, f.*

always reign AMONG authors. — What have you done  
DURING my absence? — Your aunt has sent me some  
books FOR you. — WITHOUT him what could I have  
done? — He was so mortified AT the disobedience of his  
sons, that, THROUGH grief, he became ill, and died.  
*tomber, v.*

— IF IT HAD NOT BEEN FOR me, he would not have  
paid you. — Do I not live\* ACCORDING TO the rules  
*vivre, v. règle, f.*

you have prescribed? — I found your buckle UNDER  
*prescrire, v. boucle, f.*

the chair. — You said you had left it UPON the ta-  
*laisser, f.*

ble. — I have no money ABOUT me. — Did he not  
write to you CONCERNING that affair? — It was TO-  
WARDS the evening when he arrived.

\* See the *N. B.* before the exercise upon the first conjugation.

## S E C T. VIII.

### O F C O N J U N C T I O N S.

Most of the conjunctions are adverbs and prepositions, but always attended by *de* or *que*. They have been divided into *copulative*, *comparative*, *disjunctive*, *adversative*, *casual*, *dubitative*, *exceptive*, *conditional*, *continuative*, *conclusive*, &c. Instead of following this arrangement, it will be of more importance for the scholar to understand that different conjunctions require different states of the verb. Some require the following verb in the *infinitive mood*, others in the *indicative*, and others again in the *subjunctive*.

These require the following verb in the *infinitive mood*.

*Afin de*, in order to.

✕ *à Moins de*, or } unless.

*Avant de*, better } before.

*Au lieu de*, instead of.

*De crainte de*, or } for fear of.

*De peur de*, }

*Excepté de*, except to.

*Faute de*, for want of.

*Jusqu'à*, to that degree that, till.

*Loin de*, far from.

*Plutôt que de*, rather than.

The following require the verb in the *indicative*.

*Ainsi que*,\* as.

*tout Ainsi que*,\* just as.

*Après que*,\* after that, after.

*à Cause que*, or } because.

*parce que*, }

*à Ce que*, according as, or to.

*à condition que*,\* on or upon condition that.

*à Mesure que*,\* in proportion as, as.

*Au lieu que*, whereas.

*Aussitôt*



*Aussitôt que,*  
*D'abord que,*  
*Dès que,*  
*Sitôt que,* } \* as soon as.

*Dès le moment que,* \* the moment that.

*Aussi long-tems que,* \* as long as.

*Aussi loin que,* \* as far as.

*Attendu que,* considering that, seeing that.

*Comme, or*  
*Entant que,* } \*as.

*De façon que,*  
*De manière que,*  
*De sorte que,*  
*Si bien que,*  
*Tellement que,* } in such a manner that, so that.

*Depuis que,* ever since, since.

*Puisque,* since.

*De même que,* even as.

*D'où vient que,* how comes it to pass that, why.

*Lorsque, or*  
*Quand,* } \*when.

*Mais, but. †*

*Outre que,* besides that.

*à Peine — que,* hardly, scarcely,—but, than, or when.

*Pendant que,*  
*Tandis que,* } \*whilst, while.

*Peut-être que,* perhaps.

*Quand,*  
*Quand même,* } though.

*Que — de — ne,* than, ‡ only.

*Selon que,*  
*Suivant que,* } \*according as.

† This conjunction, when beginning a sentence, is always rendered by *mais*. In the middle of a sentence, the word *but* is always rendered by *ne* before the verb, and *que* after it.

‡ It has already been remarked in the degrees of comparison, that every comparative must be attended by the conjunction *que*, than; it must be now observed, that, if *que* precedes a verb in the infinitive, it is to be followed by *de*. But if the verb be neither in, nor can be turned by the infinitive, the conjunction *que* must then be attended by *ne*; that is, *que* before the noun or pronoun, and *ne* before the verb.

*Tant*

*Tant que*,\* as long as.

*Autant que*,\* as much as.

*d'Autant que*, whereas, for so much as, since.

*d'Autant plus—que*, so much more, the more, — as.

*Toute fois*, yet, nevertheless.

*Toutes les fois que*, every time, as often as, whenever.

*Sinon que*, except that.

*Si*, if, in case, whether.

This last conjunction, instead of being repeated in a sentence, is more elegantly rendered by *que*, with the verb following it in the *subjunctive mood*, as, instead of saying,

*Si vous venez chez moi, et si vous ne me trouvez pas,*      *If you call upon me, and do not find me at home,*

it is more elegant to say,

*Si vous venez chez moi, et que vous ne me trouviez pas, &c.*

*Que* must also be repeated in the second part of a sentence, as well as the pronoun, when there is a conjunction in the first part of it; in this case *que* requires the following verb to be put in the same mood as the preceding : ex.

*Dès que je l'aurai vu et que je lui aurai parlé, je vous le ferai savoir ;*      *As soon as I have seen him and spoken to him, I will let you know it.*

*Quoiqu'il soit plus riche que vous, et qu'il ait de meilleurs amis ;*      *Though he be richer than you, and have better friends.*

(\*) The conjunctions that have this mark affixed, when followed in English, by a verb in the present tense of the indicative mood, and connected with another verb denoting futurity, require the verb, which, in English, is put in the present, to be rendered, in French, by the future.

The following require the verb in the *subjunctive mood*.

*Afin que* } that, in order that, to the end that.  
*Pour que* }

*Avant que*, before that.

*Au. or en cas que*, in case that, if, suppose that.



✕ *à Moins que, †*

*Excepté que,*

*Si ce n'est que,*

*Que——ne,*

} unless, till.

✓ *Bien que,*

✓ *Encore que,*

*Quoique,*

*Tout† — que,*

} though, although, for all that.

*Bien entendu que,* with a proviso that, upon condition that, provided that.

*De crainte que, †*

*De peur que,*

*Dieu veuille que,* God grant.

*Plaise or plutôt à Dieu que,* please God, or would to God.

*à Dieu ne plaise,* God forbid.

*Hormis que,*

*Hors que,*

} save that.

*Jusqu'à ce que,* till, until.

*Loin que,* far from.

✓ *Moyennant que,*

*Pourvu que,*

} save that.

*Nonobstant que,* notwithstanding that.

✕ *Pour peu que,* how little soever.

*Sans que,* without that.

*Soit que,* whether, —— or,

*Supposons que,* let us suppose that.

*Tant s'en faut que,* it is so far from.

## EXERCISES ON THE CONJUNCTIONS.

IN ORDER TO learn well, one must study with a  
*devoir, v.*

great deal of attention. — It will be impossible for you

† These conjunctions require the negation *ne* before the following verb : ex.

*De crainte, or de peur, qu'ils ne viennent,* For fear they come.

*A moins qu'il ne le fasse,* Unless he do it.

‡ See observations upon the pronouns indefinite.

to learn French UNLESS you be diligent. — Let us  
*de*

breakfast BEFORE we begin (any thing.) — He is gone  
*rien*

to church INSTEAD OF coming with us. — I would  
 not do it FOR FEAR OF displeasing you. — FAR FROM  
 exciting them to fight, I did all that I could to  
*à se battre, v.* *pour, p.*

prevent them. — She would do (any thing) (in the) world  
*tout au*

RATHER THAN speak to him. — I love you, BECAUSE  
*en*

you behave better THAN your brother does. — He  
*se comporter, v.*

will write to you ON CONDITION THAT he will speedi-  
*prompte-*  
 ly receive your answer. — My mother will come  
*ment, adv.*

to see you, PROVIDED you promise me to go to the play  
*en*

with her. — We were HARDLY arrived WHEN it began  
 to rain. — I called at your sister's AS you (had) desired  
*à passer, v.*

me. — So THAT you saw her and spoke to her. — She  
 said nothing to me, EXCEPT THAT it was impossible  
 for her to do what you required of her. — WHEN you  
*en*

are going to undertake an affair of importance, per-  
 mit me to tell you that you ought to consult you  
*de* *consulter, v.*

friends BEFORE you begin it ; FOR, THOUGH you have  
 good relations, your merit be known, and you do not  
*parent, m.*

want





not see Mr. Brown this morning ? — Yes, BUT I could not speak to him.—If you could give me BUT the half of the money you owe me, I should be very much obliged to you.—How COMES IT THAT your sister has not yet sent me the books I lent her a fortnight ago\* ? —As SOON AS I have dressed myself and breakfasted, I will go to see him.—Your brother was † BUT twenty years old WHEN he was made a captain.—He had more experience THAN you have.—Send Miss White to me WHEN she has done writ-  
*fini, p.p. de*

ing.—WHILST you play and lose your money, your sister is learning her lesson.—We must pity him who has no talent, and ONLY despise him who has no virtue.—All men seek after riches, AND YET we see  
*rechercher, v.*

few rich men happy.—Play on the harpsichord  
*clavecin, m.*

WHILE I write my letters.—If you loved to  
*à*  
study AS MUCH AS you love to play, I should have (no occasion) to complain.—I punish you AS you de-  
*aucun sujet, m.*

serve.—You will never be respected UNLESS you forsake the bad company you keep.—As LONG AS  
*abandonner, v.*

you behave well, you will be dear to me.—That  
*se comporter, v.*

would give me more pleasure THAN you imagine.—  
*s'imaginer, v.*

\* See the verb *y avoir* conjugated impersonally.

† See the remark after the verb *être*, to be.



I do not think that true philosophy may be less useful  
*penfer, v.*

to women than men ; BUT I remark that the most  
*remarquer, v.*

part of those who meddle with it are BUT very bad  
*se mêler, v. de*

philosophers, without becoming better wives for it.—

In short, said this good king, I shall only think myself  
happy IN AS MUCH AS I cause the happiness of my  
people.—How many people can ONLY be convinced  
by experience !——The general arrived yesterday  
morning at the camp, weary and tired, BUT very sea-  
*las, adj.*

sonably : immediately he gave his orders to be-  
*pour, p. en-*

gin the action, THOUGH he had not yet all his  
*gager, v.*

troops. They fought with obstinacy on both sides  
*se battre, v. opiniâtreté, f.*

UNTIL the beginning of the night. I assure you  
*entrée, f.*

THAT both our officers and soldiers have performed  
*faire, v.*

prodigies of valour.—I see the king and queen EVERY  
TIME I go to Windsor.—If your father do not arrive  
to-day, and IF you want money, I will lend you  
*avoir besoin*

some.—He interrupts me AS OFTEN AS I speak.—  
BESIDES THAT he never studies, and is always in the  
country, he has not so much wit as his sister.—If  
you should see your sister, and speak to her, &c.—I  
will explain to you every difficulty, (IN ORDER) THAT

you

you may take courage and learn well. — IF you study and take pains, I assure you that you will learn the French language in a very short time. — Carry that money to Mrs. N. (IN ORDER THAT she may pay the writing-master WHEN he comes. — Did you not receive your goods BEFORE war was declared? — In case Mr. ——— calls here, tell him I am not at home,  
*passer, v.*

and ask him WHEN he will come to see me at Richmond. — You cannot finish (to-night,) UNLESS I help you.  
*ce soir* *aider, v.*

— IF you love me, and are willing to oblige me, do not go to France with her. ——— She shall not go into  
*à*

the country UNLESS I go with her. ——— I will write again to your brother to-morrow, LEST he has not received my last letter. — I give you that penknife, ON CONDITION THAT you will not make a bad use of it. — I shall not set out TILL I have dined. — I will not lend it to you, UNLESS you promise me to return  
*de rendre, v.*

it to her soon. — They are not happy, THOUGH they be rich. — How COMES IT that, as we grow older,  
*devenir, v.*

we do not grow wiser? ——— IF men were wise, and would follow the dictates of reason, they would save  
*lumière, f.* *épargner, v.*

themselves many sorrows. ——— THOUGH you should have the best master in England, and learn all the rules of the grammar, IF you do not put them in practice you will never speak good French. — We  
avoided





ways require the conjunction *que* after them, with the following verb in the *subjunctive mood*. In short, in those *dispositions* of mind where the will is chiefly concerned, or whenever we express a thing with some degree of *doubt* or *hesitation*, then the verb, which, in English, is put in the infinitive mood, the participle active, or the future tense, must, in French, be put in the subjunctive mood :

<i>Je veux qu'il fasse cela,</i>	I will have* him <i>do</i> that.
<i>Je doute que vous le fassiez,</i>	I doubt of your <i>doing</i> it.
<i>Je ne crois pas qu'elle vi-</i> <i>enne,</i>	I do not believe she <i>will</i> <i>come.</i>

See *FALLOIR*, and the rules after it. *ante 274.*

*Qui, que, or dont*, preceded by a superlative, require the following verb in the subjunctive mood : ex.

<i>C'est, la plus belle femme</i>	She is <i>the handsomest</i> wom-
<i>qui puisse se voir, or que</i>	an <i>that can</i> be seen,
<i>je connoisse,</i>	or <i>that I know.</i>

When *qui* stands as a nominative to a verb, denoting a condition, it also requires the following verb to be put in the subjunctive mood : ex.

<i>Je veux une femme, qui soit</i>	I will have a wife <i>that is</i>
<i>belle,</i>	handsome ;
that is, <i>on condition, provided</i> , she be handsome.	

\* It may be seen, by this instance, that, after the verb *vouloir*, the verb *to have* is not expressed, but rendered in French by *que*. It must also be observed, that the sign of the future tense *shall*, when it refers to the will of a person, and meaning *I choose, I do not choose, do you choose?* &c. must be rendered in French by the present tense of the indicative mood of the verb *vouloir*, according to the number and person, with the following verb in the subjunctive mood : ex.

<i>Je veux que vous me montriez cette</i>	You <i>shall</i> shew me that letter, that
<i>lettre,</i>	is to say, I <i>choose</i> you should shew
	me that letter.

<i>Je ne veux pas que votre frère sorte</i>	Your brother <i>shall</i> not go to-
<i>aujourd'hui,</i>	day.

<i>Voulez-vous que je danse ?</i>	<i>Shall</i> I dance ? that is to say, do you
	<i>choose</i> I should dance ? &c.



## EXERCISES UPON THE PRECEDING RULES.

I do not believe that your mother will arrive to-day.  
—She wishes you may succeed in all your under-  
*pouvoir, v.*

takings.—You would have her return to-morrow,  
*vouloir, v. revenir, v.*

but that is impossible.—I fear she (will go away)  
*craindre, v. s'en aller.*

without speaking to me.—I will have your father know  
what you have done, you must stay here till he comes.  
*rester, v.*

—I much fear he will come sooner than you expect  
*attendre, v.*

him.—Do you not say you are surpris'd that he has not  
written to you ? for my part, I do not wonder at it ; for,  
*quant à moi,*

he is the most negligent man I know.—Do you think  
he will succeed and obtain the place he aims at ?—  
*aspirer, v.*

Your mother would have you come directly : why  
*vouloir, v.*

do you not come then ?—You wish him to pay you ;  
he has no money ; I am obliged to lend him some every  
*de*

day.—You have had much trouble, and we all fear  
lest hereafter he should give you much more.—If you  
believe him to be your friend, why then do you not  
follow his advice ?—It is necessary for you to go there,  
*que*

and assure him that he has done nothing that ought  
*devoir, v.*

(to

(to make me angry.)—I wonder that Mr. R. has not  
*fâcher, v.*

yet asked your sister in marriage.—He is the most  
charitable man we have in the neighbourhood; his  
purse is always open to any one who is poor and in-  
dustrious.—Did you not tell me you (sought for) a  
*chercher, v.*

master who had a good pronounciation and a great deal  
of patience?—I know nobody that improves  
*faire des progrès*

more than Miss K——; and, when she was learning  
French, had she learned it by rule, she would speak,  
write, and translate, now much better than Miss S—,  
though she was two years in France.—If you meet  
her, and\* she speak to you, do not answer her.—Or-  
der her to do it.—I absolutely intend that she shall  
*vouloir, v.*

go there directly, and tell him, that, whether he be ill  
or well, I will have him set out as soon as he has receiv-  
ed my letter.—Do you imagine we are sure they  
*s'imaginer, v.*

will come to-night?—I will have you see my house,  
and tell me what you think of it.—Has not your broth-  
er some friends to whom he can trust?—Do you  
*se fier, v.*

think it is possible for you (to bring it about?)—  
*croire, v.* *de en venir à bout, v.*

Your father has bought the finest horse that I have ever  
seen.—It is just we should suffer, since we deserve it.  
*souffrir, v.* *mériter, v.*

\* See the remark on the conjunction *si*, if.



—I do not say I have seen it.—He (was afraid) left  
*craindre, v. que ne*  
 you should come whilst he was (gone out.)—You did  
*sortir, v.*

not think that she wanted to deceive you when she  
*vouloir, v.*

told you that ?—I wonder you should doubt that  
*être surpris, v.*

it is your daughter who, &c.—Is there any lady of  
 five-and-twenty years that appears more reasonable than  
 she does ?—My father would have me walk all the

way.—Our master has ordered that we should get up  
 to-morrow morning early.—Do you think my mother  
 will let us go to the ball next week.—Your sister  
 shall go with me to Croydon, and not you.—If you ever  
 choose a friend, I wish you may choose one whom you  
 esteem, and who may be an honest man.—Were Mr. S.  
 discreet and willing to undertake that affair, I would  
 communicate it to him immediately.—It will be better  
 for you to go and speak to him yourself whilst he is in  
 town ; I do not doubt of his undertaking it, he is the  
 most diligent and the most careful man we have in this  
 country.—However, I would not have you do things  
 too precipitately : consult somebody who is your friend  
 and on whom you can rely.—Were I certain that you  
 would speak to him about it, I would desire him to  
 come and dine with us to-morrow ; for, I am to see him  
 to-night at his brother's.—Shall my brother shew you  
 his translation ?—Do you know any body who is going  
 to

to France ? I have something to send to my sister.---  
à

Yes, I know a gentleman who is going to Paris : shall  
I tell him to (call upon) you ?---I am certain that he  
*de passer chez* *sûr, adj.*

will satisfy you : are you certain he will satisfy me ?---  
Your uncle is very glad you have written to your father.  
---I will give you no rest unless you be reconciled with  
*que ne*

your mother.---If you do not follow my advice, be-  
lieve me, it is the greatest misfortune that can happen  
to you.---I do not believe it is she who has done it.  
---Do you believe it ?---Babylon was the finest city  
that ever was built.---The best reason I can give  
*pouvoir, v.*

you is, that I was not well.---If you lend me a  
*se porter, v.*  
horse, lend me one that goes well.

---

## S E C T. VIII.

### OF INTERJECTIONS.

Interjections, as before observed, serve to express  
the sudden emotions of the soul.

There are several sorts, viz.

Of joy, grief, pain, admiration, aversion, silence, call-  
ing, encouraging, warning, &c. such as,

*Allons, gai !* come, be cheerful !

*ça, courage !* come, come on !

*Bon !* good !

*Ah, mon Dieu !* oh, my God !

*Ah, ouida !* ay, marry !

*Ha, quelle joie !* oh, joy !

*ô ciel !* O heaven !

*Fi ! fie !* fy upon !

*Hola, ho !* ho there !

*Malheur*



*Malheur à !* woe to !  
*Miséricorde !* blefs me !  
*Prenez garde, garde !* have a care !  
*Paix, chut, st, st !* hift, hufh !  
*Silence !* filence !

## EXERCISES UPON THE INTERJECTIONS.

COME, friends, let us rejoice !—GOOD ! here are  
*se réjouir, v.*

news for you, brother.—FY, FY ! Robert, you do  
 not think of what you fay.—OH ! that modesty is  
*penfer, v. à que*

a lovely virtue ! Why do you not endeavour to ac-  
*s'efforcer, v. de ac-*  
 quire it ?—ALAS ! who could exprefs the torments  
*quérir, v.*

I fuffer here ?—WOE TO you ! ufurers, mifers, un-  
*ufurier, m. avare, m.*

juft poffeffors of (other people's) goods, hearken to thefe  
*autrui, pro. bien, m. écouter, v. ∞*

words, The treasures of iniquity (will be of no fervice)  
*parole, f. ne fervir de rien*

to you.—OH ! (lazy people,) go to the ant, con-  
*pareffeux, adj. fourmi, f.*

fider what fhe does, and learn from her wifdom and in-  
 duftry.—BLESS ME ! I am undone !—HUSH there !  
*perdu, p. p.*

SILENCE !—OH ! the difmal effects which lazinefs  
*fnnefte, adj.*

produces !—How<sup>1</sup> tremendous<sup>8</sup> an<sup>2</sup> office<sup>3</sup> is<sup>7</sup> that  
*terrible, adj. le ∞*

of<sup>4</sup> a<sup>5</sup> judge<sup>6</sup> ! What wifdom, what integrity, what  
 knowledge, what fagacity of mind, what experience,  
*fcience, f.*

(are required !)  
*ne faut-il pas avoir, v.*

REMARKS

## REMARKS AND EXERCISES ON THE WORDS *de, à, AND pour.*

Having, in this manner, gone through the respective parts of speech, there will be no necessity for a syntax. It will however be necessary to give some rules for ascertaining the proper usage of the particles *de* or *à* and the preposition *pour*, before a verb in the infinitive mood, and then to point out, by way of exercise, some idiomatical expressions that most frequently occur in the French tongue.\*

When two verbs come together in a sentence, the latter, having no subject expressed or understood, must be put in the infinitive mood, whether the English sign *to* be prefixed or not.

In the following cases, the infinitive mood must never be preceded by a particle.

First, when the verb in the infinitive stands nominative to another verb : ex.

*Aimer est un verbe, To love is a verb.*

Secondly, after the following verbs, *aller, croire, devoir, faire, il faut, savoir, valoir mieux, venir, pouvoir, oser, vouloir, and penser*, when rendered by *to be like* or *near*.

### EXERCISES UPON THIS RULE.

To know how to give seasonably is a talent every

body has not. — To be able to live with one's self, and to know how to live with others, are the two great sciences of life. — I had rather do it now than later.

*aimer mieux, v.*

— Why dare you not undertake it ? I think you may *pouvoir, v.*

\* The great number of idiomatical expressions in the French language has long been considered as an almost insuperable difficulty in the way of its easy acquirement ; however, this difficulty is daily decreasing ; these peculiar expressions are now giving way to a regular construction, and are very little used by the best writers.

succeed.



ſucceed.—He ſays he will lend you his gun with all  
*réuſſir, v.* *fuſil, m.*

his heart, becauſe you know how to make uſe of it.  
*ſe ſervir, v.*

—Ariſtotle, though ſo great a philoſopher, was never  
 able to penetrate the cauſe of that prodigy.—Tell him  
 that he may ſet out when (he pleaſes.)—You never  
*il lui plaira, v.*

could come more ſeaſonably.—We are to go to  
*pouvoir, v.*

Vauxhall to-morrow.—I am going to ſee your brother.

—(Is it not better) to ſet out now, than to wait  
*valoir mieux, v.* *de attendre, v.*

any longer?—If you think to oblige her, you miſtake.—  
*plus* *ſe tromper, v.*

We were to have had a ball yeſterday, but my ſiſter  
 was not well.—You did very right; for, you ought  
*bien, adv. car, c. devoir, v.*

not to ſpeak to him.—I had like to have fallen  
*penſer, v.*

twenty times coming here.—To inſtruct, to pleaſe,  
 and move the paſſions, are the three principal qualifica-  
 tions requiſite in an orator.—If you would read this  
*vouloir, v.*

book, I could lend it to you for four or five days.  
*pouvoir, v.*

The particle *de* is put before a verb in the infinitive mood : firſt, when any of the following words, *of*, *from*, or *with*, are uſed before the participle active of any verb. (See the *N. B.* upon the participle active.)

Secondly, after a noun ſubſtantive joined immediately to a verb, either without any article at all, or with the following articles, *le*, *la*, or *les*.

Thirdly,

Thirdly, after these and the like adjectives, *decent, glad, impossible, necessary, sorry, worthy, vexed, &c.*

Fourthly, after the following verbs : *to advise, to apprehend, to bind, to cease, to command, to conjure, to counsel, to defend, to defer, to deserve, to desire, to endeavour, to entreat, to fear, to hasten, to long, to order, to permit, to persuade, to pray, to pretend, to promise, to propose, to refuse, to remember, to threaten, to tell, to warn, to undertake, &c.* and the greatest part of the reflected verbs.

And, lastly, after the conjunction *que*, preceded by the comparative degree.

### EXERCISES ON THIS RULE.

I have desired your brother to lend me some money.  
*prier, v.*

—My mother ordered me to tell you to go and speak  
*ordonner, v.*

to her directly.—Did you not permit him to go out  
*sortir, v.*

this morning?—I am surprised to find you so ill.—I have not desired you to play.—Bid your sister to  
*Dire, v. à*

send me my book.—We were afraid of displeasing you.—What do you advise me to do in such a case?  
*conseiller, v.*

—My sister and I intend to (call upon) you on Friday next. —I am very glad to hear you are bet-  
*passer, v. chez, p.*

ter. —She does not pretend to speak French as well  
*apprendre, v.*

as you. —We are tired of repeating to you the same things so often. —If you finish your exercise soon, you will have the pleasure of walking, whilst the others will  
*se piquer, v.*

as you. —We are tired of repeating to you the same things so often. —If you finish your exercise soon, you will have the pleasure of walking, whilst the others will



have the trouble of working. — It is necessary to tell her not to go there (any more;) for, she would be in  
*ne plus, adv.*

danger of losing her life. — Endeavour to please your  
*à*

masters by your application to study. — Do you not remember having said you would carry me to the  
*de mener, v.*

camp? — Do they not deserve to be encouraged, who  
*mériter, v.*

undertake to serve the public? — We are all glad to hear you have overcome your enemies; we should have been sorry to have heard the contrary. — What a fool

you are to grieve so, when you have so much reason  
*s'affliger, v.*

to rejoice! — Never expect to speak French well, unless you practise very much. — I shall never refuse to do  
*rendre, v.*

you a service, as long as it is in my power. — Have you a mind to do what you have promised me? — I cannot  
*envie, f.*

not give you the book you asked me for, my brother has not (thought fit) to send it to me back again. —  
*suger à-propos, v.*

I desired you to bring your sister with you; why did you not? \* — I forbid you to speak or write to him  
*défendre, v.*

(any more.) — Would you not be very glad to read  
*davantage, adv.*

and speak Italian? — Condemn the opinion of no one

\* *Do it is understood, and must be expressed in French.*

hastily, but endeavour to regulate your own by the  
*s'efforcer, v.*

line of truth. — Who can hinder me from speaking  
*en vérité, f. empêcher, v.*

or writing to her ? — (Give me leave) to tell you that  
*Permettre, v.*

you do very wrong to disoblige your aunt. — He  
*mal, adv.*

(was not contented) to demolish the temple and pull  
*se contenter, v. à-*

down the statues, but, &c. — Is there any thing  
*battre, v.*

more glorious than to change anger into friendship ? —

(I long) to see your mother, and tell her all that I  
*Il me tarde, v.*

think (about it.)

*en, pro.*

The particle *à* is to be placed before a verb in the infinitive mood : first, after the auxiliary verb *avoir*, to have, immediately followed by a substantive or an adverb, expressing a futurity in the action : ex.

*J'ai plusieurs lettres à écrire*, I have many letters to write.

Secondly, after nouns substantive joined to the verb *avoir*, or nouns adjective joined to the verb *être*, signifying to be *addicted, apt, bent, diligent, disposed, dreadful, easy, fit, hard, inclined, quick, ready, subject, used, &c.*

Thirdly, after the following adjectives, *admirable, good, dexterous, handsome, scarce, the last, the first, the second, &c.*

And, lastly, after the following verbs, *to amuse, to aspire or aim at, to begin, to condemn, to continue or go on, to compel or force, to design or destine, to dispose, to employ or spend, to encourage, to engage, to excite, to exhort, to help, to induce, to invite, to learn, to please, to serve,*



*serve, to take a pleasure, a delight, in or to, to teach, to think, &c.*

### EXERCISES ON THE PRECEDING VERBS.

Come here, Paul, I have something to communicate to you. — We have much to fear in our present situation, and a great many hazards to run. — I cannot go to the play to-night ; for, I have five or six visits to pay. — Is there any thing pleasanter to behold than the *rendre, v.*

flux and reflux of the sea ? — We ought to learn how

to subdue our passions, to conquer our desires, and to *subjuguier, v.*

suffer patiently the most cruel misfortunes. — She is *disgrace, f.*

always the first to (find fault) with what I do. — *trouver à redire à*

Do not gather that apple, it is not yet good to eat. —

Mr. N. told me you had a country-house to let. — *louer, v.*

Mr. F. is a very agreeable man, always ready to serve his friends, but he has the misfortune to be inclined to gaming. — Your master does not love you, because you are not diligent in learning your lesson. — We had for a long time nothing to eat but the fruits which we had gathered. — The greatest part of men spend their time either in doing nothing, or doing what they ought not to do. — What you say of her is very hard to be believed. — Tell him, I have no com-  
*difficile, adj.*

plaint to make about his conduct. — Why do you oblige  
*de*

her

her to ask my pardon since she is not inclined to do it herself? — I believe she takes delight in tormenting me. — Life is so short that we should employ all our days in preparing ourselves for the other world. — There is no more danger to fear. — Use yourself, said  
*s'accoutumer, v.*

a father to his son, to practise virtue; that alone will help you to bear with patience all the vicissitudes of fortune. — Never amuse yourself in reading  
*supporter, v.*

bad books. — You can never spend your time better  
*passer, v.*

than in reading and studying the history of your own country. — Learn to speak well; but above all, to speak truth. — That science, which teaches us to  
*dire, v.*

see things as they are, is highly worthy of cultivation. — An honest man always takes pleasure in obliging his friends. — Does your master teach you to translate English into French? — Do you begin to translate French well? — Why did you not oblige him to pay you what he owes you? — Why do ye not (get ready) to set out with us? — I love to discourse  
*s'appréter, v.* *s'entretenir, v.*

with polite and sensible people.

N. B. For the sake of euphony, the following verbs, *to begin, to continue, to constrain, to engage, to exhort, to compel or force, to endeavour, to oblige*, may be succeeded by *de* or *à*, as most convenient.

The preposition *pour* is to be used before a verb in the infinitive mood, when it expresses the *cause*, the *de-*



*sign*, or the *end*, and then the English particle *to* may be expressed by *in order to*, *to the end*, or *for to*. This preposition is also used after the adverbs *enough*, *on purpose*, *too*, *too much*, or *less* ; and before an infinitive, in the beginning of a period.

### EXERCISES ON THESE RULES.

I will do every thing in my power to please him.—  
Mrs. B— has too much pride to confess she (is in the  
*avoir*

wrong.) — To know geography well, one must, &c.  
*tort*

— I assure you that I came on purpose to see you. —  
She will do all that is in her power to oblige you, and  
to prove to you that she is truly your friend. — The  
wicked live to die, but the righteous die to live.—She  
has vanity enough to believe all that you tell her. —  
What makes the misfortune of kings, is not to have  
friends bold enough to tell them the truth. — I wrote  
to you some time ago, to let you know that your  
*faire, v.*

brothers were arrived.—He promised me that he would  
do every thing to deserve the honour of your protection.  
— I sent yesterday my servant to your aunt's, to desire  
her to send me back again the book I lent her a month  
ago, but she was not at home. — We did all that  
*faire, v.*

we could to pass the river, but could not (bring it  
*venir à*  
about.) — To convince you that I am ready to do you  
*bout de, v.*

any service, (be so kind as) to command me. — Why  
*avoir la bonté de*  
did

did you not punish her for having done what you forbade her to do ?—A man should live a century at least  
*vivre, v. siècle, m.*

to know the world, and many other centuries to know how to make a proper use of that knowledge.

---

## IDIOMATICAL EXPRESSIONS ON THE VERB *AVOIR*, TO HAVE, &c.

*Avoir mal à la tête*, to have the head-ache, or a pain in one's head.

*Avoir mal aux oreilles*, to have sore ears, or a pain in one's ears.

*Avoir mal aux yeux*, to have sore eyes, or a pain in one's eyes.

*Avoir mal au nez*, to have a sore nose, or a pain in one's nose.

*Avoir mal à la bouche*, to have a sore mouth, or a pain in one's mouth.

*Avoir mal aux dents*, &c. to have the tooth-ache, &c.

We say, after the same manner,

*Avoir froid aux mains, aux pieds*, &c. ex.

*J'ai froid à la tête, aux mains, et aux pieds*, My head, my hands, and my feet, are cold.

*Avoir beau*, to be in vain : ex.

*Vous avez beau parler*, It is in vain for you to talk.

*Avoir beaucoup de peine*, to have much ado.

*Avoir de la peine à* : ex.

*J'ai de la peine à vous croire*, I can hardly believe you.

*Avoir besoin de*, to want, to have occasion for.

*Avoir la bonté de*, (*daigner*,) to be so kind as.

*Avoir connoissance, avis, de*, to have notice of.

*Avoir cours*, to take, to be in vogue.

*Avoir la mine de*, to be like, to look like : ex.

*Vous avez la mine d'être intelligent*, You look like a man of understanding.

*Avoir*



*Avoir pitié de*, to pity.

*Avoir part au gâteau*, to share in the booty.

*Avoir bonne mine*, to look well : ex.

*Vous avez très-bonne mine aujourd'hui*, *You look very well to-day.*

*Avoir plus de peur que de mal*, to be more afraid than hurt.

*Avoir raison*, to be in the right.

*Avoir tort*, to be in the wrong.

*N'avoir que faire de*, to have no occasion or business of  
or for.

*N'avoir garde de*, or } are ex- } to be sure not, or  
*Se garder bien de*, } pressed by } by no means.

*Aller son train*, to go one's own way.

*Aller trouver quelqu'un*, to go to somebody.

*Venir trouver*, to come to.

## EXERCISES ON THE PRECEDING RULES.

I could not call upon him this morning, because I had A PAIN IN MY head.—My brother would have come with me, but he has A SORE LEG, and is obliged to keep his bed.—I heard your mother had the TOOTH-ACHE : is it true ?—No, madam; but she has A PAIN IN HER side, which prevents her from going out.—I have not yet finished my exercise ; for, MY HANDS WERE SO COLD that I could not write another word ; besides that, I HAD MUCH ADO to find my books ; I did not know where to look for them.—IT WILL BE IN VAIN FOR YOU to write to me, I never will answer you.—I CAN HARDLY believe what you tell me.—IT IS IN VAIN FOR me to speak to her, she still GOES HER OWN WAY. — Miss N. cried very much yesterday, but I think she WAS MORE AFRAID THAN

HURT.

HURT. — IT HAS BEEN IN VAIN FOR him to torment your sister, she never would tell him what happened to her when she was at Mr. P—'s.—Go to him, and tell him that, unless he returns me my books in a very short time, I will desire his father to send them to me : when you have told him that, do not wait for his answer ; COME TO me immediately, I shall be at your mother's, where I am to dine, and thence go to the play with the whole family. — IN VAIN I give myself trouble, I am not the richer for it. — Your sister does not LOOK SO WELL to-day as she did yesterday. — AM I NOT IN THE RIGHT to go there no more. — I WILL TAKE CARE to prevent them from coming here. — Believe me, I have long suspected them, and now I am very certain that both your cousins and they HAVE HAD A SHARE IN THE BOOTY. — YOU ARE IN THE WRONG not to ask for his horse, he would lend it to you. — Why should I borrow his horse, when I have one of my own ; — I HAVE NO OCCASION FOR his. — BE SO KIND as to carry that letter to Mr. H——'s. but BE SURE NOT to tell him who sent you.—I hope you will BY NO MEANS go there again, after what has happened to you. — He was so altered, that she HAD MUCH ADO to recollect him, but he now begins TO LOOK VERY WELL. — Somebody having advised Philip, Alexander's father, to banish from his states a man who had spoken ill of him ; I SHALL BY NO MEANS DO IT, answered he ; he would go every where and speak ill of me.



ON *ETRE*, TO BE.

*Etre* { à son aise,  
en bonne passe,  
bien dans ses affaires, } to be in good circum-  
stances.  
*Etre bien auprès de quelqu'un,* to be in great favour with  
one.

*Etre mal avec quelqu'un*, to be out with one.

*Etre à charge à quelqu'un*, to be chargeable, troublesome, or a burden, to one.

*Etre but à but*, to be equal.

*Etre de moitié, to go halves.*

*Etre à la portée du fusil, du canon, to be within gun-shot.*

*Etre à la portée de la voix*, to be within call.

*Etre* { *à la veille de,* } to be upon the brink,  
          { *sur le point de,* } or very near to.

*Etre en état de,*  
*Avoir le moyen,* } to afford.

## EXERCISES UPON THE PRECEDING IDIOMS.

Your brother IS IN GOOD CIRCUMSTANCES NOW.—  
Somebody told me he WAS IN GREAT FAVOUR WITH  
the king. — Yes, it is true, but HE IS OUT with my  
father, because HE IS TROUBLESOME to the family. —  
Well, Mr. R. and he ARE EQUALS. — I thought Mr.  
A. and Mrs D. WENT HALVES in that affair, but I  
heard the contrary.—Suffer me to tell you, you do very  
wrong to treat her as you do, you undoubtedly must  
have forgotten she IS IN the queen's FAVOUR.—  
Well, if she BE IN the queen's FAVOUR, do you imag-  
ine I am not to tell her what I think of her conduct?  
—The two fleets WERE WITHIN GUN-SHOT, and  
VERY NEAR beginning the engagement, when we left  
them.—We WILL BE WITHIN CALL.—Why do you  
not take a coach now and then? said she to me. — I  
would

would willingly take one sometimes, replied I to her, but I cannot AFFORD it.

---

ON FAIRE, TO MAKE, OR DO.

- Faire cas de*, to value, to esteem.  
*Faire un tour de promenade*, to take a walk.  
*Faire le malade*, to sham sickness.  
*Faire l'école buissonnière*, to play truant.  
*Faire beaucoup de chemin*, to go a great way.  
*Faire le bel esprit*, to set up for a wit.  
*Faire fond sur quelqu'un*, to rely upon one.  
*Faire savoir*, (*envoyer dire*,) to let one know, to inform,  
*Faire voile*, or } to set sail. to send word.  
*Mettre à la voile*, }  
*Faire faire*, to bespeak, to get made, to oblige one to do.  
*Faire de son mieux*, to do one's best.  
*Faire semblant*, to pretend.  
*Faire de son pis*, to do one's worst.  
*ne Faire que de*, to be just, or  
*venir de*, to have but just : ex.  
*Il ne fait que d'arriver*, He is but just arrived.  
*ne Faire que*, to do nothing but.  
*se Faire des amis, des ennemis*, to get friends, enemies.  
*se Faire des affaires*, to bring one's self into trouble.  
*s'en Faire accroire*, to be conceited, to have a good  
opinion of one's self.  
*c'en est Fait de moi*, I am undone, it is over with me.  
*c'en étoit Fait de lui*, he was undone.  
*c'en sera Fait d'elle*, she will be undone.  
*c'en seroit Fait de nous*, we should be undone.

The English verb, *to cause*, preceding the verb *to be*, immediately followed by a participle passive, is rendered in French, by the verb *faire*, and then the verb *to be* is not expressed, but the participle passive is turned into the infinitive mood : ex.

*Il lui fit couper la tête*, He caused his head to be cut off.

EXERCISES



## EXERCISES OF THE PRECEDING IDIOMS.

Do not lose that ring, for I VALUE it much ; it is a particular friend of yours who gave it me.—I would go and TAKE A WALK, if I were well.—Do you not SHAM SICKNESS now and then ?—Did not your brother PLAY TRUANT last week ?—That man GOES A GREAT WAY for a trifle.—Mr. P. SETS UP FOR A WIT wherever he goes.—You may RELY UPON what I tell you.—He succeeds better IN BEING CONCEITED, than in giving others a good opinion of himself.—I begin to be very much satisfied with his brother, who now DOES HIS BEST, and will soon be able to write a French letter to his father.—LET ME KNOW whether he will pay you or not.—WE SHALL SET SAIL about the fifteenth of the next month.—Why did not you BESPEAK three or four pair of shoes more ?—SEND WORD to your brother, or LET him KNOW, that there is a letter for him here.—I will give him an exercise, and OBLIGE HIM TO DO it in my presence.—She told me, if she WERE OBLIGED TO DO it, she WOULD DO HER WORST.—She PRETENDS not to listen, but I assure you she does not lose a word of what you say.—We were BUT JUST come in when it began to rain.—You DO NOTHING BUT play from morning till night.—That young lady WILL GET friends every where.—If you do not take care, you WILL BRING YOURSELF INTO TROUBLE.—Permit me to tell you that they ARE TOO MUCH CONCEITED.—

Your

Your brother is **UNDONE** if his master should know of it. — In 1606, King James caused the oath of allegiance to be drawn up ; and, in 1621, summoned a parliament, in which were formed the two parties called Whigs and Tories.

---

### ON DIFFERENT VERBS.

*Aimer mieux*, to have rather, to choose rather.

*Se donner bien des airs*, to take a great deal upon one's

*Il ne faut pas s'étonner*, it is no wonder. self.

*Il me tarde de*, I long to.

*Penfer*, to be like. (Followed by a verb in the infinitive mood.)

*S'en prendre à*, to lay the fault or blame upon one, to come upon one for.

*S'y bien prendre*, or

*S'y prendre de la bonne façon*, } to go the right way to work.

*S'y prendre mal*, to go the wrong way to work.

*S'y prendre tout autrement*, to go quite a different, or another, way to work.

*Prendre en mauvaise part*, to take amiss.

*Venir à bout de*, to bring about.

### EXERCISES ON THE PRECEDING IDIOMS.

I **RATHER CHOOSE** to set out now than later. — She told me she **HAD RATHER** do any thing than speak to Mr. L. — They **HAD RATHER** have had you stay in Italy two or three years longer. — Do you not think Mrs. H. **TAKES A GREAT DEAL UPON HERSELF**? — **IT IS NO WONDER** that I do not speak French so well as you ; you have been several years in France, and I never was there. — I hope your brother will succeed in his undertaking ; for, he **GOES THE RIGHT WAY TO WORK**, and I am certain that he **WILL BRING IT**



ABOUT. Your cousin, on the contrary, will always be poor ; for, he GOES THE WRONG WAY TO WORK in every thing he undertakes. — She LONGS to see your father, and tell him how well you have behaved all the time of his absence. — I HAD LIKE to have been killed in coming here. — If he lose, he WILL LAY THE BLAME UPON YOU. — Why do you LAY THE BLAME UPON her ? she was not even in the room when that happened. — Should not your sister succeed, whom WOULD SHE LAY THE FAULT UPON ? — You say you LONG to speak French ; and I too, I assure you. — I LONG to tell you something, nevertheless I do not know how to communicate it to you for fear of disobliging you. — When you have a mind to tell me something disagreeable you should GO QUITE A DIFFERENT WAY TO WORK. — I beg of you not TO TAKE AMISS what I tell you. — Do not begin a thing unless you are sure TO BRING IT ABOUT.

## ON DIFFERENT VERBS.

*Se passer de*, to do without, or to be easy without.

*Savoir bon gré*, to take kindly of.

*Trouver mauvais que*, to take ill of.\*

*Tenir maison*, to be a housekeeper.

*Tenir boutique*, to be a shopkeeper.

*Ne tenir qu'à,* { to be in one's power,  
to lie in one's power : ex.

*Tenir parole,* To keep one's word.

*Il ne tient qu' à moi, à vous, à lui, à elle, &c.* It is in my, your, his, her, power, &c.

*Il ne tient pas à moi, à vous,*      *It is not my, your, fault,*  
*Éc. que,*      *&c. if. †*

\* With the following verb in the subjunctive.

† With the following verb in the subjunctive, and *ne* before it.

*S'en tenir à*, to stand to.

*Vouloir du bien à*, to wish one well.

*En vouloir à*, to have a spite against.

*Je souhaiterois pouvoir*, I wish I could.

*Il y va, il y alloit, de votre vie*, your life is, was, at stake.

*Il y va, il y alloit, de mon honneur*, my honour, is, was,  
concerned in it.

*Je ne laisse pas de*, I nevertheless, or, for all that.

### EXERCISES ON THE PRECEDING IDIOMS.

When I have wine, I drink some ; but, when I have none, I AM EASY WITHOUT. — If you will BE SO KIND AS TO write to my father, to let him know my situation, I SHALL TAKE IT KINDLY OF you. — I WISH I COULD do you that service, I would do it with all my heart. — I hope you WILL NOT TAKE IT ILL IF I write to your uncle at the same time. — I SHALL STAND TO what you say. — HE HAS BEEN A HOUSE-KEEPER these five-and-twenty years. — How little soever you send him to prison, he will TAKE IT KINDLY OF you. — IT IS IN HER POWER to live in the country and be very happy there. — IT WILL SOON LIE IN YOUR POWER to make us happy. — I assure you it SHALL NOT BE MY FAULT IF you do not succeed ; for, I WISH YOU WELL. — Since it LIES IN YOUR POWER to recommend Mr. P. to your friend, why do you not do it ? — When you see him, you may assure him that, since it IS IN MY POWER to do it, I will not forget him. — YOU HAVE A SPITE AGAINST my brother ; because IT WAS IN HIS POWER two or three times to oblige you, and he never would. — I wish I COULD persuade you how sorry he was for it ; but his  
honour



honour WAS CONCERNED in not doing it : and, though you be very angry with him, he would, NEVERTHELESS, (OR, FOR ALL THAT,) do you service if it were IN HIS POWER. — Had I thought he would have refused me that favour, I never would have asked it of him ; I might very well HAVE DONE WITHOUT IT. — Every body admires her humanity ; for, though he has behaved in so ungrateful a manner towards her, she would, NEVERTHELESS, have done him service, if he had lived.

---

GENERAL AND PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES ON  
DIFFERENT SUBJECTS.

Of the UNDERSTANDING of LANGUAGES.

*Intelligence, f.*

The understanding of languages serves (for an) in-  
*de*

troduction to all the sciences. By it, we come, with  
*parvenir, v.*

very little trouble, at the knowledge of a great many fine things, which have cost those who invented them a great deal of pains. By it, all times and countries  
*siècle, m.*

lie open to us. By it, we become, in some means,  
*être, v.*

contemporary to all ages and inhabitants of all kingdoms. It (enables) us to converse with the most  
*mettre en état*

learned men of antiquity, who seem to have lived and laboured for us. We find in them many masters, whom (we are allowed) to consult at leisure ; many  
*il nous est permis*

friends

friends who are always at hand, and whose useful and agreeable conversation improves the mind. It informs  
*enrichir, v.*

us of a thousand curious subjects, and teaches us equally (how to make an advantage) of the virtues and  
*à profiter, v.*

vices of mankind. Without the assistance of languages, all these oracles are dumb to us, and all these  
*pour, p.*

treasures (locked up ; ) and, for want of having the  
*fermer, v.*

key which alone can open us the door (to them,) we  
*en, p.*

remain poor in the midst of so many riches, and ignorant in the midst of all the sciences.

---

### OF STUDY.

We (come into the world) surrounded with a cloud  
*naître, v.*

of ignorance, which is increased by the false prejudices of a bad education. By study, the former is dispersed and the latter corrected. It gives proportion and ex-  
*justesse, f.*

actness to our thoughts and reasonings ; instructs how to range in due order whatever we have to speak or  
*dire, v.*

write, and presents us with the brightest pages of anti-  
\*

quity as patterns for our conduct, whom, in this sense,  
*modèle, m.*

we may well call, with Seneca, the masters and teachers  
*précepteur, m.*

\* See the observation on the preposition *with*.

of



of mankind. But the usefulness of study is not confined to what we call science ; it renders us also more fit for business and employment ; besides, though this

*de plus, adv. quand, c.*

study were of no other use but (the acquiring) a ha-

bit of labour, (the softening) the pains of <sup>†</sup> it, (the pro-

curing) a steadiness of mind, and (conquering) our aver-  
*fermeté, f.* <sup>†</sup>

sions to application or a sedentary life, or whatever else seems (to lay a restraint upon) us, it would still be  
*assujettir, v.*

of very great advantage. In reality, it draws us off  
*retirer, v.*

from idleness, play, and debauchery. It usefully fills up the vacant hours of the day, and renders very agreeable that leisure, which, without the assistance of literature, is a kind of death, and, in a manner, the grave of a man whilst he is alive. It enables us to pass a right judgment upon other men's labours, to enter into society with men of understanding, to keep the  
*fréquenter, v.*

best company, (to have a share in) the discourses of the  
*prendre part à*

most learned, to furnish our matter for conversation, (without which) we must be silent, to render it more agreeable and more useful, by intermixing facts with reflections, and setting the one by the other.

*relever, v.*

† These participles active are to be rendered, in French, by the infinitive.

INDOLENCE

## INDOLENCE CHARACTERIZED.

Indolence deprives men of all that activity which should call forth their virtues and make them illustrious. An indolent man is scarcely a man ; he is half a woman. He wills and unwills in a breath. He may have good intentions to discharge a duty, while that duty is at a distance ; let it but approach, let him view the time of action near, his hands immediately (drop down) *tomber, v.*

in languor. What (can be done) with such a man ?  
*peut on faire* \*

He is absolutely good for nothing. Business tires him, reading fatigues him, the service of his country interferences too much with his pleasures, and even attendance at court, though for the time of advancement, is too great a restraint upon him. His life should be passed on a bed of down. If he be employed, mo-  
*duvet, m.* *s'employer, v.*

ments (are as) hours to him ; if he be amused, hours  
*sembler, v.* *s'amuser, v.*

are as moments. In general, his whole time eludes him ; he lets it glide unheeded, like water under  
*insensiblement, adv.*

a bridge. Ask him what he has done with his morning.  
\* *matinée, f.*

he knows nothing about it ; for, he has lived without one reflection upon his existence. He has slept as long as it was possible for him to sleep, dressed slowly, amused himself in chat with the first person that called upon him, and taken several turns in his room till dinner.  
*faire, v.*

\* See the observation on the preposition *with*.

Dinner



Dinner is served up, and the evening will be spent as unprofitably as the morning, and his whole life as this day. (Once more,) such a man is good for nothing.  
*Encore une fois, adv.*

It is only pride that can support him in a life so worthless, and so much beneath the character of a man.

---

### ANECDOTE OF THE CARDINAL VIVIERS.

John de Brogni, Cardinal of Viviers, who presides at the council of Constance as dean of the cardinals, had been a hog-driver in his infancy. Some monks, passing by the place where he was busied in that mean employment, and taking notice of his wit and vivacity, offered to carry him to Rome, and bring him up to study. The boy accepted of their offer, and went straight to a shoe-maker to buy a pair of shoes for his journey ; the shoe-maker trusted him with part of the price, and told him, smiling, he should pay him the rest when he was made a cardinal. He became a cardinal in reality, and did not forget his former low condition, but took care to perpetuate the memory of it. In a chapel he built at Geneva, over against the gate of St. Peter's church, he caused this adventure to be carved in a stone, where he is represented young and without shoes, keeping hogs under a tree, and all around the wall are the figures of shoes, to express the favour he had received from the shoe-maker. This monument is still subsisting at Geneva.

---

### OF ENGLAND.

England is truly the queen of isles, the empire and citadel of Neptune : it is, at the same time, the Peru of Europe, the kingdom of bacchus, the school of Epicurus, the academy of Venus, the country of Mars, the residence of Minerva, the bulwark of Holland, the scourge of France, the purgatory of the friends of subjection, and, in one word, the paradise of liberty. The ladies



ladies there are very handsome ; courage is as if it were natural to the men, but it is carried to an excess that approaches near to brutality. Mental talents there are as great as in any other country, or perhaps greater : it is there that fortune may be justly said to pour out her favours with a liberal hand. The language of England is a mixture of all those that are spoken in Europe, but it has a greater degree of energy, and is more copious than any other. In short, this nation seems to want nothing to complete its happiness but the secret of knowing how to enjoy it. The natural inquietude of the people, and their excessive jealousy with respect to their privileges and freedom, have often plunged them into all the horrors of civil war, which have brought them (to the very verge) of destruction.

*à deux doigts*

From the observations I have been enabled to make, I can with safety say, that no place is more capable of affording pleasure to a young man, who understands the language, and has a fortune sufficient to support the expenses of a gentleman.

### FRATERNAL AFFECTION.

The king of Cucho had three sons, and, like many other parents, having most affection for the youngest, some days before his death declared him his successor to the exclusion of his brethren. This proceeding was the more extraordinary as it was contrary to the laws of the kingdom. The people, therefore, thought that, after the death of the king, they might, without any crime, raise the eldest son to the throne. This design was universally approved of ; but the new king, calling to mind his father's last words, rejected the offer, and taking the crown, placed it on the head of his youngest brother, publicly declaring that he renounced it, and thought himself unworthy of it, as he was excluded by his father's will, and his father could not now retract what he had done. His brother, being affected with such a generous action, instantly entreated him not to oppose the inclination of the people, who desired him



for their ruler. He urged that he alone was the lawful successor to the crown which he refused, and that their father could not infringe the laws of the kingdom ; that he had been betrayed by an extravagant fondness ; and that, in a word, the people had the power of redressing any breach in the established law. Nothing, however, was capable of persuading his brother to accept of the crown. There was a glorious contest between the two princes ; and, as they perceived that the dispute would be endless, they retired from court. Thus, each having both conquered and been vanquished, they went to end their days together in peaceful solitude, and left the kingdom to their other brother.

## INGRATITUDE PUNISHED :

### AN EASTERN TALE.

He that's ungrateful has no fault but one,

All other crimes may pass for virtues in him. — YOUNG.

A dervise, venerable by his age, fell ill in the house of a woman, who had been long a widow, and lived in extreme poverty in the suburbs of Balfora. He was so touched with the care and zeal with which she had assisted him, that, at his departure, he said to her, "I have remarked that you have wherewith to subsist alone, but that you have not substance enough to share it with your only son, the young Abdallah. If you will trust him to my care, I will endeavour to acknowledge, in his person, the obligations I have to you for the care you have taken of me." The good woman received this proposal with joy, and the dervise departed with the young man, advertising her, that they must perform a journey which would last near two years. As they travelled, he kept him in affluence, gave him excellent instructions, cured him of a dangerous disease with which he was attacked ; in fine, he took the same care of him as if he had been his own son. Abdallah a hundred times testified his gratitude to him for all his bounties ; but the old man always answered, "My son, it is by actions that gratitude is proved ; we shall see, in a proper time and place, whether you are so grateful as you pretend."


One



One day, as they continued their travels, they found themselves in a solitary place, and the dervise said to Abdallah, " My son, we are now at the end of our journey ; I shall employ my prayers to obtain from heaven, that the earth may open and make an entrance wide enough to permit you to descend into a place, where you will find one of the greatest treasures that the earth incloses in her bowels. Have you courage to descend into this subterraneous vault ?" continued he. Abdallah swore to him he might depend upon his obedience and zeal. Then the dervise lighted a small fire, into which he cast a perfume ; he read and prayed for some moments ; after which, the earth opened, and the dervise said to him, " You may now enter, my dear Abdallah : remember that it is in your power to do me a great service, and that this is, perhaps, the only opportunity you can ever have of testifying to me that you are not ungrateful. Do not let yourself be dazzled by all the riches you will find there ; think only of seizing upon an iron candlestick with twelve branches, which you will find close to a door : that is absolutely necessary for me." Abdallah promised every thing, and descended boldly into the vault ; but, forgetting what had been expressly recommended to him, whilst he was filling his vest and his bosom with gold and jewels, which this subterraneous vault enclosed in prodigious heaps, the opening by which he entered closed of itself. He had, however, presence of mind enough to seize upon the iron candlestick, which the dervise had so strongly recommended to him : and, though the situation he was in was very terrible, he did not abandon himself to despair ; and, thinking only in what manner he should get out of a place which might become his grave, he apprehended that the vault had closed only because he had not followed the order of the dervise ; he recalled to his memory the care and goodness he had loaded him with, reproached himself with his ingratitude, and finished his meditation by humbling himself before heaven. At length, after much pains and inquietude, he was fortunate enough to find a narrow



passage which led him out of this obscure cave ; though it was not till he had followed it a considerable way that he perceived a small opening covered with briers and thorns, through which he returned to the light of the sun. He looked on all sides, to see whether he could perceive the dervise, but in vain : he designed to deliver him the iron candlestick he so much wished for, and formed a design of quitting him, being rich enough, with what he had taken out of the cavern, to live in affluence without his assistance.

Not perceiving the dervise, nor remembering any of the places through which he had passed, he went on as fortune had directed him, and was extremely astonished to find himself opposite his mother's house, from which he imagined he was at a great distance. She immediately enquired after the holy dervise. Abdallah told her frankly what had happened to him, and the danger he had run to satisfy his unreasonable desires ; he afterwards shewed her the riches with which he was loaded. His mother concluded, upon the sight of them, that the dervise only designed to make a trial of his courage and obedience, and that they ought to make use of the happiness which fortune had presented to them ; adding, that, doubtless, such was the intention of the holy dervise. Whilst they contemplated upon these treasures with avidity, whilst they were dazzled with the lustre of them, and formed a thousand projects in consequence of them, they all vanished away before their eyes. It was then that Abdallah sincerely reproached himself for his ingratitude and disobedience ; and, perceiving that the iron candlestick had resisted the enchantment, or rather the just punishment which those deserve who do not execute what they promise, he said, prostrating himself,  "What has happened to me is just ; I have lost what I had no design to restore, and the candlestick, which I intended to deliver to the dervise, remains with me : it is a proof that it rightly belongs to him, and that the rest was unjustly acquired." As he finished these words, he placed the candlestick in the midst of their little habitation. When



When the night was come, without reflecting upon it, he placed a light in the candlestick. Immediately they saw a dervise appear, who turned about for an hour, and disappeared, after having thrown them an asper. This candlestick had twelve branches. Abdallah, who was meditating all the day upon what he had seen the night before, was willing to know what would happen, the next night, if he put a light in each of them ; he did so, and twelve dervises appeared that instant ; they turned round also for an hour, and each of them threw an asper as they disappeared. He repeated every day the same ceremony, which had always the same success, but he never could make it succeed more than once in twenty-four hours. This trifling sum was enough to make his mother and himself subsist tolerably : there was a time when they would have desired no more to be happy ; but it was not considerable enough to change their fortune. It is always dangerous for the imagination to be fixed upon the idea of riches. The sight of what he believed he should possess ; the projects he had formed for the employment of it ; all these things had left such profound traces in the mind of Abdallah, that nothing could efface them. X  
Therefore, seeing the small advantage he drew from the candlestick, he resolved to carry it back to the dervise, in hopes that he might obtain from him the treasure he had seen, or, at least, find again the riches which had vanished from their sight, by restoring to him a thing for which he testified so earnest a desire. He was so fortunate as to remember his name, and that of the city which he inhabited. He departed therefore immediately for Magrebi, carrying with him his candlestick, which he lighted every night, and, by that means, furnished himself with what was necessary on the road, without being obliged to implore the assistance and compassion of the faithful. When he arrived at Magrebi, his first care was to inquire in what house, or in what convent, Abounadar lodged. He was so well known that every body told him his habitation. He repaired thither directly, and found fifty porters, who



kept the gate of his house, having each a staff, with a head of gold, in their hands : the court of this palace was filled with slaves and domestics : in fine, the residence of a prince could not expose to view greater magnificence. Abdallah, struck with astonishment and admiration, feared to proceed. Certainly, thought he, I either explained myself wrong, or those to whom I addressed myself designed to make a jest of me because I was a stranger : this is not the habitation of a dervise, it is that of a king. ~~X~~ He was in this embarrassment, when a man approached him, and said to him, “ Abdallah, you are welcome ; my master, Abounadar, has long expected you.” He then conducted him to an agreeable and magnificent pavilion, where the dervise was seated. Abdallah, struck with the riches he beheld on all sides, would have prostrated himself at his feet, but Abounadar prevented him, and interrupted him when he would have made a merit of the candlestick, which he presented to him. “ You are but an ungrateful wretch,” said he to him ; “ do you imagine you can impose upon me ? I am not ignorant of any one of your thoughts : and, if you had known the value of this candlestick, you would never have brought it to me : I will make you sensible of its use.” Immediately he placed a light in each of its branches ; and, when the twelve dervises had turned round for some time, Abounadar gave each of them a blow with a cane, and in a moment, they were converted into twelve heaps of sequins, diamonds, and other precious stones. ~~X~~ “ This, said he, is the proper use to be made of this marvellous candlestick. As to me, I never desired it, but to place it in my cabinet, as a talisman composed by a sage whom I revere, and am pleased to expose it sometimes to those who come to visit me ; and, to prove to you, added he, that curiosity was the only occasion of my search for it, here are the keys of my magazines, open them, and you shall judge of my riches ; you shall tell me whether the most insatiable miser would not be satisfied with them.” Abdallah obeyed him, and examined twelve magazines of great extent, so full of all manner of riches, that



he could not distinguish which merited his admiration most ; they all deserved it, and produced new desires. The regret of having restored the candlestick, and that of not having found out the use of it, pierced the heart of Abdallah. Abounadar seemed not to perceive it : on the contrary, he loaded him with caresses, kept him some days in his house, and commanded him to be treated as himself. When it was at the eve of the day which he had fixed for his departure, he said to him “ Abdallah, my son, I believe, by what has happened to you, you are corrected of the frightful vice of ingratitude ; however, I owe you a mark of my affection, for having undertaken so long a journey with a view of bringing me the thing I desired : you may depart, I shall detain you no longer. You shall find, to-morrow, at the gate of my palace, one of my horses to carry you : I make you a present of it ; as well as of a slave who shall conduct you to your house, and two camels loaded with gold and jewels, which you shall choose yourself out of my treasures.” Abdallah said to him all that a heart sensible of avarice could express when its passion was satisfied, and went to lie down till the morning arrived, which was fixed for his departure.

During the night, he was still agitated, without being able to think of any thing but the candlestick, and what it had produced. “ I had it, said he, so long in my power : Abounadar, without me, had never been possessor of it : what risks did I not run in the subterraneous vault ! Why does he now possess this treasure of treasures ? Because I had the probity, or rather the folly, to bring it back to him ; he profits by my labour and the danger I have incurred by so long a journey. And what does he give me in return ? Two camels loaded with gold and jewels : in one moment the candlestick will furnish him ten times as much. It is Abounadar who is ungrateful : what wrong shall I do him in taking this candlestick ? None, certainly ; for, he is rich : and what do I possess ?” These ideas determined him, at length, to make all possible attempts to seize upon the candlestick. The thing was not difficult,



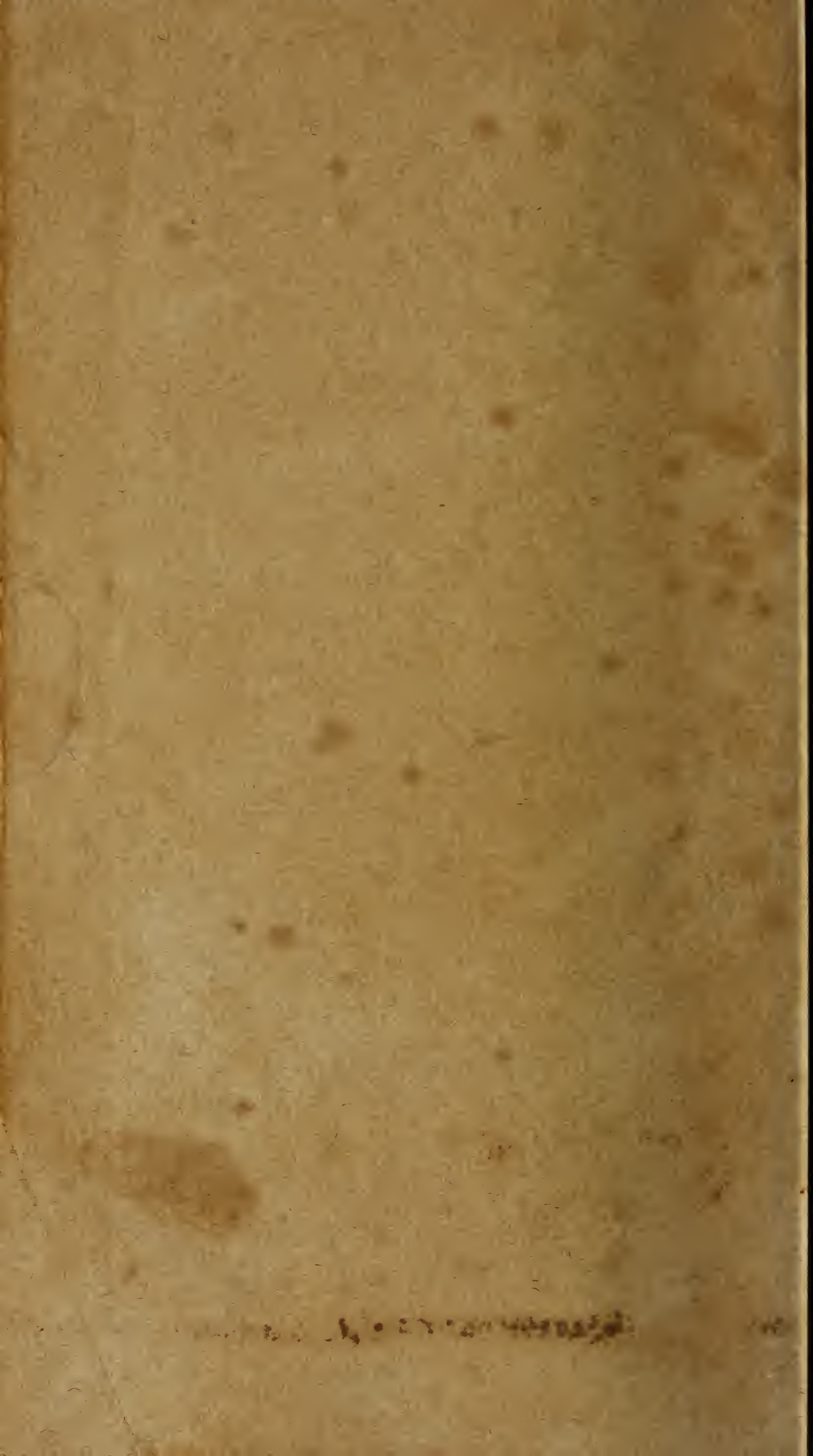
ficult, Abounadar having trusted him with the keys of his magazines. He knew where the candlestick was placed ; he seized upon it, hid it in the bottom of one of the sacks, which he filled with pieces of gold and other riches which he was allowed to take, and loaded it, as well as the rest, upon his camels. He had no other eagerness now but for his departure : and, after having hastily bid adieu to the generous Abounadar, he delivered him his keys, and departed with his horse, his slave, and two camels. X

When he was some days journey from Balsora, he sold his slave, resolving not to have a witness of his former poverty, nor of the source of his present riches. He bought another, and arrived, without any obstacle, at his mother's, whom he would scarcely look upon, so much was he taken up with his treasure. His first care was to place the loads of his camels and the candlestick in the most private room of the house ; and, in his impatience to feed his eyes with his great opulence, he placed lights immediately in the candlestick : the twelve dervises appearing, he gave each of them a blow with a cane with all his strength, lest he should be failing in the laws of the talisman : but he had not remarked that Abounadar, when he struck them, had the cane in his left hand. Abdallah, by a natural motion, made use of his right ; and the dervises, instead of becoming heaps of riches, immediately drew from beneath their robe each a formidable club, with which they struck him so hard and so long that they left him almost dead, and disappeared, carrying with them all his treasure, the camels, the horse, the slave, and the candlestick.

Thus was Abdallah punished, by poverty, and almost by death, for his unreasonable ambition, which perhaps might have been pardonable, if it had not been accompanied by an ingratitude as wicked as it was audacious, since he had not so much as the resource of being able to conceal his perfidies from the too-piercing eyes of his benefactor.











Deacidified using the Bookkeeper process  
Neutralizing agent: Magnesium Oxide  
Treatment Date: Sept. 2006

**PreservationTechnologies**

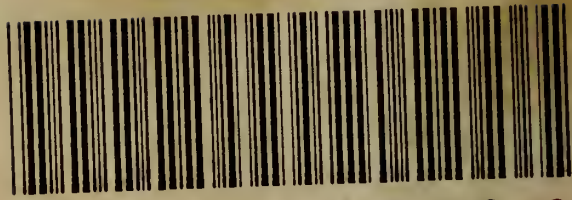
A WORLD LEADER IN PAPER PRESERVATION

111 Thomson Park Drive  
Cranberry Township, PA 16066  
(724) 779-2111





LIBRARY OF CONGRESS



0 003 117 503 3